

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



00005793403



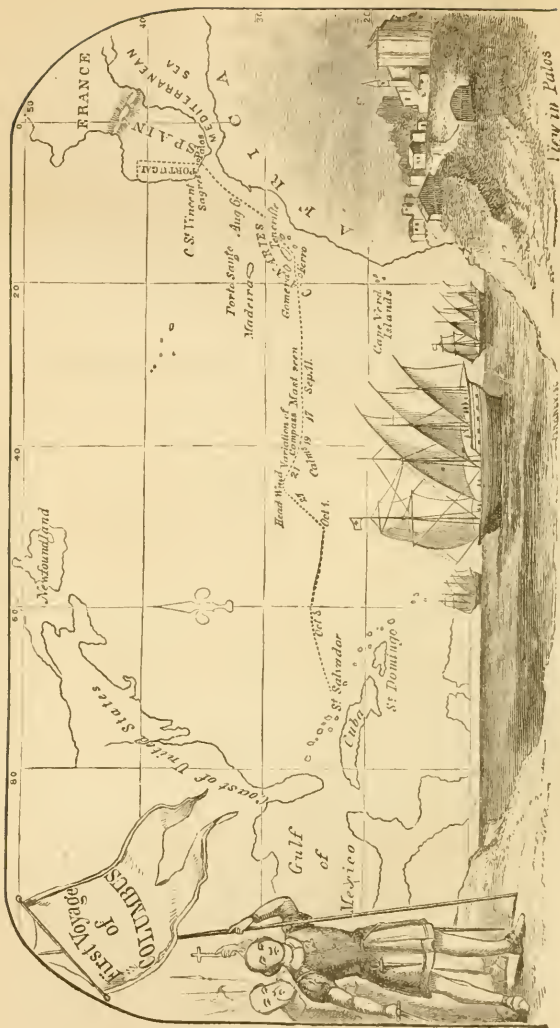












Printed in Paris

11

A

# PICTORIAL SCHOOL HISTORY

OF THE

# UNITED STATES;

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE,

AND THE

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES,

WITH

QUESTIONS AND EXPLANATIONS.



BY

JOHN J. ANDERSON.

NEW YORK:

CLARK & MAYNARD, 3 PARK ROW.

1864.

290

Dec. 22. 1863

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1863,

BY JOHN J. ANDERSON,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the  
Southern District of New York.

24566

E178  
A564

G. A. ALVORD, ELECTROTYPED AND PRINTER.

## PREFACE.

THE work here offered embraces several features which, it is thought, will not fail to recommend it to such teachers as desire that their pupils should acquire a more comprehensive knowledge of the history of our country than can be obtained from either of the author's previous and more elementary works.

It has been the leading aim, in the present one, to state every important fact in the history in clear and concise language, so that the pupil may be able readily to comprehend it, and, at the same time, to see its connection with the events preceding it. No important event, it is believed, has been omitted, nor any of the particulars necessary to make it fully understood.

The questions at the bottom of the pages are more numerous than in any other school history. This has been done as much for the benefit of the teacher as of the pupil; for, though the former may not actually need them, they will facilitate his labor, and secure better recitations from his pupils, by requiring greater precision, on their part, in the selection of their answers. In this way, the important habit of giving exact and explicit answers will be greatly encouraged. Discursiveness in recitation may, indeed, sometimes be allowed, but always with great caution, so as to avoid that rambling and immethodical mode of thought which is so tiresome and injurious.

By the plan of this work, every fact is learned with a due regard to its relative importance, and all are linked together so as to constitute, in the mind of the pupil, a complete and uninterrupted chain. It may be objected, that the plan of requiring only brief answers is not calculated to encourage this

logical connection of events on the part of the young student. This objection has been obviated by the insertion, at the end of every few pages, of a list of review questions of an entirely different character, and much more comprehensive than those at the foot of each page.

These review questions are, in the author's estimation, one of the chief recommendations of the book. They directly call into active exercise the pupil's power of continuous thought, the answer to a single question very often requiring the substance of several paragraphs of the text. The pupil is thus made to perceive more clearly the connection between the events, and habits of thoughtful study are necessarily induced.

It will be also observed that the work is copiously illustrated with maps; that dates are inserted with great frequency; and that the chronological tables of battles, the settlement and admission of the States, the inauguration of the Presidents, and the general events in the history of the country from its discovery, are given with fullness and precision.

These maps and tables do not serve merely to enhance the attractive appearance of the work, but will contribute, it is believed, greatly to its usefulness and value. Not only are they constantly referred to in the text, but a series of questions running through the book, and connecting the geography with the chronology, brings them forcibly before the pupil's attention, and thus serves to give additional accuracy as well as permanency to his knowledge of the subject.

The pronunciation of proper names has also been given more copiously than in either of the author's previous works, the authorities used being the gazetteer of Baldwin and the dictionaries of Webster and Worcester.

While returning thanks to his fellow-teachers for the favor with which his former works have been received, the author submits this new one, with the hope that it may not prove less acceptable.



# CONTENTS.

SECTION I.—DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.....	Page 11
Columbus (11); Amerigo Vespucci (13); John and Sebastian Cabot (13); Ponce de Leon (14); Balboa (15); De Ayllon (15); Cordova (16); Grijalva (16); Cortez (16); Narvaez (17); De Soto (17); Verrazani (18); Cartier (18); Coligny (19); Melendez (20); De Gourges (20); Gilbert (20); Raleigh (21); Amidas and Barlow (21); Grenville (22); Gosnold (22); Pring (23); Newport (25).	
SECTION II.—COLONIAL HISTORY....	27
Virginia (27); Massachusetts (37, 52); New Hampshire (43); Connecticut (45); Rhode Island (49); New York (60); New Jersey (66); Maryland (70); Pennsylvania (73); Delaware (76); North and South Carolina (78); Georgia (81).	
SECTION III.—THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR ...	86
Events of 1753 (86); Events of 1754 (88); Events of 1755 (91); Events of 1756 (95); Events of 1757 (96); Events of 1758 (100); Events of 1759 (103); Events of 1760 (106); Table of Principal Battles of the French and Indian War (108).	
SECTION IV.—THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.....	110
Causes of the war (110); Events of 1775 (116); Events of 1776 (127); Events of 1777 (136); Events of 1778 (154); Events of 1779 (159); Events of 1780 (163); Events of 1781 (174); Close of the Revolution, and events to the beginning of Washington's Administration (186); Table of the Names of the American Revolutionary Officers (190); Table of Principal Battles of the Revolution (191).	
SECTION V.—FROM THE BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION TO THE CLOSE OF JEFFERSON'S.....	194
Washington's Administration (194); John Adams's Administration (200); Jefferson's Administration (203).	
SECTION VI.—MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.....	210
Causes of the Second War with England (210); Events of 1812 (212); Events of 1813 (218); Events of 1814 and Close of the War (231); Table of the Principal Land Battles of the Second War with England (243); Table of the Principal Naval Battles (244); War with Algiers (244).	
SECTION VII.—FROM THE BEGINNING OF MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION TO THE CLOSE OF TYLER'S .....	248
Monroe's Administration (248); John Quincy Adams's Administration (253); Jackson's Administration (254); Van Buren's Administration (261); Harrison's Administration (263); Tyler's Administration (264).	

SECTION VIII.—FROM THE BEGINNING OF POLK'S ADMINISTRATION TO THE CLOSE OF BUCHANAN'S.....	Page 269
Causes of the War with Mexico (270); Events of 1846 (271); Events of 1847 (278); Table of the Principal Battles of the War (284); Taylor's Administra- tion (286); Fillmore's Administration (288); Pierce's Administration (289); Buchanan's Administration (291).	
SECTION IX.—LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.....	297
CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE of the principal events relating to the History of the United States, from 1492.....	298
A TABLE of the Presidents and Vice-Presidents.....	309
A TABLE of the Settlement and Admission of the States.....	310
THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE	
THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES, with Questions and Explanations.	

## MAPS.

	PAGE
1. First Voyage of Columbus to America.....	2
2. Discoveries and Explorations.....	10
3. Discoveries of Cartier, in 1535.....	19
4. Gosnold's Expedition.....	23
5. Vicinity of Chesapeake Bay.....	24
6. Environs of Jamestown.....	29
7. Vicinity of Massachusetts Bay.....	37
8. German Ocean.....	39
9. Portsmouth and Vicinity.....	44
10. Vicinity of Long Island Sound.....	47
11. The State of New York.....	62
12. The Upper part of New Jersey, with Vicinity of Philadelphia.....	68
13. The Eastern part of the Carolinas.....	79
14. Map showing the location of Events in the French and Indian War.....	85
15. Oswego.....	96
16. Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Vicinity.....	103
17. Boston and Vicinity.....	120
18. Part of the Sorel River.....	124
19. Vicinity of Charleston.....	129
20. New York Bay.....	131
21. Central Part of New Jersey.....	136
22. Philadelphia and Vicinity.....	142
23. Vicinity of Fort Schuyler.....	148
24. Saratoga and Vicinity.....	149
25. The Eastern part of the Carolinas.....	164
26. Stony Point and Vicinity.....	169
27. New London and Vicinity.....	183
28. Part of the Western States.....	192
29. Detroit and Vicinity.....	214
30. Niagara Frontier.....	215
31. State of Alabama.....	223
32. Part of Virginia and Maryland.....	237
33. Baltimore and Vicinity.....	238
34. Mobile and Vicinity.....	239
35. Part of Florida.....	257
36. Mexico, California, Texas, &c.....	268
37. Taylor's Campaign in Texas and Mexico.....	271
38. Scott's Campaign in Mexico.....	279
39. Pensacola and Vicinity.....	295



MAP  
TO ILLUSTRATE THE SECTION,  
DISCOVERIES  
AND  
EXPLORATIONS

Scale of Miles  
0 100 200 300 400



# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

## SECTION I.

### *Discoveries and Explorations.*

EXTENDING FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, IN 1492, TO  
THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA, IN 1607.



COLUMBUS.

I. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS,\* the discoverer of America, was born in the city of Genoa (*jen'-o-a*), Italy. At an early age he manifested a predilection for the sea, and the most of his life, previous to its great event, was passed on the waters of the Mediterranean, and the west coast of Africa; and he even made a voyage towards

Greenland, passing beyond the island of Iceland.

II. In those days, when navigation was yet in its infancy, the usual route to India—the country in the southeast part of Asia with the adjacent islands being so called—was by way of Egypt and the Red Sea. Columbus, believing the earth to be round, concluded that by sailing westward he would sooner

---

\* Columbus was born about the year 1435. He died at Valladolid, Spain, in 1506.

I. QUESTIONS.—1. By whom was America discovered? 2. Where was Columbus born? 3. How is Genoa situated? (See map of Europe.) 4. How did Columbus spend the most of his time previous to his discovery of America?

II. 5. By what route did European travelers reach India at that time? 6. What part of the earth was then known as India? 7. What theory did Columbus have as regards a more direct route to India? 8. By what religious conviction was he also influenced?

reach India than by taking this route. He was also influenced by the conviction that he was commissioned by Heaven to carry the Gospel to the heathen of unknown lands.

III. His first application for aid was to the government of Genoa: it was refused. After applying, without success, to the monarchs of England and Portugal, he was assisted by



ISABELLA.

Isabella (*iz-ā-bel'-lah*), Queen of Spain, and he set sail from Palos (*pah'-los*), at the mouth of the river Tinto, in that country, with three vessels, namely: the Pinta (*peen'-tah*), Santa Maria (*san'-tah ma-re'-ah*), and Nina (*ne'-nah*). The first land which he saw was one of the Bahama Islands, called by the natives Guanahani (*gwah-nah-*

*hah'-ne*), by him San Salvador, now known as Cat Island; and thus, in 1492,\* was America discovered.

IV. Columbus made three other voyages to the New World, in the first of which, as well as in the one just described, his discoveries were confined to the islands between North and South America; but in his third voyage, in 1498, he discovered the mainland, at the mouth of the river Ori-

\* According to a theory, advanced by a German author, there have been three different discoveries of America; namely:—the first, during the period from one thousand to six hundred years before Christ, by navigators who sailed from Asia, through the Mediterranean; the second, in the tenth century after Christ, by the Norwegians; and the third, in 1492, by Columbus.

III. QUESTIONS.—9. To whom did he first appeal to assist him in testing his theory? 10. With what success? 11. To whom did he afterwards appeal? 12. What was the result? 13. Who finally did help him? 14. Of how many vessels did his fleet consist? 15. Give their names. 16. From what place did he set sail? 17. In what part of Spain is Palos situated? (See map, p. 2.) 18. The island which he first discovered belonged to what group? 19. How are the Bahama Islands situated? (See map, p. 10.) 20. What did the Indians call the island discovered? 21. What name did Columbus give to it? 22. What is the meaning of the name San Salvador? *Ans.—Holy Saviour.* 23. By what name is the island now known? 24. In what direction is it from Cuba? (See map, p. 10.) 25. From St. Augustine? (See same map.)

IV. 26. How many voyages in all did Columbus make to America? 27. What can you say of the first two? 28. When did he make his third voyage? 29. What discovery did he then make? 30. What did he accomplish in his fourth voyage? 31. In what conviction, touching the discovery of America, did Columbus die?



noco, in South America; and in the fourth and last, he examined the coast of Darien. He still, however, believed that the lands which he had discovered were a portion of Eastern Asia (*ā'-she-a*), instead of a new continent, and in this conviction he died, being, as intimated, entirely ignorant of the real grandeur of his discovery.

V. In 1499, the year after Columbus discovered the continent, Amerigo Vespucci\* (*a-mā-rē'-gō ves-poot'-shē*), an Italian navigator, visited the eastern coast of South America, and, in 1501, made a second voyage to the same regions. He prepared accounts of these two voyages, which were published in Europe, in which he claimed to be the first European that had landed on the western continent. In consequence of the claim set up by him, as well as from the fact that his were the first published accounts of the newly discovered country, it was called America.



SEBASTIAN CABOT.

VI. In 1497, one year before Columbus discovered the continent, and two years previous to Amerigo's visit, John Cabot and his son Sebastian, while sailing under a commission from Henry VII., of England, discovered the coast of Labrador, and thus were the first to discover the continent of America. In a second voyage, made by Sebastian Cabot in 1498, the coast

---

\* Amerigo Vespucci was born in Florence, Italy, in 1451. He died in Seville, Spain, in 1512.

V. QUESTIONS.—32. When did Vespucci visit America? 33. What part of America did he visit? 34. How did the country come to be called America?

VI. 35. What discovery was made in 1497? 36. What large island southeast of Labrador? (See map, p. 10.) 37. Did the Cabots or Vespucci first discover the continent? 38. Was the honor of naming this country rightly bestowed? 39. Did that honor belong either to the Cabots or Vespucci, rather than to Columbus? 40. When did Sebastian Cabot make a second voyage. 41. Give an account of it. 42. Of what special importance did the successes of the Cabots prove?

from Labrador to Chesapeake Bay—some say to Florida—was explored; landings were made in several places, and natives were seen, clad in the skins of beasts and making use of copper. These achievements of the Cabots, the discovery and explorations, proved of momentous importance, especially to England, as, by reason of them, that country based her claim to all the region from Labrador to Florida.

VII. Twenty years after Columbus's first and great discovery, Ponce de Leon\* (*pōn'-thū dā lū-ōn'*), an aged Spaniard, sailed from Porto Rico (*re'-co*), in search of a wonderful fountain, which, it was said, existed in one of the Bahama Islands, and would impart immortal youth to all who might drink of its waters. After visiting several islands of the Bahamas, and tasting the waters of every river, lake, and fountain found, he turned to the northwest, and, in 1512, discovered an unknown land. This was thought to be an island; and, from the abundance of flowers with which the forests were adorned, and because the discovery happened on Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards call *Pascua Florida* (*pah'-scoo-ah flo-re'-dah*), it received the name of Florida. He continued his search along the coast of Florida, and among the Tortugas Islands, but, of course, without finding any such fountain.

VIII. Several years after, he made another voyage to Florida for the purpose of making a settlement, he having been appointed governor of the country upon the condition that he would colonize it. He effected a landing, but was met by the natives with determined hostility; and, in an attack made by them, the Spaniards were killed or driven back to their

---

\* Juan Ponce de Leon was born in Leon, Spain. He died in 1521.

VII. QUESTIONS.—43. In what year did De Leon make a voyage in search of a wonderful fountain? 44. From what place did he sail? 45. Was he an old or a young man at the time? 46. What tradition then existed, in relation to the fountain? 47. What efforts did De Leon make to find the fountain? 48. When did he discover Florida? 49. Why did he call it Florida? 50. Among what islands did he search besides the Bahamas? 51. In what direction from Florida are the Tortugas Islands? (See map, p. 10.)

VIII. 52. Why did De Leon go to Florida a second time? 53. What appointment had he received? 54. What further account can you give of him?

ships, and De Leon himself received a mortal wound of which he died in Cuba.

IX. In 1513, Balboa,\* the Governor of the Spanish colony at the Isthmus of Darien, the first colony established on the American Continent, while crossing the isthmus gained the summit of a mountain from which he discovered the Pacific Ocean. After falling upon his knees and thanking God for the privilege of being the discoverer of this great ocean, he descended to the sea-shore and took possession of the whole coast in the name of the Spanish crown.

X. About the time of De Leon's defeat in Florida, De Ayllon (*dā ail'-yon*), a Spanish adventurer, was engaged in an enterprise having for its object the procuring of a large number of Indians to work the plantations and mines of St. Domingo (*do-mîng'-gō*). At a place in the southern part of South Carolina, a great number of natives were treacherously captured; but the undertaking proved unsuccessful, for of the two vessels employed, one was lost while on the return to St. Domingo, and many of the captives in the other sickened and died.

XI. It was not many months after this unprofitable speculation, that De Ayllon obtained the appointment as governor of Chicora (*che-kō'-rah*), the name given to that part of Carolina which he had visited, and he wasted his fortune in fitting out an expedition to conquer the country. The issue of this second enterprise was likewise disastrous: one of his ships, the largest and best, was stranded and lost; many of his men were killed by the natives, in revenge for the treachery

---

\* Vasco Nunez de Balboa was born in Spain, in 1475. Having been superseded in the governorship of the colony at Darien, and afterwards charged by the new governor with the design of making other discoveries without authority, he was tried and found guilty. Although he persisted that he was unjustly condemned, he was beheaded in conformity with the sentence, in 1517.

IX. QUESTIONS.—55. By whom was the Pacific Ocean discovered? 56. When was the discovery made? 57. What civil position did Balboa hold at the time? 58. Where was he when he discovered the Pacific? 59. What ceremony did he observe?

X. 60. Who was De Ayllon? 61. What enterprise did he engage in? 62. What was the result?

XI. 63. What appointment did he afterwards receive? 64. What was the object of his second expedition? 65. What account can you give of it?

which he had previously been guilty of; and he himself barely made good his escape.

XII. In 1517, Cordova, a Spanish navigator, sailed from Cuba and discovered the northern coast of Yucatan. Upon his return he gave such a favorable account of the civilization and riches of the people whom he had seen, as to awaken a keen desire among the Spaniards to undertake their conquest. Accordingly Velasquez (*va-lah'-sketh*), the governor of Cuba, sent an expedition under the direction of Juan de Grijalva (*gre-hahl'-vah*), the result of which was very satisfactory. Grijalva, after an exploration of the southern coast of Mexico, returned with a large amount of treasure, obtained by trafficking with the natives.



CORTÉZ.

XIII. Velasquez, then determining to conquer the Mexicans and get possession of their wealth, sent an expedition, consisting of eleven vessels and more than six hundred armed men, under the command of Fernando Cortez. Cortez landed, in 1519, near Vera Cruz (*vā'-rah kroose*), and was at once met by

friendly deputations from Montezuma (*mon-ta-thoo'-mah*), the Mexican emperor. By perseverance and a course of falsehood and duplicity, he succeeded in reaching the city of Mexico, the Indian capital; and by stratagem and boldness, and with the aid of Indian tribes opposed to the Mexican rule, finally

XII. QUESTIONS.—66. When was Yucatan discovered? 67. By whom? 68? What can you say of the account which he gave? 69. What expedition was sent in consequence of this account? 70. What did Grijalva accomplish?

XIII. 71. What did Velasquez then determine upon? 72. Who commanded the expedition against Mexico? 73. Of how many vessels did his fleet consist? 74. When did he land in Mexico? 75. At what place? 76. By whom was he met? 77. What account can you give of Cortez's further movements?

completed the conquest of the people, and Mexico became a province of Spain in 1521.



DE SOTO.

XIV. In 1528, Narvaez (*nar-vah'-eth*), having been appointed governor of Florida by the Spanish sovereign, sailed from Cuba to conquer and possess the country. The attempt proved most disastrous; for, of the three hundred men who landed in Florida and penetrated the wild regions, only four, after years

of wandering, succeeded in reaching a Spanish settlement in Mexico. These four men asserted that Florida was the richest country in the world, a statement which the people of Spain generally believed; but to no one was credulity more disastrous than to Ferdinand de Soto\* (*da so'-to*), a brave cavalier who had gained riches and military honors with Pizarro, in Peru.

XV. De Soto having solicited permission to conquer Florida at his own expense, the Spanish sovereign not only granted his request, but appointed him governor of Cuba, and of the immense territory to which the name of Florida was then vaguely applied. With a fleet of ten vessels and a gay company of six hundred armed men, he sailed for the New World in 1538. Leaving his wife to govern Cuba, he proceeded to Florida, landed on the shores of Tampa Bay, and, in the summer of 1539, commenced his march into the interior, toward the fancied land of gold.

XVI. After wandering for nearly three years in the wilder-

---

\* De Soto was born in Spain, in 1500. He died in 1542.

XIV. QUESTIONS.—78. What expedition was undertaken in 1528? 79. What was the result? 80. What opinion did De Soto entertain with regard to the wealth of Florida? 81. What successes had he previously met with?

XV. 82. What request did he make of the Spanish sovereign? 83. How was the request treated? 84. When did he sail for America? 85. Where did he leave his wife? 86. Where did he land? 87. In what part of Florida is Tampa Bay? (See map, p. 10.) 88. When did he commence his march?

ness, encountering the hostility of the natives and suffering disasters and disappointments, De Soto sickened and died. To conceal his death from the natives, who regarded him with fear, his body was sunk beneath the waters of the Mississippi, a river which he had discovered in 1541. After vainly trying to reach Mexico through the forests, the remnant of his followers built seven frail barks, sailed down the Mississippi, and along the coast of Mexico until they arrived at a Spanish settlement.



VERRAZANI.

XVII. In 1524, Verrazani (*vā-rat-tsoh'-ne*), a Florentine navigator, while sailing in the service of France, explored the coast of North America from the Carolinas to Newfoundland (*new'-fund-land*). To the whole region thus explored he gave the name of New France, a name which was afterwards restricted to the territory of Canada, and which was so retained

while that country remained in the possession of the French.

XVIII. No other explorations were made by the French until 1534. In that year and the following James Cartier\* (*car-te-ā'*) made two successful voyages, discovered the river St. Lawrence, explored its banks, and took possession of the whole country in the name of his king. Though Cartier and the Lord of Roberval (*ro-bare-val'*), some years after, undertook to colonize Canada, the French effected no permanent

\* Cartier was born at St. Malo, France, in 1494. The time of his death is not known, though it is supposed he lived to an advanced age.

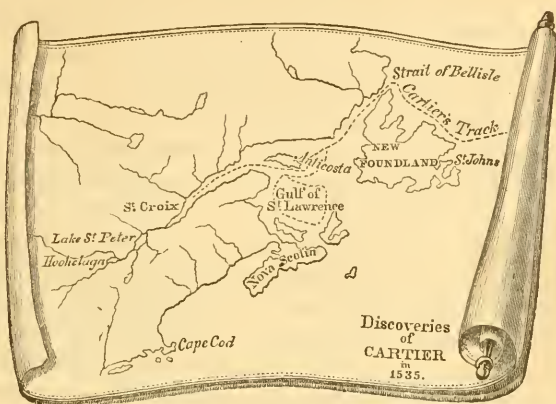
XVI. QUESTIONS.—89. What river did he discover? 90. When did he discover the Mississippi? 91. How long did he wander in the wilderness? 92. What finally became of him? 93. What was done by his followers after his death?

XVII. 94. What exploration was made seventeen years before De Soto discovered the Mississippi? 95. What name did Verrazani give to the region which he explored? 96. To what territory was that name afterward restricted? 97. How long did Canada retain the name of New France?

XVIII. 98. When, after the exploration made by Verrazani, did the French make other explorations? 99. Who commanded the expeditions? 100. How many voyages did he make in 1534 and 1535? 101. Through what strait did he sail? (See map, p. 10.) 102. In what year did he discover the St. Lawrence? (See map, p. 10.) 103. When was Quebec settled? 104. By whom was it settled? 105. How is Quebec situated? (See map, p. 10.)



settlement until one was made on the site of Quebec, in 1608, by Champlain.



XIX. Quebec is not, however, the oldest French settlement in America, as Port Royal, now Annapolis, in Nova Scotia (*scō'-she-ah*), was settled three years before by De Monts (*dū-mong*), a wealthy *Huguenot*. Port Royal was then spoken of as being in Acadia, a name which, at the time, was applied to the whole territory now included in Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and the adjacent islands.

XX. More than forty years before the settlement of Port Royal, in Nova Scotia, the Huguenots, or French Protestants, undertook to establish a colony—first in South Carolina and afterwards in Florida—as a place of refuge for their people. Their expeditions were undertaken by direction and aid of Jaspas Coligny\* (*ko-leen'-ye*), Admiral of France. The first, intrusted to the command of John Ribault (*rē-bō'*), reached the

\* Coligny, or, as the name is sometimes written, Coligni, was born in France, in 1517. He was murdered at Paris, in 1572.

XIX. QUESTIONS.—106. Which is the oldest French settlement in America? 107. In what year was Port Royal settled? 108. How is Port Royal situated? (See map, p. 10.) 109. By what name is Port Royal now known? 110. What territory was then called Acadia?

coast in 1562. The colonists landed at Port Royal entrance, selected their place of refuge, and built a fort, to which they gave the name of Carolina, in honor of King Charles (Carolus) of France. It was thus that this country received its name, a century before it was occupied by the English. Ribault, leaving twenty-six men to keep possession, returned to France for reinforcements; but the promised aid not arriving, the colonists in despair embarked for their native land. The second expedition was sent out in 1564, when a settlement was made on the banks of the St. John's River, Florida.

XXI. Hardly had the news reached Spain of the Huguenot settlement on the St. John's River than Melendez, who had been appointed governor of Florida upon condition that he would conquer the country within three years, departed on his expedition of conquest. After forming a settlement at St. Augustine (*aw-gus-tine'*) in 1565, which is the oldest in the United States, he proceeded against the Huguenots, whom he surprised; and massacring men, women, and children, broke up the colony. This did not long go unavenged; for, in little more than two years after, De Gourges (*dū-goorg*), a brave soldier of France, having fitted out three ships at his own expense, surprised two Spanish forts on the St. John's River, and hung two hundred captives upon the trees.

XXII. The first enterprise on the part of the English for the purpose of planting a colony in America was undertaken in 1579, by Sir Humphrey Gilbert, who sailed from England under a patent which had been granted by Queen Elizabeth; but severe storms and Spanish war vessels compelled him to put back, and the scheme, for a time, was abandoned. In

---

XX. QUESTIONS.—111. Where had the Huguenots previously undertaken to establish a colony? 112. What object had they in view? 113. Who aided and directed them? 114. Who commanded their first expedition? 115. Give an account of it. 116. In what direction from St. Augustine is Port Royal entrance? (See map, p. 10.) 117. When was the second expedition sent? 118. Where was a settlement made? 119. Describe the St. John's River. (See map, p. 10.)

XXI. 120. What was the fate of the Huguenot settlement on the St. John's? 121. When and where did Melendez make a settlement? 122. What can you say of that settlement? 123. How was the massacre of the Huguenots avenged?

1583 he sailed a second time for America, and landed at Newfoundland; but accomplished little more than the erection of a pillar bearing the arms of his government. While returning to England, in the same year, his vessel foundered, and he, with all on board, perished.

XXIII. Sir Walter Raleigh\* (*raw'-lē*), not disheartened by



RALEIGH.

the sad fate of his step-brother, Gilbert, obtained from Elizabeth an ample patent, and sent two vessels, under the command of Amidas, and Barlow. The voyagers arrived on the coast of Carolina, visited the islands in Pamlico and Albemarle Sounds, took possession of the country in the name of Elizabeth, and, after trafficking with

the natives, returned to England. So glowing an account did they give of the country, that Queen Elizabeth declared the event to be the most glorious in her reign; and, in memorial of her unmarried state, named the region Virginia. Upon Raleigh she conferred the honor of knighthood.

XXIV. Two attempts were afterwards made by Raleigh to establish a colony in America; one in 1585, and the other in 1587. In the first, more than a hundred persons were sent.

---

\* Raleigh was born at Hayes, in Devonshire, a county of England, in 1552. The death of Queen Elizabeth, in 1603, proved fatal to his fortunes. He was tried on a false charge of high treason, convicted, and, after a period of fifteen years, thirteen of which he passed in confinement, he was beheaded in London, on the 29th of October, 1618.

---

XXII. QUESTIONS.—124. What account can you give of the first English enterprise to establish a colony in America? 125. When did Gilbert sail a second time? 126. At what place did he land? 127. What body of water is on the west of that island? (See map, p. 10.) 128. What became of Gilbert?

XXIII. 129. How were Gilbert and Raleigh related? 130. What patent did Raleigh obtain? 131. How many vessels did he send to America? 132. Who commanded them? 133. When did Amidas and Barlow reach America? (See map, p. 10.) 134. What exploration did they make? 135. What else did they do? 136. In what direction is Roanoke Island from Jamestown? (See map, p. 27.) 137. What can you say of the account which Amidas and Barlow gave of the country they visited?

These, with Ralph Lane as governor, were conveyed by a fleet of seven vessels, under the command of Sir Richard Grenville. They proceeded to Roanoke, an island on the coast of North Carolina, where a settlement was commenced. After a year of distress, they all embarked for England with Sir Francis Drake, who had stopped at Roanoke on his way from the West Indies.

.XXV. The second colony was composed of agriculturists and artisans with their families. Having reached Roanoke, and there, on the site of the former settlement, commenced building "the city of Raleigh," John White, the governor, went to England for supplies. When he returned, after an absence of nearly three years, Roanoke was deserted, and no trace of the colonists could be found.

XXVI. The next attempt, after Raleigh's, to plant an English colony in America, was made by Bartholomew Gosnold, in 1602. After discovering the promontory which he called Cape Cod, also Nantucket, Martha's Vineyard, and the group known as the Elizabeth Islands, he landed on one of the last named, where he selected a position for a settlement and built a storehouse and fort. The persons chosen to remain becoming alarmed at the menaces of the Indians and at the want of supplies, the design was abandoned, and the whole party returned to England.

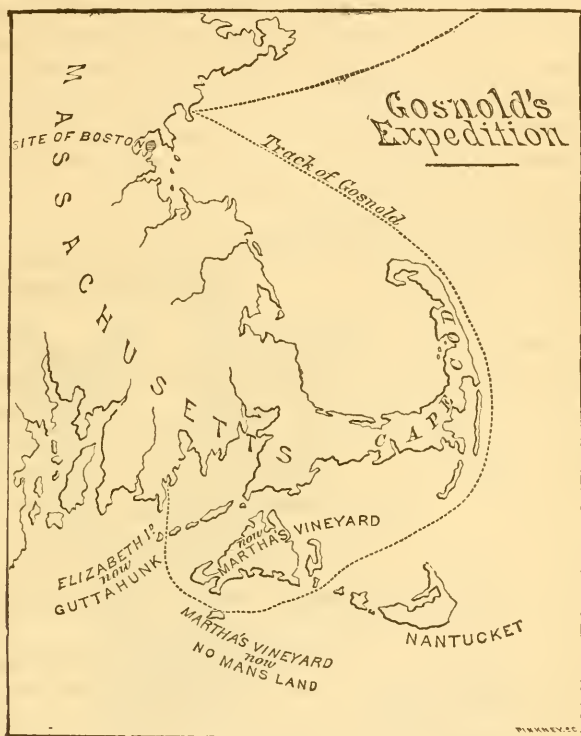
XXVII. Gosnold made such favorable reports of the country, that the merchants of Bristol were induced to fit out two

XXIV. QUESTIONS.—138. How many attempts did Raleigh make to establish a colony in America? 139. When were they made? 140. Give an account of the first.

XXV. 141. Of whom did the second colony consist? 142. Who was their governor? 143. Where did they commence to build a city? 144. What name did they give to the city? 145. Why did the governor of the colony leave? 146. How long was he gone? 147. What did he find upon his return to Roanoke?

XXVI. 148. When was the next attempt made to plant an English colony in America? 149. Who commanded the undertaking? 150. What discoveries did Gosnold make? 151. In what direction from Martha's Vineyard is Nantucket? (See map, p. 21.) 152. At what place did Gosnold make preparation to make a settlement? 153. What are the Elizabeth Islands now called? (See map, p. 23.) 154. Why did not the settlement on Elizabeth Islands prove permanent?

vessels, under the command of Martin Pring, for exploration and trade. During the first voyage, made in 1603, the shores and several large rivers of Maine, as well as the coast as far south



as Martha's Vineyard, were examined, and a profitable traffic was carried on with the natives. Three years later, Pring repeated his previous voyage, and made a more accurate survey of Maine.

XXVIII. The territory which the English claimed, basing

XXVII. QUESTIONS.—155. What reports did Gosnold make of the country which he had discovered and visited? 156. Give an account of Pring's first voyage. 157. Of his second.

their claim, as has been previously stated, principally upon the discoveries of the Cabots, extended from the 34th to the 45th degrees of north latitude. In 1606, James I. granted the northern portion, from the 41st to the 45th, to an association of "knights, gentlemen, and merchants of the west of England," known as the Plymouth (*plim'-uth*) Company, calling the region North Virginia. The southern portion, from the 34th to the 38th, called South Virginia, he granted to an association of "noblemen, gentlemen, and merchants, in and about London," known as the London Company.



XXIX. During the following year, 1607, the Plymouth Company sent a number of planters, who began a settlement at the mouth of the Kennebec River, in Maine; but the intense cold of the winter, the destruction of their storehouse

XXVIII. QUESTIONS.—158. What extent of territory did the English claim in America? 159. Upon what did they base their claim? 160. What two extensive grants were made of this territory?



by fire, and the death of their president, George Popham, discouraged them, and they returned to England.

XXX. The London Company were more successful. They sent a fleet of three vessels, commanded by Christopher Newport, and carrying more than a hundred colonists. During the long voyage of four months, dissensions arose among the leading men, and John Smith, whose genius had excited their jealousy, was placed in confinement. The design of the colonists was to form a settlement on Roanoke, but a storm carried the vessels farther north, into Chesapeake Bay. They sailed about fifty miles up a large stream which they named James River, and, selecting a place for a settlement, called it Jamestown.

XXIX. QUESTIONS.—161. When did the Plymouth Company attempt to make a settlement? 162. At what place? 163. Describe the Kennebec River. (See map, p. 10.) 164. What else can you say of the settlement on the Kennebec?

XXX. 165. Were the London Company more or less successful? 166. Of how many vessels did the fleet, sent by them, consist? 167. Who commanded the fleet? 168. How many colonists were there on board of the three vessels? 169. How long a voyage did they have? 170. How was John Smith treated during the voyage? 171. At what place did the colonists intend to make their settlement? 172. Why did they not do so?

### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. Give an account of Columbus previous to the year 1492.....	11
2. How was India reached by European travelers at that time?...	11
3. What theory did Columbus have respecting a different route? 11, 12	
4. How many and what applications did he make for aid?.....	12
5. For what was he indebted to Isabella, Queen of Spain?.....	12
6. What fleet did he command, and whence did he sail?.....	12
7. What success did he meet with?.....	12
8. Give an account of his three subsequent voyages.....	12, 13
9. When and at what place did Amerigo first visit America?..	13
10. When and at what place did he make his second visit?.....	13
11. What accounts did Amerigo prepare?.....	13
12. What was afterwards done with the accounts?.....	13
13. What was the consequence, and of Amerigo's claim?.....	13
14. When was the continent of America discovered?.....	13
15. Was that before or after Amerigo's first visit to America?....	13

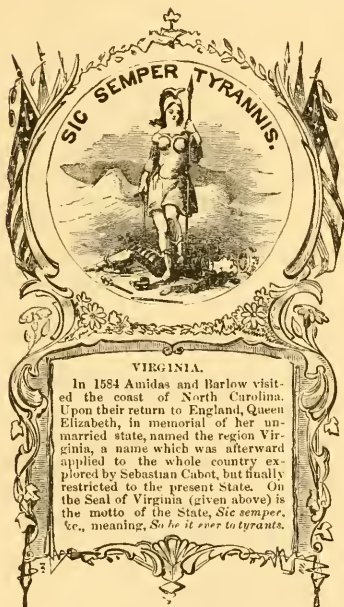
16. Give an account of the voyage made by the two Cabots.....	13
17. What explorations were made in 1493?.....	13, 14
18. What claim was based upon the achievements of the Cabots?	14
19. What account can you give of Juan Ponce De Leon?.....	14
20. What of his expedition in search of a fountain?.....	14
21. What discovery was made in the year 1512?.....	14
22. Give an account of De Leon's second expedition.....	14, 15
23. What discovery took place in 1513?.....	15
24. Which was the first colony established on the continent?.....	15
25. Give an account of the discovery of the Pacific.....	15
26. When did De Ayllon make his first expedition to Carolina?....	15
27. What was the object of the expedition?.....	15
28. Give an account of it, stating what you can of Balboa himself..	15
29. Give an account, in full, of the second expedition.....	15, 16
30. Who was Cordova, and what discovery did he make?.....	16
31. What induced Velasquez to send the expedition under Grijalva?	16
32. What induced him to send the one under Cortez?.....	16
33. Of how many vessels and men did Cortez's expedition consist?.	16
34. Give the further account of the expedition.....	16, 17
35. When and whence did Narvaez make an expedition to Florida?	17
36. Give an account of it, including that of the four men.....	17
37. Who was De Soto, and what great preparations did he make?..	17
38. Give an account of his expedition and sad fate.....	17, 18
39. Who was Verrazani, and what explorations did he make?.....	18
40. How many voyages did Cartier make to America?.....	18
41. In his third voyage, what did he and another person undertake?	18
42. When and where did De Monts make a settlement in America?	19
43. Give an account of the Huguenot attempt to settle S. Carolina.	19, 20
44. Of the destruction of the Huguenot settlement in Florida.....	20
45. Of De Gourges's expedition of retaliation.....	20
46. Of Sir Humphrey Gilbert's expedition and sad fate.....	20, 21
47. Of the expedition made by Amidas and Barlow.....	21
48. Of Raleigh's first attempt to colonize America.....	21
49. Of his second attempt, with some account of Raleigh himself.	21, 22
50. Of the attempt at colonization made in 1602.....	22
51. Give an account of Pring's first voyage to America.....	23
52. Give an account of his second voyage to America.....	23
53. What region was afterward known as North Virginia?.....	24
54. What region was, at the same time, known as South Virginia?.	24
55. Give an account of the Plymouth Co.'s attempt at settlement.	24, 25
56. Of the London Company's expedition, with its success.....	25

## SECTION II.

*Colonial History.*

EXTENDING FROM THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA, IN 1607, TO  
THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, IN  
1754.

## VIRGINIA.



I. THE first settlement in Virginia was made in 1607, at Jamestown.\* The colony was governed under a charter granted by James I., the supreme government being vested in a council resident in England, and the local government in a colonial council, the members of both deriving their appointment from the king.

II. The first council consisted of seven persons, among whom were Bartholomew Gosnold, John Smith,† and John Ratcliffe, with Edward

Wingfield, an avaricious and unprincipled man, for governor.

\* With the exception of the ruins of two or three houses, and of a church and fort, nothing remains of the ancient town.

† John Smith was born in Willoughby, county of Lincolnshire, England, in 1579. His life was a most eventful one, and, considering the age in which he lived, he was indeed a remarkable man. The narrative of the part he took in wars against the Turks, of his captivity by them, and his escape, seems more like a romance than a reality. He died in London, in 1631.

VIRGINIA.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. When was Virginia first settled? 2. At what place? 3. How was Jamestown situated? (See map, p. 27.) 4. In what direction from the Bermuda Islands was Jamestown? (See map, p. 10.) 5. How was the colony at first governed?

Smith, at first, was not permitted to take a seat in the council, because of a false charge of sedition made against him by his colleagues ; but they were soon compelled to restore him to his station.

III. For a time the colony did not prosper. The scarcity of provisions, the hostility of the natives, the want of industrial habits among the settlers, and sickness, which carried to the grave fifty men in less than four months, proved nearly fatal to its existence. Bartholomew Gosnold, the projector of the settlement, and a man whose influence had greatly contributed to promote harmony in the council, was among those who died.

IV. Wingfield, the president, having embezzled the public stores, and become concerned in a plot to abandon the settlement, in a vessel belonging to the colony, was expelled from the council. He was succeeded in the presidency by Ratcliffe ; but, in consequence of the inefficiency of the latter, the management of affairs fell into the hands of Captain John Smith. Several months later, upon the actual deposition of Ratcliffe, Smith was formally elected in his place.

V. To the efforts of the new president, almost unaided as they were, the salvation of the infant colony was owing. He made frequent excursions into the neighboring country, and returned with supplies of corn. He also explored Chesapeake Bay, ascended the James and other rivers as far as he could in boats, and made his knowledge, thus acquired, of great use in the government of the colony.

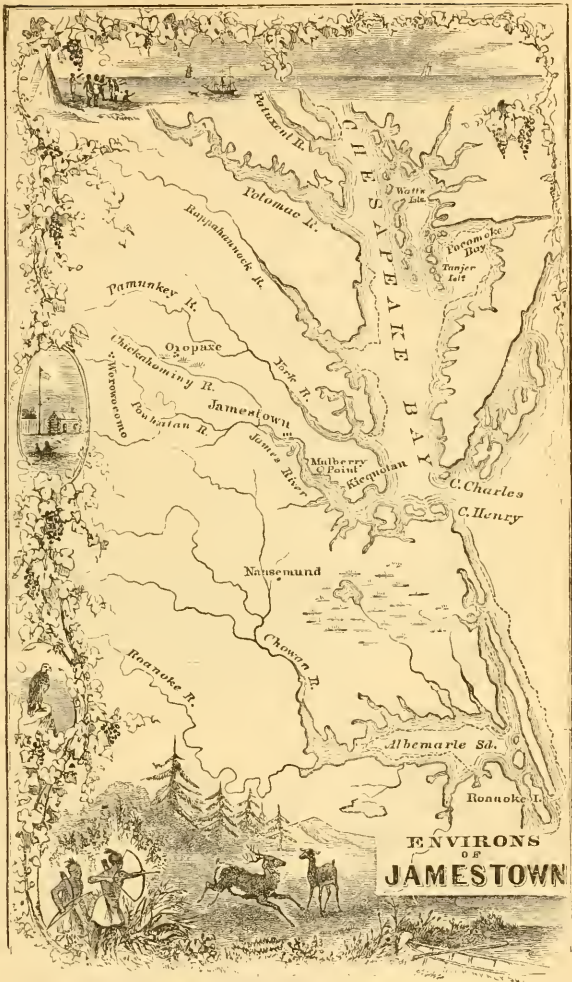
---

II. QUESTIONS.—6. Of how many persons did the council consist? 7. Name four of the most prominent men belonging to the first council. 8. Who was the first governor? 9. What was his character? 10. How was Smith at first treated by the council?

III. 11. Did the colony, at the beginning, prosper or not? 12. What were the causes? 13. What is said of Gosnold?

IV. 14. Of what two crimes was Wingfield guilty? 15. By whom was he superseded? 16. What is said of Ratcliffe's management? 17. What was the consequence?

V. 18. What is said of the efforts of Smith? 19. What of his excursions for corn? 20. Of his explorations?



(Questions to be answered from the above map.)

Name five rivers that flow into Chesapeake Bay. What two capes are at the entrance of the bay? To what large body of water is Chesapeake Bay tributary?  
*Ans.—The Atlantic Ocean.* How was Jamestown situated? Into what body of water does the Chowan River flow? What other river flows into Albemarle Sound? How is the Island of Roanoke situated? In what direction is it from Jamestown?





JOHN SMITH.

VI. On one of his expeditions up the Chickahominy, in search of corn, he was surrounded by about three hundred Indians, and, after a desperate struggle, captured. In triumph they conducted him through the country, showing him to the various tribes on the Rappahannock and Potomac Rivers, and then took him to a

chief, dwelling near the fork of the York River. After being detained for three days he was sent to Powhatan, the principal chief, or "emperor of the country," whose subjects numbered about eight thousand. His residence was on the York River. The Indian warriors met in council, and, after a long and solemn consultation, determined that Smith should be put to death.

VII. Accordingly he was bound, and his head placed upon a large stone; but, just as the savages were raising their clubs

to dash out his brains, Pocahontas, the beloved daughter of Powhatan, a child only twelve years old, rushed forward, clasped the captive's head in her arms, and begged that his life might be spared. Her generous and heroic conduct touched her father's heart, and the sentence was revoked. Smith was not only set at liberty, but an escort of twelve men was



POCAHONTAS.

provided to conduct him to Jamestown.

VI. QUESTIONS.—21. How was he captured? 22. To whom did the Indians conduct him? 23. Where did Powhatan live? 24. Describe the York River. (See map, p. 27.) 25. What sentence was pronounced against Smith?

VII. 26. How did the Indians undertake to carry out the sentence? 27. State

VIII. On arriving there, after an absence of seven weeks, he found every thing in disorder. The colony was reduced to forty men, the strongest of whom were preparing to quit the country. The attempt at desertion was prevented by decisive action; order was restored; and a large accession to



THE ATTEMPT AT DESERTION SUPPRESSED.

their number by the arrival of Newport, who had been to England, revived the drooping spirits of the colonists. Smith, by his captivity and frequent expeditions, gained considerable knowledge of the language and manners of the Indians, and of the country and its resources, which enabled him to establish a peaceful intercourse between the settlers and the tribes of Powhatan.

---

how Smith was saved. 28. Besides revoking the sentence, what else did Powhatan do for Smith?

VIII. QUESTIONS.—29. What condition of things did Smith find at Jamestown upon his arrival there? 30. Of what value did Smith's captivity prove to Jamestown?



IX. The administration of the affairs of Jamestown, however, gave no satisfaction to the company in England. Believing that under a new charter, conferring greater privileges, their dreams of profit would be realized, they sought and obtained one, in 1609, and appointed Lord Delaware, a nobleman distinguished for his virtues as well as his rank, governor for life.

X. Christopher Newport, Sir Thomas Gates, and Sir George Somers, who had been appointed commissioners authorized to administer the affairs of the colony till the arrival of Lord Delaware, were dispatched to America with a fleet of nine vessels and more than five hundred emigrants. While on the passage a severe storm dispersed the fleet. One of the vessels, that bearing the commissioners, was wrecked on one of the Bermuda Islands, and one small one foundered: the other seven reached the James River in safety.

XI. Although no person had yet arrived authorized to supersede the president, Smith at first made no attempt to maintain his power; but the disorder and disaster that ensued so alarmed the better portion of the colonists, that, at their request, he resumed his abandoned functions. While returning from a visit to one of the settlements near Jamestown which he had established, he was so severely injured by an explosion of gunpowder, that, feeling the need of the best surgical skill, he returned to England towards the close of 1609.

XII. No sooner had Smith fairly departed than the colonists gave themselves up to idleness and vice. The Indians be-

IX. QUESTIONS.—31. When did the London Company get a second charter? 32. Why did they ask for it? 33. What appointment was conferred upon Lord Delaware? 34. What can you say of Lord Delaware?

X. 35. Who had been authorized to precede Lord Delaware in the management of the affairs of the colony? 36. How many vessels and emigrants did they have? 37. What accident happened to the fleet?

XI. 38. How was the colony governed after the arrival of the seven vessels? 39. What accident happened to Smith? 40. What did he do in consequence?

XII. 41. How did the colonists behave after his departure? 42. What was the consequence? 43. What was that period of time called? 44. What determination did the colonists finally come to? 45. Why was not the determination carried out?

came hostile, the horrors of famine ensued, and, in less than six months after, not more than sixty, of the five hundred persons whom he had left, remained. This period of distress and gloom was long remembered as the "starving-time." In consequence of the destitute condition to which the colonists were reduced, and of the gloomy prospects ahead, it was determined to desert Jamestown entirely, and seek safety among the English fishermen at Newfoundland. In four vessels they embarked; but just as they were drawing near the mouth of the river, Lord Delaware appeared with emigrants and supplies, and persuaded them to return.

XIII. Under the administration of the wise and good Delaware, order and contentment prevailed, and the affairs of the colony began to prosper; but, unfortunately, his health failed, and he was compelled to return to England, leaving the government to be administered by a deputy. New settlements were made in the vicinity of Jamestown, and notwithstanding the laws were harsh and strict, the colony continued to prosper. The company in England, however, with a view to greater advantages, obtained another charter, their third, in 1612. A remarkable feature of the new charter allowed the company to hold meetings for the transaction of business, thus giving to the body a democratic form of government.

XIV. In 1613 occurred the marriage of Pocahontas to a young Englishman named John Rolfe (*rolf*). This event proved to be of great importance, as it had the effect of establishing a confirmed peace with Powhatan, as well as with the powerful Chickahominy Indians. Three years after her marriage, Pocahontas accompanied her husband to England, where she was an object of great interest to all classes

XIII. QUESTIONS.—46. What is said of the affairs of the colony under the administration of Lord Delaware? 47. What, unfortunately, was he compelled to do? 48. When did the London Company procure their third charter? 49. What remarkable feature did the new charter contain?

XIV. 50. What interesting event took place in 1613? 51. Of what importance did it prove? 52. What further can you state of Pocahontas?

of citizens, and was presented at court. While preparing to return to her native land she suddenly died, leaving a son, from whom are descended many well-known families in Virginia.

XV. During the year 1613 two expeditions were sent from Virginia, under the command of Samuel Argall, an avaricious man, who afterwards became deputy-governor of the colony. Argall's object was the protection of the fishermen off the coast of Maine; but discovering a French settlement near the Penobscot, he destroyed it, and dispersed the inhabitants. In his second expedition he reduced and plundered Port Royal, in Nova Scotia.

XVI. The commencement of negro slavery in the English colonies dates from its introduction into Virginia, in 1620, when a Dutch vessel entered the James River with negroes, twenty of whom were landed and sold into perpetual slavery. The culture of cotton was begun the next year. A large number of colonists were sent to Virginia during the year 1620, among whom were about a hundred young women of good reputation, who were disposed of to the planters as wives, each purchaser giving one hundred pounds of tobacco, being the cost of the woman's passage to America.

XVII. After the marriage of Pocahontas, until the death of her father, peaceful relations existed between the settlers and the Indians; but, in 1622, Powhatan's successor commenced a bloody war, in one day massacring about three hundred and fifty men, women, and children. The settlers retaliated, slaughtering great numbers of the Indians and driving the rest into the wilderness.

XV. QUESTIONS.—53. Who was Samuel Argall? 54. Give an account of his first expedition from Virginia. 55. Of his second. 56. Describe the Penobscot River. (See map of Maine.) 57. How is Port Royal situated? (See map, p. 10.)

XVI. 58. How was negro slavery introduced into the English colonies in America? 59. What can you say of the commencement of cotton culture? 60. How did the planters get their wives?

XVII. 61. How long did peaceful relations continue between the whites and Indians? 62. Give an account of the first massacre.

XVIII. The affairs of the colony caused frequent meetings of the London Company. These were largely attended by the stockholders, and exciting debates, often of a political character, took place. The freedom of speech manifested on such occasions displeased King James, and he determined to accomplish the dissolution of the company. Under the pretext, therefore, that the disasters to the colony were the result of bad government, the dissolution was effected, and, in 1624, Virginia became a royal province.

XIX. The celebrated "Navigation Act," which secured to English ships the monopoly of the carrying trade with England, and seriously abridged the freedom of colonial commerce, was passed by Parliament in 1651. It was not at first enforced against Virginia, but after its re-enactment in 1660, with new provisions, it was rigorously executed, despite the remonstrances of the colonists. In 1673, Charles II., of England, granted to Lord Culpépper and the Earl of Arlington, "all the dominion of land and water called Virginia," for the term of thirty-one years.

XX. The complaints of the people grew louder and louder. In addition to this lavish grant, and the oppressiveness of the "Navigation Act," the colonists were restricted in the elective franchise; were required to conform to the doctrines and rituals of the Church of England; and the taxes levied were unequal and oppressive. They wanted but an excuse for appearing in arms, and it was soon found in the invasion made by the Susquehanna Indians. The invaders penetrated Virginia from the north, and carried desolation and death to many a lonely plantation.

---

XVIII. QUESTIONS.—63. Why did the London Company have frequent meetings? 64. What can you say of the meetings? 65. What did King James determine upon? 66. Why? 67. When did he accomplish his purpose? 68. What was his pretext for so doing?

XIX. 69. When was the celebrated "Navigation Act" passed? 70. What was its most obnoxious feature? 71. How did it affect the colonial commerce? 72. What can you say of its enforcement? 73. What grant of Virginia was afterward made to two persons?

XX. 74. Of what did the people complain? 75. What did they seek? 76. What excuse was soon found? 77. What did the Susquehannas do?

XXI. The people, knowing Governor Berkeley's measures for defense to be very inefficient, demanded permission to arm and protect themselves; but, being refused, they united ostensibly to repel the Indian invaders; and thus a struggle for popular liberty broke out in 1676, known as Bacon's Rebellion. Nathaniel Bacon, from whom the movement took its name, was at once pointed out as the leader. His social position was good; he was eloquent and courageous.

XXII. With a force of five hundred men he marched against the Indians, whom he met and defeated; and though Berkeley issued a proclamation declaring those in arms rebels, no notice was taken of the fulmination. The success against the Indians inspired the insurgents with confidence. They made demands which Berkeley consented to grant; but it soon becoming evident that he was acting treacherously, a desultory civil war broke out, in the course of which Jamestown was burned to the ground.

XXIII. Just as the success of the rebellion seemed to be established, and plans in respect to a new government were about to be adopted, Bacon suddenly died. The governor then pursued vigorous measures, and, regaining his former power, caused twenty-two of the insurgents to be hanged. Fines, imprisonments, and confiscations disgraced his administration until he was recalled by the king, in 1677.

XXIV. Berkeley's successor was Lord Culpepper, to whom and the Earl of Arlington the country had been granted in 1673, as previously stated. Virginia then became a pro-

XXI. QUESTIONS.—73. What demand did the people make of the governor? 79. Who was the governor? 80. How did he treat their demand? 81. What was the consequence? 82. Who was the leader of the insurgents?

XXII. 83. Relate the incidents of the rebellion.

XXIII. 84. What misfortune befell the insurgents? 85. What was Berkeley's conduct afterwards towards them?

XXIV. 86. Who succeeded Berkeley as governor of Virginia? 87. What change was then made in the character of the government? 88. How long did Virginia continue as a proprietary government? 89. What can you say of the subsequent government?

proprietary government. Culpepper continued to rule until 1684, when, in consequence of his mismanagement, the king revoked the grant made to him and Arlington, and deprived him of his office. Virginia thus became a royal province again, and so remained till the REVOLUTION.

## MASSACHUSETTS.

FROM ITS SETTLEMENT, IN 1620, TO THE UNION OF NEW ENGLAND COLONIES, IN 1643.

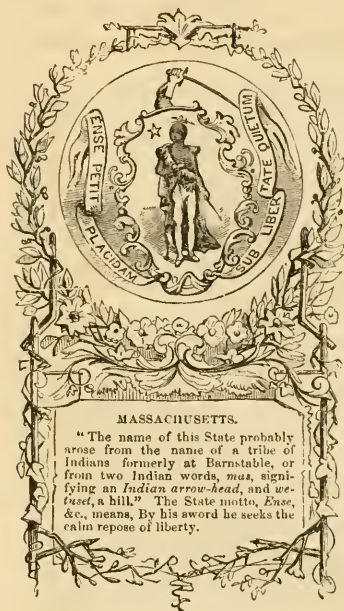


I. CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH, who had performed so creditable a part in the settlement of Virginia, set sail from London in 1614, with two ships, for the purpose of trade and discovery

MASSACHUSETTS.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. When do we next hear of Captain John Smith? 2. With how many vessels did he sail from England? 3. Where did he intend to go? 4. What was his object? 5. What did he accomplish? 6. What wrong was perpetrated upon the Indians?



in the region of Cape Cod. He reached the American coast, examined the shores from the Penobscot River to Cape Cod, and prepared a map of the country, to which he gave the name of New England. The luster of the expedition, unfortunately, was very much dimmed by the act of Thomas Hunt, who commanded one of the ships: by him twenty-four of the natives were captured and taken to Spain, where they were sold into slavery.



II. The original Plymouth Company having been superseded by another, called the Council of Plymouth, King James granted to the latter, in 1620, absolutely and exclusively, all the territory between the 40th and 48th parallels of north latitude, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific. It was not, however, under the direction of this council, or with the aid of the King, that the first permanent settlement in New England was made, but by a small band of

Pilgrims, dissenters from the Church of England, who fled from their own country to find an asylum from religious per-

II. QUESTIONS.—7. What company superseded the Plymouth Company? 8. What grant was made to the new company? 9. Through which Atlantic State does the 40th parallel of north latitude run? (See map of United States.) 10. Through what large island does the 48th parallel run? (See map of North America.) 11. By whom was the first permanent settlement made in New England? 12. What direction and aid should they have had? 13. Why did the Pilgrims leave England?



secution. The sect to which they belonged were known in England as Puritans.

III. They at first went to Amsterdam, in Holland, whence they removed to Leyden (*li'-den*.) At Leyden they lived in great harmony for about eleven years, under the pastoral care of John Robinson; but, from various causes, they became dissatisfied with their residence in Holland, and desired to plant a colony in America, where they might enjoy their civil and religious rights without disturbance. After much solicitation they obtained a grant of land from the London Company, and, being



III. QUESTIONS.—14. To what place did they first go after leaving England? 15. In what direction from London is Amsterdam? (See map, p. 39.) 16. To what place did they remove? 17. How long were they at Leyden? 18. Who was their pastor at Leyden? 19. Why did they leave Holland? 20. From whom did they obtain a grant of land? 21. What arrangement did they make with some merchants?

without means, formed a contract with some London merchants, who furnished the capital for the undertaking.

IV. As many as could be accommodated embarked on board a vessel called the *Speedwell*, but the larger portion remained at Leyden with Robinson. The ship sailed to Southampton, England, where she was joined by another ship, called the *Mayflower*, with a body of Puritans from London. The two vessels soon set sail, but had not gone far before the *Speedwell* was found to need repairs, and they entered the port of Dartmouth, England. They started a second time, but again put back, this time to Plymouth, where the *Speedwell* was abandoned as unseaworthy.

V. Then, after permitting those who chose to abandon the enterprise, the *Mayflower* set sail alone, with one hundred and one persons,—men, women, and children,—the most distinguished of whom were John Carver, William Brewster, Miles Standish, William Bradford, and Edward Winslow. After a boisterous passage of sixty-three days, they reached the American coast, and in two days after were safely moored in Cape Cod Bay. In the cabin of the *Mayflower*, before they landed, they agreed to and signed a solemn compact, by the terms of which they were to be ruled, and immediately after they unanimously elected John Carver governor for one year.

VI. Several days were spent by exploring parties in searching for a favorable locality to commence the settlement. At length, on the 21st of December, 1620, they all landed at a place which they called Plymouth, in memory of the hospitalities which had been bestowed upon them at the last English port

IV. QUESTIONS.—22. Did they all leave Holland? 23. Who remained? 24. On board of what vessel did they sail? 25. To what place did the *Speedwell* first go? 26. What accession was made to the company at Southampton? 27. What then took place? 28. What further can you state of the *Speedwell*?

V. 29. From what place did the *Mayflower* set sail alone? 30. With how many persons? 31. Who were the most distinguished of them? 32. What kind of a passage did they have? 33. What did they do before leaving the ship?

VI. 34. In what way were several days spent? 35. When did they land? 36. At what place? 37. Why did they call it Plymouth? 38. What can you say of their sufferings? 39. What befell Carver's family? 40. Who succeeded him as governor?

from which they had sailed. The winter was severe, and in less than five months nearly half of that Pilgrim band died from the effects of exposure and privations,—Governor Carver and his wife being among the number. William Bradford was thereupon elected to fill the vacancy, and during thirty years he continued to be a prominent man in the colony.

VII. In April, of 1621, a treaty of friendship was made with Massasoit (*mas-sas'-so-it*), chief of the Wampanoags (*wom-pa-nō'-ags*), which was sacredly kept for more than thirty years. Canonicus, the great chief of the Narragansetts, who regarded the English as intruders, kept the colonists in fear for awhile; but the decided course of Bradford eventually compelled him to sue for peace.

VIII. In the mean time other influences were at work to extend the range of settlements. A company composed of gentlemen who were interested in the fisheries and trade of New England, having purchased a tract of land, sent out an expedition of a hundred persons, under the charge of John Endicott. These reached Salem in 1628, and made a settlement, thus laying the foundation of the Massachusetts Bay Colony. The proprietors soon after obtained a charter from the king, under the incorporated title of “The Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay, in New England.”

IX. Accessions were rapidly made to the new colony, and settlements at Charlestown and other places were made. An important change took place in 1629, by which the government of the company was transferred from London to New England. This induced men of fortune and intelligence to become interested, among whom was John Winthrop, who

VII. QUESTIONS.—41. What important treaty was made? 42. For how long a time was the treaty observed? 43. What can you say of Canonicus?

VIII. 44. What settlement was made in 1628? 45. In what direction from Plymouth is Salem? (See map p. 37.) 46. What led to the settlement of Salem? 47. When was Salem settled? 48. What charter was afterward obtained by the proprietors of Salem?

IX. 49. What can you say of the growth of the Massachusetts Bay Colony? 50. What induced Winthrop and others to join the colonists? 51. When was Boston settled? 52. By whom was it settled?

was afterward elected governor, and who set sail for the colony in the beginning of April, 1630. Winthrop\* was accompanied by about three hundred families, mostly Puritans, who settled at Boston and adjacent places, in 1630.

X. The banishment of Roger Williams, in 1635, was an event not only important in itself, but also on account of the principle it enunciated. Though a Puritan, Williams denounced the religious intolerance practiced in New England, for which, as well as certain opinions touching civil matters, he was banished. Nor was this the only banishment. A Mrs. Hutchinson,† who persisted in holding meetings of her own sex, and promulgating peculiar views, was also compelled to leave.

XI. An act of the "General Court" at Boston, in 1636, by which about two thousand dollars were appropriated for the purpose of founding a public school or college, led to the establishment of what is now the oldest literary institution in America. In 1638, the Rev. John Harvard bequeathed upwards of three thousand dollars to it, which, in honor of the benefactor, was named Harvard College. Its location is at Cambridge (*kāme'-brij*), about three miles from Boston.

\* John Winthrop was born in Groton, county of Suffolk, England, in 1588. He was re-elected governor of Massachusetts every year until 1634. With the exception of two or three years, he was afterwards deputy governor or governor until his death, which occurred in 1649.

† Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, upon being sentenced to banishment, at first went to Rhode Island. After the death of her husband, which occurred in 1642, five years later, she removed with her children to New Netherlands. The Indians and the Dutch were then at war, and, in an attack made by the former, her house was set on fire, and she and all her family, except one child, either perished in the flames or were massacred by the savages.

X. QUESTIONS.—53. What intolerance was shown towards Roger Williams? 54. What towards a woman?

XI. 55. Give an account of the establishment of Harvard College. 56. How is Cambridge situated? (See map, p. 100.)

## NEW HAMPSHIRE.



I. The Council of Plymouth, it will be recollected, in 1620 obtained a grant of land including the whole of what is now known as New England. In 1622, a portion of this grant—that extending from the Merrimac to the Kennebec—was ceded by the council to Ferdinand Gorges (*gor'-jes*) and John Mason, two of its most active members. Gorges and Mason called the territory which they thus obtained Laconia, and, in the spring of 1623,

sent emigrants who made settlements at Little Harbor, near Portsmouth, and at Dover. These, then, were the first settlements in New Hampshire.

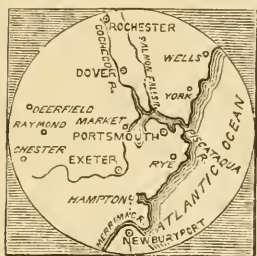
II. In 1629, the Rev. John Wheelwright and others, who evidently did not consider the grant to Gorges and Mason as of much value, purchased of the Indians all the territory be-

NEW HAMPSHIRE.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. How did the Council of Plymouth dispose of a portion of their lands in 1622? 2. Describe the Merrimac River. (See map p. 37.) 3. Describe the Kennebec. (See map, p. 10.) 4. What name did Gorges and Mason give to their country? 5. What rivers bounded Laconia? 6. How is Portsmouth situated? (See map, p. 44.) 7. In what direction from Portsmouth is Dover? (See map, p. 44.)

II. 8. What purchase of territory was made in 1629? 9. How did this purchase conflict with the claims of Gorges and Mason? 10. Into what body of water does the Piscataqua flow? (See map, p. 44.) 11. What grant did Mason obtain in 1629? 12. What name did he give to the country?

tween the Merrimac and Piscataqua. In the same year Mason obtained from Gorges a grant, in his own name alone, of the country which Wheelwright had purchased, and to this he gave the name of New Hampshire.

III. The different settlements of New Hampshire in time came to be governed by different proprietors; but the people, believing their interests would be promoted by a change, in 1641 formed a union, and placed themselves under the protection of Massachusetts. This privilege was enjoyed for a period of nearly forty years, when, in 1680, the two colonies were separated by order of the king, and New Hampshire became a royal province.



PORTSMOUTH AND VICINITY.

IV. In the following year a vexatious controversy began, as to the proprietorship of the lands, which continued for a number of years. This dispute grew out of the claims which the heirs of Mason had laid to all the territory between the Merrimac and Piscataqua, and it was not terminated until they relinquished all the unoccupied portions of the

province. During the wars known as King Philip's and King William's, the settlers of New Hampshire suffered severely from the incursions of the Indians. In one case, the attack upon Dover in the latter war, twenty-one persons were killed, and others were captured and taken to Canada.

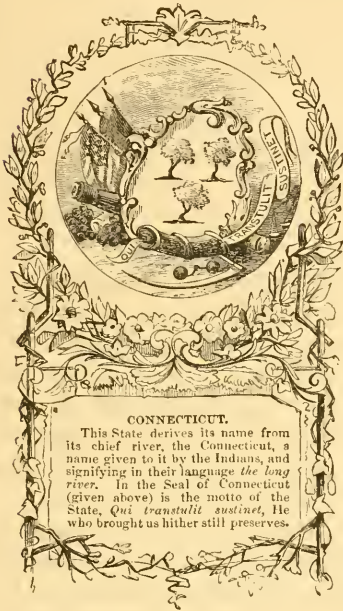
V. The district of New Hampshire was several times connected with Massachusetts,—the first from 1641 to 1680, as previously stated; but, in 1741, it became a separate province, and so continued till the Revolution.

III. QUESTIONS.—13. What change in the government of the New Hampshire settlements took place in 1641? 14. Give a further account of the political connection between New Hampshire and Massachusetts. (See, also, paragraph V.)

IV. 15. What controversy respecting lands began in 1681? 16. Give some account of it. 17. How did the wars of King Philip and King William affect the settlements of New Hampshire?



## CONNECTICUT.



I. IN 1630 the Council of Plymouth ceded to the Earl of Warwick the soil of Connecticut; and this grant, in the following year, was transferred to Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke, and associates.

II. As the Dutch, at the time, laid claim to all the territory thus ceded, they resolved to prevent any settlements being made within the limits of the new grant. Accordingly, they proceeded from New York, sailed up the Connecticut River to where Hartford now

stands, and there erected a fort. The structure was hardly completed when Captain William Holmes and a company from Plymouth sailed up the river, and, though forbidden by the Dutch, who threatened to fire upon them if they attempted to pass the fort, the English kept on unhurt, and commenced the settlement of Connecticut, at Windsor (*win'-zer*), by erecting in that year, 1633, a trading-house there.

III. In the autumn of 1635, a company of sixty men,

CONNECTICUT.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What grant of land was made in 1630? 2. What, in 1631?

II. 3. What resolution did the Dutch determine upon? 4. What action did they accordingly take? 5. When and where was Connecticut first settled? 6. Describe the Connecticut River. (See map of New England.)



women, and children journeyed from Massachusetts through the wilderness, and settled at Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield. At about the same time a colony was commenced at the mouth of the Connecticut, which, in honor of Lord Say-and-Seal and Lord Brooke, was called Saybrook. But the migration conducted by the Rev. Thomas Hooker, in 1636, was one of the most important to Connecticut. With about a hundred persons he departed from the vicinity of Boston, and, after a toilsome journey through swamps and forests, arrived in the valley of the Connecticut. His people settled mostly at Hartford.

IV. It was at this time that difficulties with the Indians began to arise. The Pequods, a warlike tribe inhabiting the southeast part of Connecticut, committed many acts of hostility, and sought an alliance with the Narragansetts in an effort to exterminate the colonists; but, through the exertions of Roger Williams, the league was prevented. The Indians, however, continuing their murderous depredations, a court, summoned at Hartford, in 1637, formally declared war against them.

V. Soon a force of eighty colonists, with about the same number of Mohegan Indians, started against the foe. The expedition, commanded by Captain John Mason, sailed down the Connecticut and along Long Island Sound, and landed at a point in the southwestern part of Rhode Island. Here it was joined by other Indian allies, until the whole force amounted to not less than five hundred men. Mason proceeded by quick marches, and surprised the chief fort of the Pequods, situated

---

III. QUESTIONS.—7. What account can you give of the settlements made in the autumn of 1635? 8. Of the colony at the mouth of the Connecticut? 9. Of the migration conducted by Hooker?

IV. 10. Who were the Pequods? 11. What alliance did they try to bring about? 12. How was it prevented? 13. When and by whom was war declared against the Pequods?

V. 14. What expedition was sent against them? 15. Give an account of the movements of the expedition. 16. At what place was the chief fort of the Pequods situated? 17. How is New London situated? (See map, p. 47.) 18. What was the result of the expedition?

on the Mystic River, eight miles northeast of New London. It and the wigwams were burned, and more than six hundred men, women, and children perished by fire or were slain.

VI. The Pequods never recovered from their great loss. The severe blow dealt them was promptly followed by vigorous measures, until finally the survivors, about two hundred in number, surrendered in despair, and were sold into captivity



or incorporated with other tribes. So complete was their overthrow that the very name of Pequods was no longer heard.

VII. A third colony was established in Connecticut, in 1638, called the New Haven colony. The land was bought of the Indians, and under the guidance of the Rev. John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, a colony, remarkable for the

VI. QUESTIONS.—19. What effect did the blow have upon the Pequods? 20. What further account can you give of the Pequods?

VII. 21. When was a third colony established in Connecticut? 22. By whom? 23. At what place? 24. How is New Haven situated? (See map, p. 47.)

religious spirit that marked its laws, was planted and flourished.

VIII. It will be seen that three colonies were established in Connecticut, namely : the Connecticut colony, embracing Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield, the inhabitants of which acknowledged the authority of Massachusetts; the Saybrook colony; and the New Haven colony. The one at the mouth of the Connecticut, Saybrook, maintained its separate existence until 1644, when it was annexed to the Connecticut colony. Then there were only two. These were united in 1655, under a royal charter granted by Charles II., king of England. This charter was exceedingly liberal, and confirmed in every particular the constitution which the people had adopted at Hartford, twenty-six years before.

IX. For a number of years the colonists of Connecticut enjoyed comparative freedom from anxiety and molestation; but, in 1687, Sir Edmund Andros, who had been appointed royal governor of New England, appeared before the Assembly, then in session at Hartford, and demanded the surrender of their charter. A discussion at once arose which was protracted till evening, when the charter was brought in and laid upon the table; but just as Andros was stepping forward to take it, the lights were suddenly extinguished. When the candles were relighted, the document could not be found: it had been carried away by Captain Wadsworth, and hid in the hollow of a tree which was afterward known as the Charter Oak.

X. Andros, notwithstanding his inability to procure the charter, assumed the government, and administered it in his own name until he was seized at Boston, in 1689, and sent to England, for trial on a charge of maladministration of public affairs. The people then received the charter from its hiding-

---

VIII. QUESTIONS.—How many colonies, in all, were established in Connecticut? 26. Give their names. 27. What settlements did the Connecticut colony embrace? 28. What became of the Saybrook colony? 29. What union afterward took place?

IX. 30. What demand was made of the Connecticut people in 1687? 31. Give an account of the proceedings that followed.

X. 32. What further can you say of Andros? 33. Of the charter?

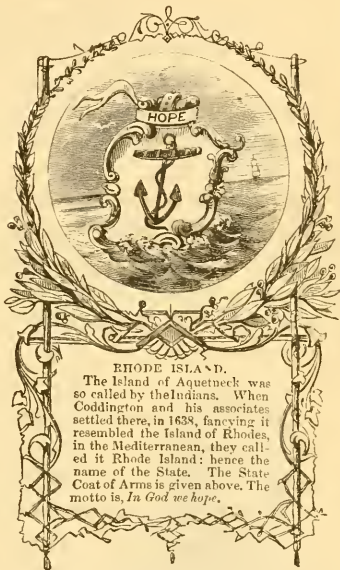
place, and Connecticut again assumed her position as an independent colony.

## RHODE ISLAND.

I. UPON the banishment of Roger Williams\* from Massachusetts, he remained several months with the Narragansetts, and then fixed his habitation on the spot where the city of Providence now stands. This was in the year 1636. The place selected by him for settlement was purchased of the Indians, and to it he gave the name which it still bears, to commemorate "God's merciful providence to him in his distress." Williams was prompt to proclaim

religious toleration in his new home, and the rules governing the colony were made by a majority of the inhabitants; consequently immigrants came in great numbers, mostly from the oppressed of the neighboring colonies.

II. A year after, William Coddington, who had become dis-



\* Roger Williams was born in Wales, in 1606. He died in Rhode Island, in 1683.

RHODE ISLAND.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. When was Rhode Island settled? 2. At what place? 3. By whom? 4. How did Williams procure the land? 5. Why was Providence so called? 6. What induced immigrants to flock to Rhode Island?

II. 7. What settlement was made by Coddington? 8. Why did he leave Boston? 9. What was Coddington's settlement afterward called? 10. What was Williams's afterwards called?

satisfied with his residence in Boston, in consequence of the church opposition to which he had for a long time been subjected, accepted an invitation from Williams, and, with eighteen others, purchased from the Indians the island of Rhode Island, and settled there. This settlement was afterwards known as the Rhode Island Plantation, and that of Williams as the Providence Plantation.

III. It was claimed on the part of Plymouth, and the assumption was supported by Massachusetts, that the lands whereon Williams and Coddington had settled belonged to Plymouth, and that consequently the two settlements were under the jurisdiction of that colony. Rather than acknowledge this claim, Williams went to England and obtained from Parliament a free charter of incorporation, whereby the two settlements of Rhode Island were united, in 1644, under one government, as the Rhode Island and Providence Plantations.



ROGER WILLIAMS.

IV. After Charles II. ascended the throne of England, Rhode Island, in 1663, obtained a new charter. When Andros assumed the government of New England, operations, under the charter, were for the time necessarily suspended; but immediately after his seizure at Boston, as elsewhere stated, the charter again became the fundamental law of the colony, and was the only constitution of the State till 1842.

III. QUESTIONS.—11. What claim did the colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts set up? 12. What did Williams do in consequence? 13. When were the two plantations united? 14. Under what name?

IV. 15. By whom was a new charter granted to Rhode Island? 16. When was it granted? 17. What can you say of it? 18. What interruption to its operation was for a time suffered? 19. When was the administration of affairs under the charter resumed? 20. Till what year did the charter then continue in operation? 21. How many years passed from the time it was granted till its final supersedure?

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. When, where, and by whom was Virginia settled?.....	27
2. What misfortunes did the colony for a time encounter?.....	28
3. Give an account of Edward Wingfield.....	27, 28
4. State how Smith attained to the presidency.....	28
5. What excursions and explorations did he make?.....	28, 30
6. What misfortune befell him while up the Chickahominy?.....	30
7. What parade and show did the Indians make of him?.....	30
8. What then did they determine to do with him?.....	30
9. Who was Pocahontas, and how did she save Smith?.....	30
10. How many men did Smith find at Jamestown upon his return?.	31
11. What selfishness were some of them contemplating?.....	31
12. How was a change in the condition of the colony effected?....	31
13. How long did the London Company hold their first charter?...	32
14. Whom did the company appoint governor for life? ...	32
15. How long did Smith remain in the colony, and why did he leave?	32
16. Give an account of the "Starving Time" in Virginia.....	32, 33
17. What change took place in the affairs of Virginia in 1612?..	33
18. Give an account of Pocahontas after she saved Smith's life..	33, 34
19. Give an account of Argall's expeditions from Virginia.....	34
20. What additions were made to the Virginia colony in 1620?....	34
21. What change took place in the affairs of Virginia in 1673?....	35
22. Give an account of Bacon's Rebellion.....	35, 36
23. What account can you give of Virginia after the Rebellion?..	36, 37
24. What of Captain John Smith after he left Virginia? .....	37, 38
25. What grant of land was made to an English company in 1620?..	38
26. Give an account of the settlement of Massachusetts.....	38, 39, 40
27. What can you say of Massasoit and Canonicus?.....	41
28. How was the Massachusetts Bay Colony founded?.....	41
29. What took place in 1629 and 1630, in relation to that colony?..	41, 42
30. What intolerant spirit was shown by the colony in 1635?....	42
31. What joint grant of land was made to Gorges and Mason?.....	43
32. What two settlements were made in 1623?.....	43
33. What two grants of the same land were made in 1629? .....	43, 44
34. What further can you state of the colonial history of New H.?	44
35. How did Lord Say-and-Seal and Lord Brooke get Connecticut?	45
36. Give an account of the settlement made at Windsor.....	45, 46
37. Give an account of the Saybrook colony.....	46, 48
38. Give an account of the Pequod War.....	46, 47
39. Give an account of the New Haven colony.....	47, 48
40. State how the three colonies of Connecticut were united.....	48
41. Give an account of the two settlements made in Rhode Island..	49, 50



## MASSACHUSETTS.

FROM THE UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES, IN  
1643, TO "THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR."

I. IN 1643 a union was formed by the four colonies of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, the object being to secure mutual protection against the encroachments of the Dutch and French, and for better security against the hostility of the Indians. When, five years after, Rhode Island desired to be admitted to the confederacy, the request was not granted, because she refused to be incorporated with Plymouth, as part of that colony, and thus lose her separate existence. The general affairs of the union were managed by a board of commissioners, consisting of two from each colony; and, in this way, the confederacy existed for nearly fifty years. When, at last, it was destroyed, by the loss of their charters, the colonists still cherished a desire for union.

II. In 1656 a lamentable trouble commenced, growing out of the arrival in that year of a number of Quakers from England. A report, which represented them to be a people of peculiar opinions and conduct, had preceded them, and those who first arrived were consequently sent back at once. Shortly after, a law was passed, intended to prohibit their coming into the united colonies at all; but this failing of its object—the Quakers still continuing to come—another law was enacted, decreeing the punishment of death upon all who returned from banishment.

---

MASSACHUSETTS.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What union was formed in 1643? 2. What request did Rhode Island make? 3. Why was it not granted? 4. How were the general affairs of the union conducted?

II. 5. What arrival took place in 1656? 6. What was done with those who first arrived? 7. Why were they sent back? 8. Did this course keep the Quakers from coming? 9. What severe law was thereupon enacted?



III. This also failed of its object. Many of the banished returned, four were executed, some were publicly whipped, and others were cast into prison. The great severity of the law finally caused a general feeling of condemnation; a widespread sympathy for the accused began to be felt, and, after five years of trouble, the atrocious act was repealed.

#### KING PHILIP'S WAR.

IV. During the life of Massasoit, the treaty of friendship made between him and the people of Plymouth was faithfully kept. After his death, his two sons, Alexander and Philip, were looked upon as being unfriendly to the whites; and when, upon the death of the elder brother, Philip became chief, trouble began to be anticipated.



KING PHILIP.

V. It was evident to the Indians that the spreading settlements were fast reducing their domains and breaking up their hunting-grounds; and they saw plainly, in the growing power of the whites, their own inevitable extinction. Nothing short of a combination of all the New England tribes for the extermination of the colonists, it was thought, could arrest the tide against them; and Philip, so it was alleged, was the leading spirit in plotting the combination. A converted Indian, who had been sent as a missionary among his people, was the principal informer against the chief. This man was afterward found murdered. The execution by the whites of

---

III. QUESTIONS.—10. What effect did the law have? 11. How were the Quakers then punished? 12. What further can you say of the troubles?

IV. 13. Who was Alexander? 14. Philip? 15. To what position did Philip attain?

V. 16. What became evident to the Indians? 17. How did the Indians suppose they could be saved from extinction? 18. Who was supposed to be the leading spirit in plotting an Indian combination? 19. Who informed against Philip?

three Indians, who had been arrested, tried, and convicted of the murder, may be considered as the immediate cause of the war.



INDIAN WARFARE.—THE SURPRISE.

VI. The first attack was made by Philip, in 1675, upon the people of Swanzey, a village thirty-five miles southwest from Plymouth. The alarm was given, and he was pursued, by a force consisting of Plymouth troops and volunteers

QUESTIONS.—20. What became of the informer? 21. What was the immediate cause of King Philip's war?

VI. 22. Give an account of the attack upon Swanzey. 23. To what place was Philip pursued? 24. Where is Mount Hope situated? (See map, p. 37.) 25. What can you say of the war that followed?

from Boston, as far as his home at Mount Hope, which he was forced to abandon. He sought safety in a swamp. Here he was besieged for a number of days, but at length made his escape, with the most of his warriors. The war that followed was of the most desolating character. The savages, grown desperate, burned village after village, and carried death and destruction throughout the country for miles around.

VII. Although a treaty of peace had been made with the Narragansetts, they proved unfaithful to their obligations, and became the allies of Philip. This becoming known, a strong force was sent against them, and, in an immense swamp in the southern part of Rhode Island, they were defeated with great loss. Yet they continued their depredations till the death of Philip, which occurred in 1676. The shot of a faithless Indian terminated the life of the wily chief.

VIII. A controversy, which had been going on for a number of years, between the heirs of Gorges and Mason and the Massachusetts colony, concerning the province of Maine, was, in 1677, decided by judicial authority in favor of the heirs, and Massachusetts then purchased their interest. Three years after, a separation of New Hampshire from Massachusetts was declared, and the former became a royal province—the first in New England; but the title to Maine was retained by Massachusetts until the year 1820.

IX. The English Parliament, with a view to monopolizing the trade with the colonies, passed the "Navigation Act." The opposition to this, as well as to other obnoxious laws, as shown by Massachusetts, displeased the king, James II., and he therefore deprived that colony of her charter. Sir Edmund Andros, who, by his subsequent career, made himself

---

VII. QUESTIONS.—26. How did the Narragansetts behave? 27. What followed? 28. What became of Philip?

VIII. 29. What controversy was settled in 1677? 30. How was it settled? 31. What took place three years after? 32. Till what time was Maine a part of Massachusetts?

IX. 33. Why was the "Navigation Act" passed? 34. How was the law treated by Massachusetts? 35. What did the king then do?

infamous, on account of his unjust and oppressive government, was sent to govern New England.

X. These proceedings on the part of the king rendered him exceedingly unpopular,—so much so, that when the news of the English Revolution and James's dethronement reached Boston, it caused great rejoicing. Andros and the most obnoxious of his officers were seized and sent to England, and the former mode of government was again established.

#### KING WILLIAM'S WAR.

XI. James fled to France, and William, Prince of Orange, and Mary, his wife, the eldest daughter of James, were called to the English throne, as king and queen of that country. The cause of the fugitive king was earnestly espoused by the French monarch, and this, principally, led to a contest between the two powers, known in history as King William's War, in which the respective colonists became involved and suffered terribly.

XII. During the early part of the contest, which lasted from 1689 to the peace of Ryswick (*riz'-wick*), in 1697, the French and their Indian allies made expeditions against Dover, Schenectady (*ske-nek'-ta-de*), and other settlements in the northern colonies, and committed barbarities of the most shocking character. To check these incursions, an expedition, under Sir William Phipps, was dispatched by Massachusetts against Nova Scotia. The capture of Port Royal was easily accomplished, and Phipps returned to Boston with a large amount of booty.

XIII. A second undertaking, of greater magnitude, was

---

X. QUESTIONS.—36. What made James II. unpopular in Massachusetts? 37. What, consequently, caused great rejoicings there? 38. What treatment was meted out to Andros?

XI. 39. To what place did James retreat? 40. Who then was made king of England? 41. Who, queen? 42. What was the principal cause of King William's War?

XII. 43. How long did the war last? 44. What places did the French and Indians attack? 45. How is Dover situated? (See map, p. 44.) 46. How is Schenectady situated? (See map, p. 62.) 47. Give an account of Phipps's expedition against Nova Scotia.

planned by the New England colonies and New York, having for its object the conquest of Canada, though the prospect of plunder gave to it all the vitality it possessed. A large naval force, under Sir William Phipps, left Massachusetts, while a land expedition proceeded from New York; but the undertaking proved a signal failure. The land troops reached the head of Lake Champlain, and then, because no means of transportation were provided, turned back. The expedition by water was pushed with no more energy and dispatch, and it too failed.

XIV. Phipps, after his return, was sent to England, for the purpose of procuring aid in the further prosecution of the war, and also to obtain for Massachusetts a restoration of the charter which King James had taken away. His mission, as regards the first purpose, was unsuccessful: as regards the second, King William refused to restore the old charter, but, instead, he granted a new one, which united Massachusetts, Plymouth, Maine, and Nova Scotia in one royal government, and upon Phipps was conferred the office of governor.

XV. One of the very first acts of the new governor was the formation, in 1692, of a court to try certain persons who were accused of witchcraft, the belief in which, at the time, prevailed among the people of Salem and neighboring towns. Twenty persons were put to death, more than fifty were tortured or frightened into a confession, and many suffered imprisonment. The delusion, which lasted more than six months, was finally dispelled, and the most of those who had participated as prosecutors in the unrighteous work confessed their error; still there were some, the most prominent of whom was Cotton Mather, an eccentric but influential minister, who defended their course to the last.

XIII. QUESTIONS.—48. What second undertaking was planned? 49. What gave to it its vitality? 50. Give an account of the land expedition. 51. Of the expedition by water. 52. How is Lake Champlain situated? (See map, p. 62.)

XIV. 53. Why was Phipps sent to England? 54. How successful was he?

XV. 55. What was one of the first acts of Governor Phipps? 56. How is Salem situated? (See map, p. 37.) 57. How many persons were put to death? 58. How many were tortured or frightened into a confession? 59. What further account can you give of the delusion?



XVI. King William's War continued to afflict the colonies, extending over a period of about eight years, till it was brought to a close, as before stated, by the treaty of 1697.

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.

XVII. Upon the death of James II., which occurred in France, in 1701, the French monarch acknowledged his son, who was then in exile, to be the lawful heir to the English throne. This tended to produce a spirit of resentment in England, where the crown had been settled upon Anne (*an*), the second daughter of James. While the English were making preparations for war, King William died, and Anne became sovereign of England. The interference of France in the matter of the succession to the English crown, in connection with other causes, led to a war between England on the one side, and France and Spain on the other, which is known in America as Queen Anne's War, but, in Europe, as the *War of the Spanish Succession*.

XVIII. In consequence of a treaty of neutrality which the confederated tribes of Indians, commonly known as the Five Nations, had made with the French in Canada, New York did not suffer from any invasion from the north, the Five Nations occupying lands within that colony. The weight of the war, therefore, fell upon the people of New England. Bodies of French and Indians made incursions from Canada, fell upon the defenceless villages, and murdered or carried into captivity the helpless inhabitants.

XIX. The capture of Port Royal, in 1710, after an unsuccessful attempt made three years before, was the most important event of the war. The name of the place was thereupon

---

XVII. QUESTIONS.—60. What course did the French monarch pursue, upon the death of James II.? 61. How did this affect the English people? 62. While preparations were being made for war, what occurred? 63. What were the causes of Queen Anne's War? 64. By what other name was the contest known?

XVIII. 65. How did New York escape invasion during the war? 66. Where was the weight of the war felt?



changed to Annapolis, in honor of the English queen, and Acadia was permanently annexed to the British realm. The contest continued about eleven years, hostilities having commenced in 1702, and closed by the treaty of Utrecht (*u'-trekt*), in 1713

#### KING GEORGE'S WAR.

XX. A peace of nearly thirty years followed, which was broken during the reign of George II., by King George's War. This contest had its origin in European disputes, relating, principally, to the kingdom of Austria, and, for that reason, is known in Europe as the *War of the Austrian Succession*.

XXI. War having been declared between England and France in 1744, the colonial possessions were at once involved. The most important event was the capture of Louisburg (*loo'-e-burg*), by a force, mostly of New England troops, under William Pepperill, aided by an English fleet, commanded by Commodore Warren. The contest between the two nations continued about four years, and was terminated by the treaty of Aix-la-chapelle (*ākes-la-sha-pel'*), in 1748, by which all acquisitions of territory which had been made by England and France during the war were mutually restored.

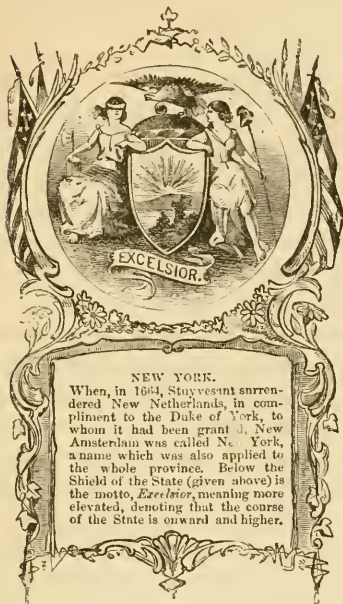
---

XIX. QUESTIONS.—67. What was the most important event of the war? 68. When was Port Royal captured? 69. What change took place in the name? 70. Why was the name so changed? 71. What permanent annexation was made to the British realm? 72. How long did the war continue?

XX. 73. How long did peace continue after King William's War? 74. What war then broke out? 75. What was the cause of King George's War? 76. By what other name is it known?

XXI. 77. When was war declared? 78. What was the most important event of the war? 79. How long did the war continue? 80. By what treaty was it terminated? 81. What provision did the treaty make as regards acquisition of territory?

## NEW YORK.



I. UNTIL most of the large bays and rivers on the eastern side of North America had been explored, it was generally supposed that there existed a more direct and less dangerous passage by water, from the Atlantic to the Pacific, than the route around Cape Horn. Among those who entertained this belief was Henry Hudson,\* an English navigator, who, actuated by the desire to become the fortunate discoverer of such a passage, if any existed, made four voyages to the coast of America.

II. In his third voyage, made in 1609, while sailing in the service of "The Dutch East India Company," he discovered the river which now bears his name. Having sailed up the stream to the head of ship navigation, and explored it in a small boat for some miles further, probably as far as Albany, he returned to Europe.

\* Hudson made his fourth voyage in 1610. While in Hudson's Bay, a mutiny occurring among his men, he, with eight who remained faithful to him, was put into an open boat and abandoned. Two ships were afterwards sent from England to make search for him, but no tidings of the bold navigator could ever be gained.

I. NEW YORK.—QUESTIONS.—1. Who was Henry Hudson? 2. How many voyages did he make to the coast of America? 3. What was his object?

II. 4. When did he discover the Hudson? 5. In whose employ was he at the time? 6. How far up the Hudson did he proceed? 7. What was his object? 8. Who was the discoverer of the Hudson River?



HENRY HUDSON.

III. The Dutch, claiming that Hudson's discovery gave them a title to the country, in 1614 built a fort on Manhattan or New York Island, and, in the following year, built a second fort, at Albany, which they called Fort Orange. Their claim to territory included the whole region from Cape Cod to the southern shore of Dela-

ware Bay, though that part in their possession was the only portion known as New Netherlands.

IV. The actual colonization of the country did not commence until 1623. In that year, under the auspices of a new organization, called "The Dutch West India Company," two settlements were made; one at Fort Orange, the site of Albany, and the other on Manhattan Island, to which the name of *New Amsterdam* was given. The company offered a large tract of land and certain privileges to every individual who would form a settlement of fifty persons. This led, more than two centuries afterward, to very serious disturbances, known as the "anti-rent difficulties."

V. New Netherlands had, in the course of time, four Dutch governors, the first of whom was Peter Minuits: he was succeeded by Wouter Van Twiller, during whose administration a controversy was begun, occasioned by the alleged encroachments of the English on the eastern end of Long Island and on the Connecticut River. Sir William Kieft (*keeft*), the third

III. QUESTIONS.—9. What claim to territory did the Dutch make? 10. When and where did they build two forts? 11. How is Albany situated? (See map, p. 62.) 12. What territory was known as New Netherlands?

IV. 13. When was New York first colonized by the Dutch? 14. What settlements were then made? 15. What inducements were offered to settlers? 16. What difficulties followed, a long time after?

V. 17. Give in order the names of the four successive Dutch governors of New Netherlands. 18. What occurred during Van Twiller's administration? 19. What, during Kieft's? 20. What was Kieft's fate?

governor, involved the colony in a strife with the Swedes of Delaware, whose settlements he considered as encroachments upon New Netherlands. He also, by his unwise and inhuman conduct, brought on a disastrous war with the Indians. After an administration of about nine years, the West India Company deprived him of his office. On his return to Europe, the ship in which he sailed was wrecked, and the guilty man perished.



VI. Peter Stuyvesant, the fourth and last of the Dutch governors, arrived in 1647, when he commenced a vigorous though often arbitrary rule. He conciliated the Indians, made a treaty settling boundary disputes with the English,

VI. QUESTIONS.—21. What did Stuyvesant accomplish? 22. What was the consequence? 23. What did the people desire? 24. What did they demand? 25. How was their demand treated?

gained by conquest the Swedish settlements on the Delaware,



PETER STUYVESANT.

and by judicious regulations did much to encourage commerce. The consequence was, that many immigrants came from the oppressed, the discontented, and the enterprising of other colonies and European nations; and soon a body of people were gathered together who, notwithstanding all their privileges, desired other and greater ones. They even demanded a share in

the government; but Stuyvesant resisted, and his conduct was afterwards approved by the home government.

VII. In 1664 Charles II., in entire disregard of the claims of the Dutch, granted to his brother, the Duke of York, the whole region from the Connecticut River to Delaware Bay, and a fleet, under Colonel Nicolls, was sent to take possession of the territory. In the mean time, all that portion now known as New Jersey was sold by the duke to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret.

VIII. The appearance of the English fleet before New Amsterdam convinced Stuyvesant, when too late, of the imprudence of his conduct in refusing the demand of the colonists. They, hoping to enjoy more freedom under English rule, determined to comply with Nicolls's summons to surrender; but Stuyvesant, faithful to his employers, the Dutch West India Company, declined to sign the articles of capitulation

---

VII. QUESTIONS.—26. Who was the Duke of York? 27. From whom did he receive an extensive grant? 28. When did he receive it? 29. What region was granted? 30. What was done to procure possession of the territory? 31. What disposition did the duke make of a portion of his grant?

VIII. 32. What mistake had Stuyvesant made? 33. How did it prove to be a mistake? 34. What can you say of Stuyvesant's subsequent conduct? 35. What changes in names took place? 36. Who was the first English governor of New York?

until the town was actually in the possession of the English. The new occupants changed the name of New Amsterdam to New York, a name which was afterward applied to the whole territory under the control of the duke; and Fort Orange was called Albany. Nicolls was the first English governor.

IX. In 1673, during a war between England and Holland, the Dutch regained possession not only of New York, but of New Jersey and the settlements on the Delaware. Their hold, however, proved of brief duration; for, by the treaty of peace, made a few months after, the whole territory was restored to the British crown. To remove all doubts concerning the Duke of York's title to the lands, a new charter, confirming the former grant, was given by the king, and under it Sir Edmund Andros was appointed governor. When Charles II. died, his brother, the Duke of York, ascended the throne as James II. But, in consequence of the arbitrary conduct of James, a revolution took place, the king fled to France, and William and Mary were proclaimed joint monarchs of England.

X. The intelligence of these proceedings in England was received in New York with demonstrations evincing the satisfaction of the people. Jacob Leisler (*lice'-ler*), aided by several hundred armed men, and with the approbation of the citizens generally, took possession of the fort in the name of the new sovereigns. Although never officially recognized as governor, Leisler continued at the head of affairs, managing with prudence and energy, for more than two years, his son-in-law, Milborne, acting as his deputy. Upon the arrival of Governor Sloughter (*slaw'-ter*), bearing a commission direct

IX. QUESTIONS.—37. What occurred in 1673? 38. How long did the Dutch keep possession? 39. What grant was then given a second time? 40. Who succeeded Charles II. as king of England? 41. What can you say of James's rule? 42. What was the consequence?

X. 43. How was the news of the English revolution received in New York? 44. What did Leisler do? 45. How long was he the acting governor? 46. Who was his deputy? 47. When did Leisler surrender his authority? 48. Did this satisfy the enemies of Leisler or not? 49. What was the fate of Leisler and Milborne?



from the English sovereigns, Leisler surrendered all authority into his hands. This would not satisfy the enemies of Leisler: they were bent upon his destruction. So he and Milborne were arrested, tried on a charge of treason, and condemned to death. Sloughter, while drunk at a feast, signed the death-warrant, and both were executed.

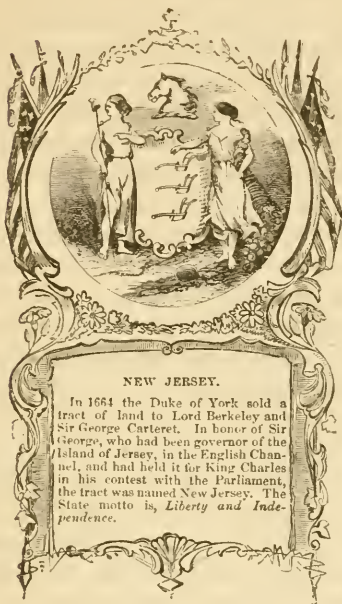
XI. In 1741 the Dutch church and other buildings in the city of New York were burned, and a house was robbed by slaves. Witnesses testified that the negroes had conspired to burn the city, murder the inhabitants, and set up a government of their own. An intense excitement among all classes followed, and before it was allayed more than thirty persons, condemned as having been engaged in the plot, were executed, and others were transported to foreign parts. Doubtless a plot of some kind had existed, though the accounts of it were evidently greatly exaggerated, and many innocent persons were made to suffer.

XII. The history of New York during the next few years, and till the commencement of the French and Indian War, contains no events of much importance. During King George's War, which commenced in 1744 and continued nearly four years, the Indians, in alliance with the French, made frequent incursions into the territory between Albany and Crown Point, and a number of skirmishes took place; but in the great final struggle for territory between England and France, which had its beginning in 1754, New York took no inconsiderable part.

XI. QUESTIONS.—50. What took place in 1741? 51. What testimony was produced? 52. What followed? 53. What punishments were inflicted?

XII. 54. When did King George's War commence? 55. By what name is that war known in Europe? *Ans.—As the "War of the Austrian Succession."* 56. How did New York suffer during King George's War? 57. How is Albany situated? (See map, p. 62.) 58. How, Crown Point? (See same map.) 59. What war broke out in 1754? *Ans.—The French and Indian War.*

## NEW JERSEY.



I. THE territory of New Jersey was included in the Dutch province of New Netherlands. The precise date of the first settlement within its limits is not ascertained: it is known, however, that the Dutch had a trading settlement at Bergen as early as 1622; and, in 1623, they built Fort Nassau, on the east side of the Delaware River, a few miles below Philadelphia; but the settlement made at Elizabeth, in 1664, by emigrants from Long Island, is considered as the beginning of colo-

nization in New Jersey.

II. As stated in the colonial history of New York, the Duke of York, to whom the English king had granted, in 1664, the whole province of New Netherlands, in the same year sold New Jersey to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. Philip Carteret, brother of Sir George, was the first governor; and, by settling at Elizabethtown, now called Elizabeth, made it the first capital.

NEW JERSEY.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. In what province was the territory of New Jersey included? 2. Where, at an early period, did the Dutch have a trading settlement? 3. When did they build Fort Nassau? 4. How was the fort situated? 5. When was New Jersey first colonized? 6. At what place? 7. By whom?

II. 8. How did Berkeley and Carteret acquire New Jersey?

III. The liberal constitution published by the proprietors, by which it was provided that no rents for the use of lands would be required for the space of five years, induced many persons to settle. The attempt to collect the rents, after the five years, produced a great deal of ill feeling, especially among those who had purchased lands of the Indians, they asserting that a deed from the aborigines was superior to any other title. After disputing about two years, the settlers revolted and elected James Carteret, a dissolute son of Sir George, governor.

IV. After the Dutch had resigned possession of New Netherlands by treaty stipulations, in 1674, New Jersey, a portion of the territory so given up, was again granted to the Duke of York. In disregard of the rights of Berkeley and Carteret, the duke appointed Andros governor over the entire reunited province, but afterward agreed to restore New Jersey to the rightful proprietors. This promise he only partially performed.

V. Berkeley having sold his interest in the proprietorship of New Jersey to Edward Byllinge (*bil'-linge*), an English Quaker, the purchaser, in consequence of pecuniary embarrassment, made an assignment to William Penn and two other Quakers. The proprietors then divided the whole territory into two portions, Carteret taking the eastern, which thereafter was known as East Jersey, and the Quakers taking the western, known as West Jersey. In 1682 New Jersey became the exclusive property of Quakers, William Penn and eleven of his brethren having, in that year, purchased the eastern division.

III. QUESTIONS.—9. What induced persons to settle in New Jersey? 10. What was the consequence when an attempt was made to collect the rents? 11. After disputing two years, what did the people do?

IV. 12. When did the Duke of York get possession of New Jersey a second time? 13. What wrong did the duke then perpetrate? 14. Did he persist in the wrong?

V. 15. What did Berkeley do with his interest in New Jersey? 16. What did Byllinge do with his? 17. What division was then made of the territory? 18. What was the condition of things, as regards ownership, in 1682?



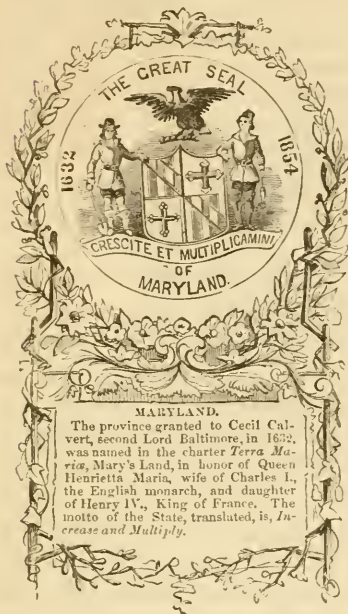
VI. When the Duke of York, as James II., ascended the throne of England, in seeking to annul the colonial charters, he placed New Jersey under the jurisdiction of Andros; but the revolution in England, and the expulsion of the tyrannical governor from America, put an end to the obnoxious rule. The Jerseys were in an unsettled condition until the proprietors, in 1702, surrendered their powers of government to the crown. The two provinces were then united, and for thirty-six years New Jersey was a gubernatorial dependency of New York, with a distinct legislative assembly of its own. In 1738 the connection was severed forever, and from that time to the Revolution New Jersey was a separate royal province.

VI. QUESTIONS.—19. How did the Duke of York, as James II., act towards New Jersey? 20. What proceeding put an end to the obnoxious rule? 21. What can you say of the subsequent condition of New Jersey? 22. What connection afterward existed between New York and New Jersey? 23. What can you say of the subsequent colonial history of New Jersey?

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. When did the New England colonies form a union ? . . . . .	52
2. Which of the colonies was not admitted to the union ? . . . . .	52
3. Give an account of the troubles that commenced in 1656 . . . . .	52, 53
4. What were the names of Massasoit's two sons ? . . . . .	53
5. What led to the conflict known as King Philip's War ? . . . . .	53, 54
6. When and how was the war begun ? . . . . .	54
7. Give an account of Philip's subsequent career . . . . .	54, 55
8. Give the colonial history of Maine . . . . .	55
9. In what did the conduct of Massachusetts displease King James ? . . . .	55
10. What appointment did Andros receive from the King ? . . . .	55, 56
11. What war of European origin broke out in 1689 ? . . . . .	56
12. How did the French carry on the war in America ? . . . . .	56
13. How did the English, under Phipps, retaliate ? . . . . .	56
14. Give an account of the attempt to conquer Canada . . . . .	56, 57
15. On what mission was Phipps afterwards sent ? . . . . .	57
16. What was the result of his efforts in England ? . . . . .	57
17. Give an account of the "witchcraft delusion" . . . . .	57
18. When and by what treaty was King William's War closed ? . . . .	56, 58
19. In how many years after did the next war break out ? . . . . .	58
20. What were the causes of Queen Anne's War ? . . . . .	58
21. What important capture did the English make in 1710 ? . . . .	58, 59
22. What country was then called Acadia ? . . . . .	19
23. When did Queen Anne's War begin and end ? . . . . .	59
24. By what war was the peace of the colonies next disturbed ? . . . .	59
25. Give an account of the capture of Louisburg . . . . .	59
26. When did King George's War begin and end ? . . . . .	59
27. What did the English do with Louisburg at the close of the war ? . . .	59
28. When and by whom was the Hudson River discovered ? . . . .	60
29. What was Hudson's object in exploring the river ? . . . . .	60
30. By what right did the Dutch claim the region explored ? . . . . .	61
31. When did the Dutch commence to colonize New Netherlands ? . . .	61
32. What can you state of Peter Minuits ? . . . . .	61
33. By whom was he succeeded in the office of governor ? . . . . .	61
34. What account can you give of Kieft's rule and fate ? . . . .	61, 62
35. By whom was Kieft succeeded in the office of governor ? . . . .	62
36. Give an account of what occurred in 1664 . . . . .	63, 64
37. Give an account of the Leisler and Milborne troubles . . . . .	64, 65
38. Give an account of the settlement of New Jersey . . . . .	66
39. What connection did Penn have with the history of New Jersey ? . . .	67
40. During what period were New York and New Jersey united ? . . .	68
41. When afterward was New Jersey a separate province ? . . . . .	68

## MARYLAND.



I. By the charter granted to the London Company in 1609, the limits of Virginia were extended, and embraced all the territory now forming the States of Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina. The dissolution of the company having been effected in 1624, the whole region became the property of the crown.

II. In 1631, William Clayborne obtained from Charles I. a license to traffic with the Indians. Under this authority, which was afterward con-

firmed by the Governor of Virginia, he established two trading-posts: one on Kent Island, in Chesapeake Bay, and the other at the mouth of the Susquehanna; but the permanent settlement of Maryland was accomplished by other agencies.

III. Influenced by a desire to provide an asylum for Catholics, then persecuted in England, Sir George Calvert, a Roman

MARYLAND.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. Was Maryland once a part of Virginia? 2. What other State was also a part? 3. When and how did they become such? 4. When and by whom was the right to make divisions of the whole region afterward acquired?

II. 5. What license did Clayborne obtain? 6. What did he do under its authority? 7. How is Kent Island situated? (See map, p. 24.) 8. Describe the Susquehanna River. (See map, p. 25.) 9. What large city is situated southwest from the mouth of the Susquehanna? (See same map.)

III. 10. Who was Sir George Carteret? 11. For what did he apply to the king? 12. What desire influenced him? 13. Why was the charter issued to his son?



Catholic nobleman, whose title was Lord Baltimore, applied for a charter to establish a colony in America. King Charles readily agreed to make the grant, but before the document received the royal seal, Calvert died. It was then issued to Cecil (*se'-sil*) Calvert, son of Sir George, who, by the death of his father, inherited the title of Lord Baltimore.



LORD BALTIMORE (SECOND).

IV. This charter was the most liberal one, in every respect, that had thus far been granted by the English crown. It secured to emigrants equality in religious rights and civil freedom, and made the government of the colony independent of that of England. It also provided that no tax should be levied upon the colonists by the crown, and that no law should be established without the sanction of the freemen or their deputies. The province was called Maryland, in honor of Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I.

V. The first body of emigrants sent by Lord Baltimore consisted of about two hundred persons, mostly Roman Catholics. Leonard Calvert, brother of the lord proprietary, who conducted them from England, became the first governor. They arrived in 1634, and at once commenced a settlement, which they anticipated would become a great city, calling it St. Mary's.\*

VI. Clayborne, from the first, claimed Kent Island, and refused to submit to the authority of the governor. Having determined to defend his claim by force of arms, a severe skirmish took place, in which his party suffered defeat. Clay-

---

\* Scarce a trace of the settlement now remains.

IV. QUESTIONS.—14. What is said of the charter? 15. Name four of its provisions. 16. What is said of the colony's name?

V. 17. When, where, and by whom was Maryland settled?

VI. 18. What claim did Clayborne insist upon? 19. Give an account of the skirmish that followed. 20. What further account can you give of Clayborne?

borne himself had fled to Virginia just previous to the battle, but the Maryland Assembly having declared him guilty of treason, the Governor of Virginia sent the fugitive to England for trial.

VII. His claim was refused; but, being acquitted of the charge of treason, he returned to Maryland, and, in 1645, incited a rebellion, in the course of which he made himself complete master of the province, and compelled the governor, in his turn, to fly into Virginia. In the following year, however, Calvert appeared at the head of a military force and recovered possession.

VIII. After the governor's resumption of office, the assembly enacted a law known as the "Toleration Act," which secured the free exercise of religious opinions to all persons professing belief in Jesus Christ. Although, by the terms of the charter, religious freedom was guaranteed to every individual, yet, by the passage of this act, the guarantee received the sanction of law.

IX. During the supremacy of Cromwell and the Puritans in England, Parliament appointed commissioners, of whom Clayborne was one, to administer the government of the colony. An act of the assembly declared that Catholics were not entitled to the protection of the laws of Maryland: this led to a civil war between the Catholics, who adhered to the proprietor, and the Protestants, who sided with Parliament. After Cromwell's death the rights of Lord Baltimore were restored, and, for nearly thirty years, the colony enjoyed repose.

X. Upon the death of the second Lord Baltimore, his son, Charles Calvert, inherited his title and became the proprietor of the province. He retained possession until 1691, when

---

VII. QUESTIONS.—21. Give an account of "Clayborne's Rebellion."

VIII. 22. Of the Toleration Act.

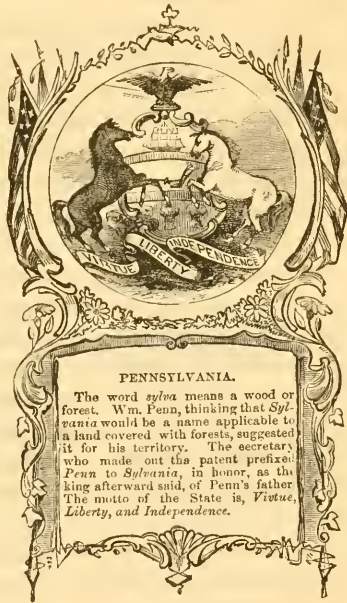
IX. 23. How did Clayborne get to be a commissioner to administer the affairs of Maryland? 24. Give an account of the civil war. 25. What change took place after the death of Cromwell?

X. 26. What further can you state of the colonial history of Maryland?

King William constituted Maryland a royal province, in which condition it continued for a space of more than twenty years. Finally, in 1715, the proprietor's rights were restored to his infant heir, the fourth Lord Baltimore, and Maryland remained a proprietary government from that time till the Revolution.

## PENNSYLVANIA.

I. IN the early part of 1681, William Penn,\* whom we have already spoken of in the history of New Jersey, actuated by a desire to found a colony where civil and religious liberty would be enjoyed, and where the people might dwell together in the bonds of peace, obtained from Charles II., in payment of a debt due to his father, a grant of all the territory within the present limits of Pennsylvania. The permanent settlement of the colony dates from the founding of Philadelphia,† in 1682, by Penn,



### PENNSYLVANIA.

The word *sylva* means a wood or forest. Wm. Penn, thinking that *Sylvania* would be a name applicable to a land covered with forests, suggested it for his territory. The secretary who made out the patent prefixed Penn to *Sylvania*, in honor, as the king afterward said, of Penn's father. The motto of the State is, *Virtue, Liberty, and Independence.*

\* William Penn was born in London, in 1624. He died at Ruscombe, Berkshire County, England, in 1718.

† Philadelphia, signifying *brotherly love*, though the name of a city in Asia Minor, was so called by Penn because of its intrinsic significance.

PENNSYLVANIA.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What grant of land was made in 1681? 2. What was Penn's ruling desire? 3. When was Pennsylvania settled? 4. At what place? 5. Where and by whom had previous settlements been made?

though small settlements of Swedes had been previously made on the Island of Tinicum and on the western bank of the Delaware.

II. In addition to the grant from King Charles, Penn became, by purchase and grant from the Duke of York, the proprietor of all that section now constituting the State of Delaware: this, he called the "Territories" or the "Three Lower Counties on the Delaware." As the natural consequence of these two grants being made to the same party, all the territory embraced in both was united under one government.

III. Penn's arrival in America was greeted by the settlers of Delaware, and those whom he had sent to Pennsylvania in the previous year, 1681, with great enthusiasm; and, after several meetings for conference with the Indians, he made his famous treaty with the "red men" beneath a wide-spreading elm, at a place now called Kensington, a suburb of Philadelphia, and paid them for their lands. This treaty was "never sworn to and never broken."



WILLIAM PENN.

IV. His treatment of the Swedes on the Delaware was also marked by a spirit of liberality. To them he gave assurances that they should not be molested in their religion or laws. The wisdom of his course toward the Indians, as well as of his government generally, was soon apparent, for the colony had a more rapid

and peaceful growth than any other in America.

II. QUESTIONS.—6. What territory was added to Penn's jurisdiction? 7. How was it so added? 8. What name did Penn give to the territory-acquired from the Duke of York?

III. 9. How was Penn received in America? 10. What took place at Kensington? 11. Where is Kensington? 12. What statement is made respecting the treaty?

IV. 13. How did Penn treat the Swedes? 14. What assurances did he give them? 15. What was soon apparent? 16. How was it made apparent?

V. After devoting himself zealously for two years to his duties, he intrusted his government to a council, and, terminating his first visit to America by sailing for England, left a prosperous colony behind of seven thousand persons. After a lapse of fifteen years he made a second visit to Pennsylvania; but during his absence the "Three Lower Counties on the Delaware" had become dissatisfied and withdrawn from the union. In England he had been imprisoned on account of his supposed adherence to the cause of James II., the deposed king, and the government of his province had been conferred upon Colonel Fletcher, the Governor of New York, who reunited Delaware to Pennsylvania.

VI. Penn found his colonists discontented and clamorous for greater political privileges. He thereupon offered them a new frame of government, more liberal than the former one, which the people of Pennsylvania gladly accepted; but the Delaware colonists declined it, declaring that they preferred to exist as an independent colony. Their preference was so far acquiesced in, as to allow them an assembly of their own.

VII. Penn directed his attention to various reforms, having reference, especially, to the condition of the Indians and negroes; but his plans were arrested by tidings from England of a ministerial project for abolishing all the proprietary governments in America. Deeming his presence in England necessary to the defeat of the project, he sailed from the colony in 1701, and never visited it again.

VIII. Upon his death, which occurred in 1718, he left his American possessions to his three sons, who continued to administer the government, most of the time by deputies, until the Revolution, when their claims were purchased by the commonwealth of Pennsylvania.

---

V. QUESTIONS.—17. What was the length of Penn's first visit to America? 18. How many colonists were there then in Pennsylvania? 19. When did he again visit Pennsylvania? 20. What had occurred during his absence?

VI. 21. How did Penn find his colonists? 22. What did he offer them? 23. Did they accept his offer? 24. What was done as regards Delaware?

VII. 25. To what did Penn direct his attention? 26. What arrested his plans? 27. What followed? VIII. 28. Give the subsequent colonial history of Pennsylvania.

## DELAWARE.



I. THE settlement of Delaware may be said to have its origin in the desire of Gustavus Adolphus, the renowned king of Sweden, to found a free colony in the New World for all persecuted Christians. His death occurring before the project was undertaken, a delay of several years followed; but finally a charter was granted by the government of that country to the Swedish West India Company.

II. In 1638 a body of about fifty emigrants, sent out by the company, arrived at Cape Henlopen. After purchasing of the Indians all the lands from the Cape to the Falls of the Delaware, at Trenton, they erected a fort and commenced a settlement on Christiana Creek, near Wilmington. The territory thus purchased they called New Sweden, and, under the direction of Peter Minuits, a former governor of New Netherlands, settlements were multiplied and contentment prevailed.

III. The Dutch of New Netherlands were far from looking

DELAWARE.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What was the origin of the settlement of Delaware? 2. What charter was granted?

II. 3. When was Delaware settled? 4. What purchase of lands did the Swedes make? 5. How is Cape Henlopen situated? (See map, p. 24.) 6. In what part of Delaware is Wilmington situated? (See map, p. 24.) 7. What did the Swedes call their territory? 8. Who was the first governor of New Sweden?



upon these proceedings with favor. They protested against, what they considered, the intrusion upon their territory, and menaced the settlements with destruction ; but the Swedes, anxious to retain their possessions, heeded neither protest nor menace. On Tinicum Island, situated a few miles below Philadelphia, they built a fort, and there established the capital of the province. A fort which the Dutch afterward constructed, near their settlement on Christiana Creek, they destroyed.

IV. In revenge for these defiant measures, Stuyvesant, then governor of New Netherlands, with a force of more than six hundred men, proceeded, in 1655, against the Swedes, subjected them to the authority of Holland, and thus put an end to Swedish power in America.

V. The Dutch retained possession of Delaware till they, in turn, were overpowered by the English, in 1664. From that time till 1682 it was connected with the province of New York. By the grant made to William Penn, in 1682, Delaware was joined to the government of Pennsylvania, and the connection existed, with more or less closeness, until the Revolution.

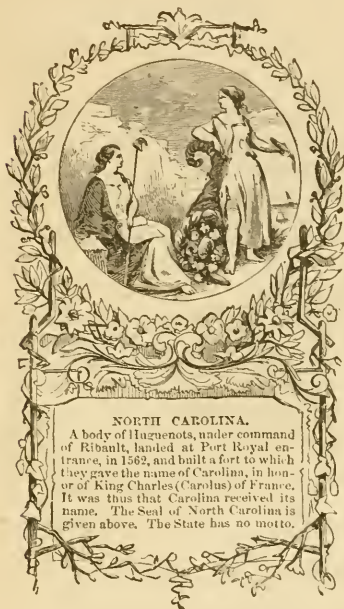
---

III. QUESTIONS.—9. How did the Dutch look upon the Swedish settlements ? 10. What can you say of their protests and menaces ? 11. What did the Swedes do at Tinicum Island ? 12. How is Tinicum Island situated ? (See map, p. 65.)

IV. 13. What did Stuyvesant do ? 14. When was the colony of New Sweden broken up ?

V. 15. How long did the Dutch retain possession of Delaware ? 16. What further account of the colony can you give ?

## NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA.



I. THE earliest attempts to settle North Carolina, as before described, were made by parties of English emigrants, sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh, in 1585 and 1587. The whole region extending from Albemarle Sound to the St. John's River in Florida, and designated as Carolina, was granted, in 1630, to Sir Robert Heath; but as he made no attempts at colonization, or at least none that were successful, the grant was subsequently declared forfeited.

II. In 1663 this same territory was granted by Charles II. to Lord Clarendon and seven other noblemen of England. Previous to this, in or about 1650, a number of emigrants from Virginia had made a settlement upon the Chowan River, near the present village of Edenton, which was afterward called "The Albemarle County Colony." After the grant to Clarendon and his associates had been made, it was discover-

NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. When and by whom were the first attempts made to settle North Carolina? 2. What grant was made in 1630? 3. Why was it afterward declared forfeited?

II. 4. What grant was made in 1663? 5. When, where, and by whom was North Carolina settled? 6. Describe the Chowan River? (See map, p. 79.) 7. How is Edenton situated? (See same map.) 8. Which colony was called the "Albemarle County Colony?"

ed that the settlement upon the Chowan was outside of the northern boundary of the province: a new grant was therefore given, by which the limits of Carolina were extended from Virginia to the middle of Florida.



III. A second settlement was made in North Carolina, previous to the grant to Clarendon and others, by a band of New England adventurers. This was near Wilmington; but as it did not prosper it was soon abandoned. In 1665 a company of planters, from Barbadoes, founded a permanent settlement not far from the site of the former one near Wilmington, which was afterwards called "The Clarendon County Colony."

IV. As it was anticipated by Clarendon and the other proprietors that Carolina would become a powerful empire,

III. QUESTIONS.—9. What is said of a second settlement in North Carolina? 10. Of the "Clarendon County Colony?"

IV. 11. What anticipation did Clarendon and his associates entertain? 12. What, therefore, did they decide upon? 13. What accordingly was done? 14. How did the constitution work?

they decided to have a form of government adequate to the grandeur of their anticipation. Accordingly, a constitution was prepared by the Earl of Shaftesbury, a statesman of ability, and John Locke, the eminent philosopher; but, as might have been expected, it proved unsatisfactory to the colonists, not being suited to their circumstances; and, after a strife of more than twenty years, it was repealed.



V. The earliest attempt to plant a colony in South Carolina was made by the Huguenots at Port Royal entrance, as before stated, in 1562. In 1670, more than a century after, a colony was founded on the western bank of the Ashley River, near its mouth, which, in honor of one of the grantees of Carolina, was called "The Carteret County Colony." In the course of time most of "The Clarendon County" settlers removed to the southern colony, and thus, as only two colonies

remained in Carolina, the northern one was designated as North Carolina, while the other was known as South Carolina.

VI. The people of the southern colony, in a few years, came to the conclusion that the site of their settlement had not

V. QUESTIONS.—15. What was the first attempt to settle South Carolina? 16. When, where, and by whom was South Carolina settled? 17. What name was given to the colony? 18. What took place in the course of time? 19. How did North and South Carolina come by their names?

been well chosen, and that a location at the junction of the Cooper and Ashley Rivers would give them better facilities for commerce. Acting upon this conviction, they abandoned their first settlements, after an occupancy there of ten years, and, in 1680, laid the foundation of their new town, calling it Charleston, in honor of Charles II., King of England.

VII. In 1729 Carolina was sold to the King of England, and then separated into North and South Carolina. From that time till the Revolution they were royal provinces.

## GEORGIA.

I. THE territory of Georgia, it will be recollected, was included in the grant of Carolina, made in 1663, to Clarendon and others. After a period of sixty-six years it again became the property of the crown, at which time it was still a wilderness, unoccupied except by savage tribes.

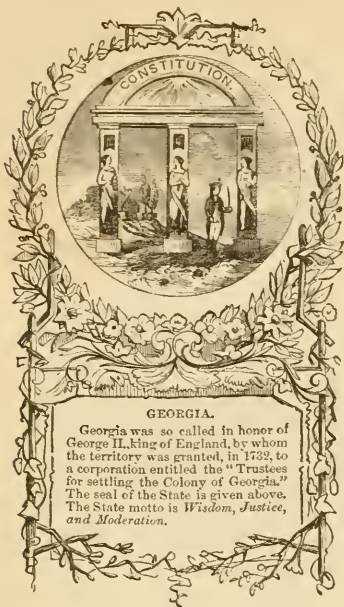
II. Though claimed by Spain as a part of Florida, the English king, George II., disregarded the claim, and, in 1732, granted to a corporation of twenty-one trustees, for twenty-one years, all that tract between the Savannah and Altamaha (*al-ta-ma-haw'*) Rivers, which, in honor of the king, was called Georgia. The object of the corporation was to provide an asylum in America for the destitute of England, the grant being "in trust for the poor."

VI. QUESTIONS.—20. What did the people of the southern colony conclude upon, in the course of time? 21. How long did they stop at the first place settled? 22. When was Charleston settled? 23. How is Charleston situated? (See map, p. 79.)

VII. 24. What took place in 1729? 25. What is said of the subsequent colonial history of the two Carolinas?

GEORGIA.—I. 1. In what grant was the territory of Georgia at first included? 2. How long did it remain as a part of that grant? 3. What did it then become?

II. 4. What claim was set up by Spain? 5. Notwithstanding the claim, what was done by the English king? 6. Describe the Savannah River. (See map, p. 79.) 7. The Altamaha. (See map of Georgia.) 8. Why was Georgia so called? 9. What was the object of the corporation?



III. The first settlement was made in 1733, the year after the grant, by one hundred and twenty persons, under the guidance of James Oglethorpe \* (*ō'-gl-thorp*), a member of the British Parliament, one of the trustees, and governor of the colony. On a high bluff overlooking a river, the foundation of a town was laid, which received the name of Savannah.

IV. The colony made rapid increase in numbers, but, owing to the poverty of the settlers, and to their being unac-

customed to habits of industry, as also to the impolitic regulations established by the trustees, it did not grow much in wealth. Oglethorpe made two visits to England: in the first, returning with about three hundred emigrants; and in the second, with a regiment of six hundred men for the defense of the southern frontier, which was threatened by the Spaniards.

V. In consequence of the conflicting claims to territory,

---

\* General James Oglethorpe was born in England, in 1688. He died there in 1785.

---

III. QUESTIONS.—10. When and where was Georgia settled? 11. Who was Oglethorpe? 12. How is Savannah situated? (See map, p. 79.)

IV. 13. What is said of the colony's growth in population? 14. Of its growth in wealth? 15. How many visits did Oglethorpe make to England? 16. Whom did he bring with him on his first return to the colony? 17. Whom, on his second? 18. Why did he bring the regiment?



and during a war between England and France, the colonists became involved in hostilities with their Spanish neighbors. An expedition, under Oglethorpe, invaded Florida to go against St. Augustine, but returned unsuccessful. In 1742, two years after, this invasion was retaliated, and a Spanish fleet, with a large number of men, appeared at the mouth of the Altamaha River. The troops landed, captured one fort, and were proceeding against another, situated on St. Simon's Island, when, by a stratagem conceived by Oglethorpe, they became alarmed, retreated to their shipping, and sailed for Florida.



JAMES OGLETHORPE.

VI. Peace was soon after restored; but, though the colonists were free from one source of trouble, they were not satisfied with the rule of the corporation. This state of things, nevertheless, existed until 1752, when, wearied with their troublesome charge, the trustees surrendered their charter to the crown, and Georgia became a royal province.

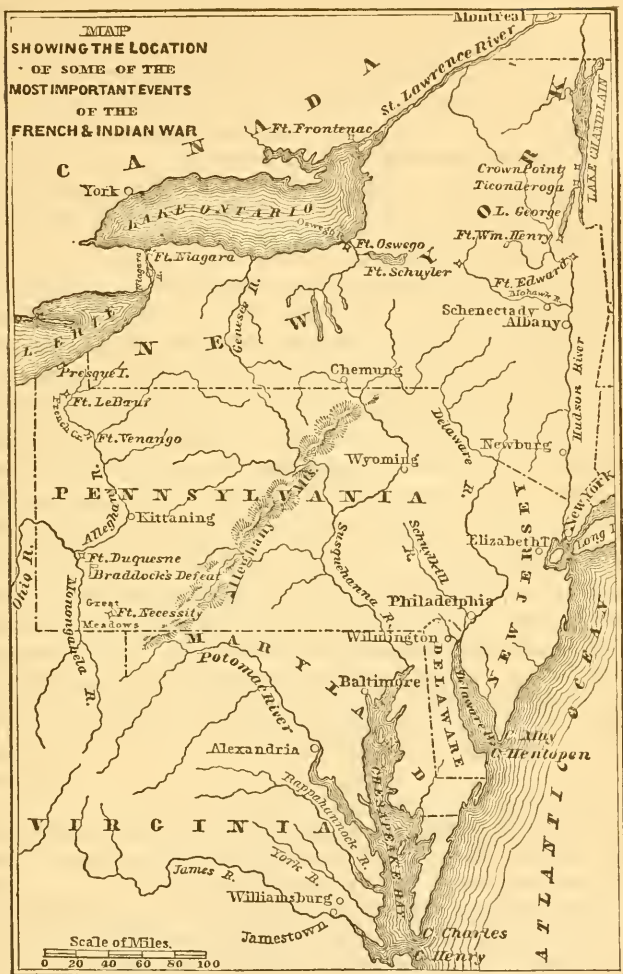
V. QUESTIONS.—19. What was the cause of the hostility between the people of Georgia and Florida? 20. Give an account of the expedition against St. Augustine. 21. How is St. Augustine situated? (See map, p. 9 ) 22. Give an account of the retaliative expedition. 23. How is St. Simon's Island situated?

VI. 24. How did the colonists feel after the war? 25. How long did the trustees continue to rule? 26. What took place then?

### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. Give the history of Maryland previous to 1631.....	70
2. What trading ports did Clayborne establish?.....	70
3. Give some account of Sir George Calvert.....	70, 71
4. What grant was made to Cecil Calvert?.....	71
5. What liberal provisions did the charter contain?.....	71
6. Give an account of the first settlement.....	71

	PAGE
7. What trouble did Clayborne give to the colony? . . . . .	71
8. Give an account of Clayborne up to the year 1645. . . . .	71, 72
9. What success did he have against Governor Calvert? . . . . .	72
10. What liberal act was passed by the Maryland Assembly? . . . .	72
11. What intoleration was shown by a subsequent assembly? . . . .	72
12. Give a history of the ownership of Maryland. . . . .	70, 71, 72, 73
13. What grant of land did Charles II. make to William Penn? . . .	73
14. Was the grant a gift, or did Penn pay for it? . . . . .	73
15. What settlement was made in the year 1682? . . . . .	73
16. What people had previously settled in Pennsylvania? . . . . .	74
17. How did Penn acquire the territory of Delaware? . . . . .	74
18. By what two names did Penn call Delaware? . . . . .	74
19. How did Penn treat the Indians, as regards their land? . . . . .	74
20. What treatment did the Swedes receive at his hands? . . . . .	74
21. What was the consequence of his righteous course? . . . . .	74
22. What did Penn do after being two years in America? . . . . .	75
23. How many years did he remain from his colony? . . . . .	75
24. What had caused him to remain away so long? . . . . .	75
25. Why did he leave the colony again in 1701? . . . . .	75
26. After Penn's death, to whom did he leave his colony? . . . . .	75
27. How were the claims of Penn's heirs afterward disposed of? . . .	75
28. Who was Gustavus Adolphus? . . . . .	76
29. What desire, with reference to colonization, did he have? . . . .	76
30. When was his desire carried out? . . . . .	76
31. What account can you give of Peter Minuits? . . . . .	61, 76
32. Where did the Swedes settle, and locate their capital? . . . . .	76, 77
33. Give an account of the expedition against the Swedes. . . . .	77
34. What can you tell of the subsequent history of Delaware? . . . .	77
35. What were the first attempts to settle North Carolina? . . . .	21, 22, 78
36. Give an account of "The Albemarle County Colony." . . . .	78, 79
37. Give an account of "The Clarendon County Colony." . . . .	79
38. What was done to make Carolina a powerful empire? . . . . .	79, 80
39. Give an account of the first attempt to settle South Carolina. . .	80
40. Give an account of "The Carteret County Colony." . . . .	80
41. What change was made in the South Carolina Colony in 1680? .	81
42. When was Carolina separated into two provinces? . . . . .	81
43. During what period did Georgia belong to Clarendon & Co.? . . .	81
44. During what subsequent period did it belong to the king? . . . .	81
45. What can you say of the grant made in 1732? . . . . .	81
46. In what year was Georgia first settled? . . . . .	82
47. Who was the leading man in the settlement of Georgia? . . . . .	83
48. Give an account of Oglethorp's expedition southward. . . . .	83



*(Questions to be answered from the above map.)*

How is Williamsburg situated? Where was Fort Le Bœuf? In what direction did Washington travel, in going from Williamsburg to Fort Le Bœuf? What two rivers, uniting, form the Ohio? Where did Fort Duquesne stand? What two forts were on Lake Champlain? Where was Fort William Henry? Fort Oswego? Fort Niagara? Fort Schuyler? Fort Edward? Fort Venango? Fort Necessity?

## SECTION III.

## THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

I. ALTHOUGH the boundaries between the British and French possessions in America had been, for more than a quarter of a century, a subject of dispute, the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, made in 1748, left them still undefined.

II. The English, basing their title upon the discoveries made by the Cabots, laid claim to all the territory from Newfoundland to Florida, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific. The French claimed all the interior portion adjacent to the rivers St. Lawrence and Mississippi and their tributaries, upon the ground that they had been the first to explore and occupy it; and, the better to secure their claim, they erected forts at various places through this region, so as to make a complete chain of defenses from Nova Scotia to the mouth of the Mississippi.

III. In consequence of these conflicting claims, a war broke out between England and her colonies on the one side, and France and her colonies, largely aided by the Indians, on the other, which is generally known as "The French and Indian War," or "The Old French War." It was a contest for territory and dominion in America.

## EVENTS OF 1753.

I. The first hostile act, it was alleged, was perpetrated by the French. They seized three British traders, whom they

FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. When was the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle made? 2. What had been for many years previous a subject of dispute? 3. In what condition did the treaty leave the boundaries?

II. 4. What territory did the English claim? 5. What, the French? 6. Upon what did the English base their claim? 7. What was the ground of the French claim? 8. What measures did the French adopt in order to secure their claim?

III. 9. What was the cause of the French and Indian War? 10. By what other name is the war also known? 11. What was the war a contest for?

EVENTS OF 1753.—I. 1. By whom was the first hostile act of the war committed? 2. Give an account of it. 3. How is Erie situated? (See map, p. 86.)

regarded as intruders upon their territory, and imprisoned them at Prèsque Isle (*pres keel*), now Erie, 1753. situated in the northwestern extremity of Pennsylvania.

II. At the time of this event, there was in existence an organization which had been chartered in 1749, four years before, by the name of "*The Ohio Company*." This association consisted of gentlemen, principally Virginians, who had obtained from the King of England a grant of six hundred thousand acres of land, on and near the Ohio River, for the purpose of carrying on the fur trade with the Indians and of settling the country.

III. The French saw, in the formation of the Ohio Company, a systematic scheme, the first, perhaps, in a series of similar ones, to deprive them of their possessions, and, as a consequence, of their traffic and influence among the Indians: hence their seizure and imprisonment of the three traders; hence, too, the vast preparations for hostile contingencies which they began to make, not the least of which was the erection of forts between the Alleghany River and Lake Erie.

IV. The Ohio Company, on learning of these hostile measures, laid their complaints before the lieutenant-governor of Virginia, Robert Dinwiddie. As the grant to the company was within the original charter limits of Virginia, and as, perhaps for no less a reason, the lieutenant-governor was a stockholder in the concern, the complaints were listened to with a willing ear.

V. It was at once determined to send a letter to the French commander, remonstrating against the aggressive acts of his

II. \* QUESTIONS.—4. Give an account of the origin, composition, and purposes of the Ohio Company.

III. 5. How did the French regard the Ohio Company? 6. How then did the French justify their seizure of the three traders? 7. Where did they erect forts to oppose the Ohio Company? 8. What three forts were erected between the Alleghany River and Lake Erie? *Ans.*—One at Presque Isle, and (for the other two see map, p. 85.)

IV. 9. To whom did the Ohio Company complain? 10. Why did the governor listen to their complaints?

men, and demanding their withdrawal from the territory. This message was intrusted to George Washington, then a young man not twenty-two years of age, who had, by the manner in which he had discharged the duties of adjutant-general of one of the districts of Virginia, acquired a reputation for prudence and ability.

VI. Washington set out on his mission on the last day of October, 1753, from Williamsburg, then the capital of Virginia. After a difficult and dangerous journey of four hundred miles, more than half of which was through a wilderness inhabited by hostile Indians, he reached Fort Venango (*ve-nang'-gō*), whence he was conducted to Fort Le Bœuf (*būf*). Here he found St. Pierre (*pe-āre'*), the French commander.

VII. St. Pierre's reply was also by letter. He stated, in substance, that he could not leave the territory, as he was acting by the orders of his superior officer, the Marquis du Quesne (*kane*), Governor-general of Canada, whose head-quarters were at Montreal (*mont-re-aul'*).

#### EVENTS OF 1754.

I. After an absence of eleven weeks, during which he encountered on his journey severe hardships, amid snow, icy floods, and hostile Indians, Washington reached Williamsburg and delivered St. Pierre's letter to Dinwiddie. This document, and the report which Washington made of the ex-

---

V. QUESTIONS.—11. What did Dinwiddie at once determine upon? 12. To whom was the message intrusted? 13. How old was Washington at the time? 14. What military position had he held? 15. How had he discharged its duties?

VI. 16. When and from what place did Washington set out? 17. Give an account of the journey to Fort Le Bœuf. 18. How was Fort Venango situated? (See map, p. 85.) 19. What village now occupies the site of Fort Venango? *Ans.*—*Franklin*. 20. How is Fort Le Bœuf situated? (See map, p. 85.) 21. What village now occupies the site of Fort Le Bœuf? *Ans.*—*Waterford*. 22. Where did he find the French commander? 23. What was the commander's name?

VII. 24. Did St. Pierre return a verbal or written reply? 25. What did he state in the letter? 26. How is Montreal situated? (See map, p. 85.)

EVENTS OF 1754.—I. 1. How long was Washington absent on his mission? 2. Give an account of his homeward journey. 3. What report did he make? 4. Of what were Dinwiddie and his council convinced?



tensive warlike preparations he had discovered on his journey, convinced the lieutenant-governor and his council that the French were intending to penetrate the territory of Virginia and take military possession. No time was therefore to be lost. 1754.

II. At the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers the Ohio Company commenced the construction of a fort; and an expedition, of which Washington, at first second in command, soon became chief, was sent to protect the workmen, assist in the building, and afterwards to garrison the place.

III. But the French were too quick for the English: before the fort was half completed, a strong force, augmented greatly by Indians, had come from Venango and summoned the men there to surrender. What could the English do? Less than forty in number, they capitulated and withdrew. The French completed the works, and called the place Fort Duquesne.

IV. Washington, it will be seen, did not reach the fort. Learning that it had fallen into the hands of the enemy, and that a strong force was marching to intercept him, he fell back and took a position in a place called the Great Meadows. Here word came to him that a detachment of the French had advanced to within a few miles of his position, where they were skulking, evidently with hostile intent. With the determination of forestalling their design, he sallied forth, came upon the foe by surprise, and, in the contest that followed, killed or captured all but one,—their commander, Jumonville (*zhoo-mong-veel'*), being among the slain.

II. QUESTIONS.—5. Where did the Ohio Company commence to build a fort? 6. Describe the Alleghany River. (See map, p. 85.) 7. Describe the Monongahela River. (See same map.) 8. What expedition did Washington have the command of?

III. 9. How much of the "new fort" did the English succeed in building? 10. What then took place? 11. What name did the French give it?

IV. 12. Did Washington reach the fort or not? 13. Why not? 14. Where were the Great Meadows? (See map, p. 85.) 15. What word came to him at the Great Meadows? 16. Describe the battle that followed. 17. By what name is the battle known? *Ans.—The battle of the Great Meadows.*

1754. V. This battle, fought on the 28th of May, 1754, was Washington's first, as it was also the first of the war. Though the numbers engaged in it were small, its effects in the grand contest, of which it was the precursor, were by no means unimportant.

VI. Washington's first care was in relation to the prisoners. These he sent, without delay, to Dinwiddie, and at once began to make preparations to resist the strong force coming against him. At his position in the Great Meadows, a fort which he had previously commenced was completed; and, owing to the pinching famine that prevailed during its construction, he named it Fort Necessity.

VII. Here he was attacked by a force of fifteen hundred French and Indians, commanded by De Villiers (*vil-le-âre'*). After a brave defense of ten hours, continued till near midnight, while a violent rain-storm prevailed, he capitulated on the following morning, July 4th, 1754; and, before noon, marched out of the fort with the honors of war.

VIII. Although war as yet had not been formally declared between the two nations, England and France, the British ministry, in anticipation of that event, recommended the colonies to unite in some plan for their common defense. In conformity therewith, a congress, held at Albany, made a treaty with the Indians of the Six Nations; and adopted a plan of union, which had been prepared by Dr. Franklin, a delegate from Philadelphia.

IX. The plan, however, was never carried into effect: the colonial assemblies rejected it because it gave too much power

V. QUESTIONS.—18. When was the battle of the Great Meadows fought? 19. What further can you say of it?

VI. 20. What was Washington's first care? 21. What did he do with them? 22. What preparations did he then begin to make? 23. What fort was built? 24. What name was given to it, and why?

VII. 25. Give an account of the battle that took place there?

VIII. 26. What recommendation did the British ministry make? 27. What was accordingly done?

IX. 28. What further can you say of the plan? 29. What was then determined upon?

to the crown, while, singularly enough, the crown also rejected it because it gave too much power to the people. It was then determined that the war should be carried on with British troops, and such auxiliary forces as the colonial assemblies might voluntarily furnish. 1754.

### EVENTS OF 1755.

I. The disaster at Fort Necessity, together with the hostile attitude of the French government, aroused the attention of the British ministry, and preparations, on an extensive scale, were speedily made for aggressive operations in America.

II. Four expeditions were accordingly planned for 1755: one to expel the French from Nova Scotia; another against Crown Point, to be led by Sir William Johnson; the third against Niagara, to be commanded by Governor Shirley (*shur'-le*), of Massachusetts; and the fourth against Fort Duquesne. General Braddock,\* an officer of distinction, who had been sent to America as commander-in-chief of all the royal forces in the colonies, took the immediate charge of the expedition against Duquesne.



GENERAL BRADDOCK.

III. Colonel Monckton (*monk'-tun*), commanding the first expedition, landed at the head of the Bay of Fundy, where he was joined by General Winslow, a New Englander, with

\* General Edward Braddock was born in Perthshire County, Scotland, about the year 1715. Before he came to America he had been forty years in the British army, and had served with credit in the wars against Spain, Portugal, and Germany.

EVENTS OF 1755.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What aroused the attention of the British ministry? 2. What preparations followed?

II. 3. How many expeditions were planned for the year? 4. What were they? 5. What part was assigned to Braddock?

III. 6. Who commanded the expedition against Port Royal? 7. Give an account of it.

1755. about three thousand troops from Massachusetts. The two forts of the French situated there were captured in June, 1755; the settlements of the Nova Scotians were wantonly destroyed; a beautiful and fertile country was reduced to a solitude, and the inhabitants, by thousands, were driven on board the English ships, and scattered among the colonists of New England and other places.

IV. Of the four expeditions planned for the year's campaign, Washington became enlisted in the one against Fort Duquesne, and, during the memorable and disastrous battle that occurred, distinguished himself by his courage and presence of mind. Braddock, who was arrogant and conceited, marched his troops through the wilderness with great formality, as if against a foe of European tactics, in disregard of the suggestions of Washington, who was acting as his aide-de-camp, and who was well acquainted with the mode of warfare practiced by the Indians. The result was, that when within ten miles of the fort he fell into an ambush, and was defeated with great loss.

V. The British troops retreated in great disorder until they reached the Great Meadows, a distance of forty miles, where Braddock, who had been mortally wounded in the engagement, died. This battle, sometimes called the battle of the Monongahela, occurred on the 9th of July, 1755, a little more than a year after Washington's capitulation at Fort Necessity.

VI. By the death of Braddock, Shirley became the commander-in-chief of the royal forces in America. His expedition, though less disastrous than the one against Duquesne, was also a failure. His troops, assembled at Oswego, were delayed for months; the disaster of the Monongahela para-

---

IV. QUESTIONS.—8. In which expedition did Washington take part? 9. What is said of his conduct in the battle that occurred? 10. What was Braddock's character? 11. What illustration of his character is given? 12. What was the result?

V. 13. What was Braddock's fate? 14. When did the battle occur? 15. By what name is it sometimes known?

VI. 16. Who succeeded Braddock as commander-in-chief? 17. What account can you give of his expedition?

lyzed his efforts; the Indian allies deserted; and, finally, the expedition was abandoned. 1755.

VII. The expedition under Johnson, though not resulting in the capture or destruction of Crown Point, was a successful one. The troops employed were mostly from Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New Hampshire. At the "carrying-place," between the Hudson River and Lake George, a force of about six thousand men assembled under General Lyman, and constructed a fort, which was at first called Fort Lyman, but, owing to the jealousy of Johnson, was subsequently named by him Fort Edward. Upon the arrival of the commander of the expedition, he moved forward with the main body of his men to the head of Lake George, fifteen miles from Fort Edward.

VIII. While encamped here, the Indian scouts brought word that the enemy, French and Indians, two thousand strong, were on their march to attack Fort Edward. They were commanded by the Baron Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*), who had proceeded from Montreal (*mont-re-aul'*) to Crown Point, and thence to the head of Lake Champlain. Losing no time, Johnson sent Colonel Williams with a thousand New England troops, and the renowned chief Hendrick, with two hundred Indian warriors, to intercept the enemy.

IX. But Dieskau changed his plan. As he approached the fort, his Indian allies, fearful of its cannon, refused to



HENDRICK

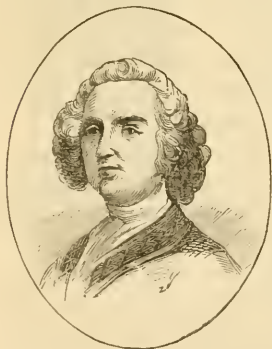
VII. QUESTIONS.—18. From what places did the men of Johnson's army come? 19. Where did a large force assemble? 20. Who, at first, commanded them there? 21. What building did they construct? 22. Where was Fort Edward situated? (See map, p. 85.) 23. Upon Johnson's arrival what did he do? 24. In what direction from Fort Edward is Lake George? (See map, p. 85.)

VIII. 25. What word was brought to Johnson? 26. By whom was the invading force commanded? 27. What route had Dieskau taken? 28. What did Johnson at once do?

1755. proceed to the attack; he therefore took another direction to go against the army at the lake, and, in so doing, took the road by which the forces sent out by Johnson were marching. Through his Indian scouts he soon heard of the approaching enemy. The result was, that the English and their allies were drawn into an ambush, on the 8th of September, and, after being defeated with signal slaughter, losing among their killed both Williams and Hendrick, they fled back to Johnson's camp, pursued by Dieskau.

X. From behind a hastily formed breastwork of trees Johnson fired upon the assailants, but, being slightly wounded early in the action, retired to his tent. The defense, which was most gallantly kept up by the New England troops, was turned into an attack upon the timely approach of Lyman, with a body of men from Fort Edward; and the French and their allies were routed with great slaughter.

XI. Dieskau was found by the pursuers, wounded and alone, leaning against the stump of a tree. As they approached, he felt for his watch, to insure kind treatment by delivering it up: a soldier, thinking he was feeling for his pistol, shot him, inflicting an incurable wound. He was conveyed a prisoner to the English camp, and subsequently sent to Europe. After suffering for ten years, he died of the injuries which he had received.



SIR WILLIAM JOHNSON.

XII. Johnson, instead of following up the victory, as he was urged to by his officers, loitered away the autumn, doing nothing except building a useless fort of wood near his encampment, which received the name of Fort

IX. QUESTIONS.—29. What change took place in Dieskau's movements? 30. Describe what followed.

X. 31. Give an account of the battle at Johnson's camp.

XI. 32. Give the subsequent history of Dieskau.



William Henry. This he garrisoned, as also Fort Edward, and then, as winter approached, he retired to Albany. Though General Lyman was the real hero of the campaign, Johnson\* received the thanks of Parliament for the victory, was voted £5,000, and created a baronet of Great Britain. 1755.

## EVENTS OF 1756.

I. Shirley's career as commander-in-chief of the royal forces in America drew to a close in the spring of 1756, when he was superseded by General Abercrombie, who was appointed to act until the arrival of Lord Loudon. Dieskau's successor as commander-in-chief in Canada was the Marquis de Montcalm (*mont-kam'*).

II. Although for a long time hostilities had been carried on in America between England and France, yet no formal declaration of war was made until May of 1756, when England proclaimed hostilities against France, and, soon after, the latter power issued a declaration against England.

III. The plan of the campaign for 1756, adopted by a convention of colonial governors held at Albany, did not differ much from that of the preceding year—Crown Point, Niagara, and Fort Duquesne being the places aimed against. No part of it, however, was carried out, nor, beyond some tardy preparations, even attempted. Abercrombie, deeming the forces under his command inadequate, waited for the arrival of Loudon, and the earl, when he came, effected nothing.

---

\* Sir William Johnson was born in Ireland, in 1715. He died at his residence near Johnstown, Fulton County, New York, in 1774.

---

XII. QUESTIONS.—33. What should Johnson at once have done? 34. What did he do instead? 35. How was he rewarded? 36. State why the reward was not justly bestowed. 37. How is Fort William Henry situated? (See map, p. 85.)

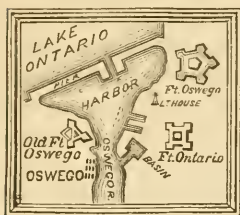
EVENTS OF 1756.—I. 1. What changes took place in the commanders of the respective forces?

II. 2. What is said of the declaration of war?

III. 3. What is said of the plan of operations for 1756? 4. Was the plan carried out or not? 5. State the cause.

1756. IV. Not so the French. In an expedition against

Oswego, which was then defended by two forts, Montcalm laid siege to the place, drove the garrison out of one of the forts into the other, killed the commander, Colonel Monroe, and compelled the English to surrender. Fourteen hundred prisoners and a large amount of stores and money fell into the hands of the victors. After demolishing the forts, to allay the jealousy of the Indians,



OSWEGO.

Montcalm left Oswego a solitude, and returned to Canada.

V. The defeat of Braddock, in 1755, left the western frontier in a defenseless condition. Incited by French emissaries, the tribes of the Ohio commenced the work of desolation, and killed or carried into captivity about a thousand of the inhabitants. It was therefore evident that the inroads of the savages must be checked, or, in a short time, not a single white man, friendly to the English, would remain in that region.

VI. A party of less than three hundred men, commanded by Colonel Armstrong, undertook to destroy Kittanning, the chief town of the perfidious tribes. The march through the forest was long and perilous, but the stronghold was reached, thirty or forty warriors were killed, and Kittanning was left a smoking ruin.

#### EVENTS OF 1757.

I. Loudon's plan of operations for 1757 was limited to an expedition against Louisburg (*loo'-ē-burg*). He sailed from

IV. QUESTIONS.—6. Give an account of Montcalm's success against Oswego. 7. What did he do there after the victory? 8. How is Oswego situated? (See map, p. 96.)

V. 9. What induced the tribes of the Ohio to become hostile to the English settlers? 10. What deeds of wrong were they guilty of? 11. What became evident?

VI. 12. Give an account of the expedition against Kittanning? 13. How is Kittanning situated? (See map, p. 85.)

EVENTS OF 1757.—I. 1. Give an account of Loudon's operations during 1757. 2. How is Halifax situated? (See map, p. 103.) 3. How is Louisburg situated? (See same map.)

New York with about six thousand men, and, at 1757. Halifax, was joined by a powerful naval armament and land force from England; but, learning that the French were prepared for defense, he abandoned the enterprise and returned to New York.

II. This, like the previous year, through the energy and ability of Montcalm, showed a marked superiority to the French arms. In the beginning of August that commander, with nine thousand men, two thousand of whom were Indians, laid siege to Fort William Henry. For six days, its commander, Colonel Monroe, kept up a vigorous defense, trusting to receive aid from General Webb, who, at the time, was in command of a large force at Fort Edward.

III. At length, learning that no assistance would be sent, and being entirely without ammunition, he was compelled to surrender on the 9th, capitulating that his men should have a safe escort to Webb's quarters. Notwithstanding this stipulation, the English had hardly left the fort before the Indian allies of Montcalm, incited by the hope of plunder, attacked them and massacred a large number. Fort William Henry was demolished by order of Montcalm; and thus the year 1757 passed, like its predecessor, without a single advantage to the English.



WILLIAM PITT.

IV. In consequence of the

II. QUESTIONS.—4. How did the operations of 1757 compare with those of the previous year? 5. When and by whom was Fort William Henry besieged? 6. Who commanded the fort? 7. What is said of his defense?

III. 8. What unwelcome information reached Colonel Monroe? 9. How was he not in a condition to make a further defense? 10. Give an account of the massacre. 11. What became of the fort? 12. Where did it stand? (See map, p. 85.)

IV. 13. What change took place in the British Government? 14. What as regards the command of the royal forces in America?

1757. disgraces of the American campaigns a new administration of the British government was formed, with William Pitt,\* afterward Lord Chatham, as prime minister. London, who by his inactivity had disappointed the anticipations of the people, was recalled, and preparations were made to carry on the war with greater vigor.

\* William Pitt, first Earl of Chatham, was born at Westminster, England, in 1708. At the beginning of the American Revolution he was opposed to the measures of the British ministry in the American colonies; but, at the close of a speech, made in 1778 in Parliament, in which he spoke against a motion to acknowledge the independence of America, he fell in an apoplectic fit, and was borne home, where he died in a few weeks afterward.

### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. What treaty was made in the year 1748?.....	86
2. What war did that treaty close?.....	59
3. How long had France and England disputed about lands in Am.? ..	86
4. What did the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle omit to settle?.....	86
5. What claims to territory were made by France and England?..	86
6. By what right or title did they make the claim?.....	86
7. What did these conflicting claims lead to? .....	86
8. Give an account of the first hostile act of the war.....	86, 87
9. What was the Ohio Company, and what were its purposes?...	87
10. Why did the French seize the traders and erect certain forts?..	87
11. What course was then pursued by the Ohio Company?....	87
12. Why did Dinwiddie respond with so much promptness?.....	87
13. On what mission was Washington sent?.....	87, 88
14. Give an account of his journey.....	88
15. What was St. Pierre's reply to Dinwiddie?.....	88
16. What report did Washington make in addition?.....	88, 89
17. What effect did the letter and report have?.....	88, 89
18. What measures for protection did the Ohio Company adopt?...	89
19. On what expedition was Washington sent?.....	89
20. In what way did the French interfere with the English? .....	89
21. How many men surrendered to the French?.....	89
22. What did the French do with the fort captured by them?.....	89
23. Did Washington reach the fort, or not?.....	89
24. What did he learn while on his march thither?.....	89
25. What then did he deem it prudent to do?.....	89
26. What did he learn after reaching the Great Meadows?.....	89
27. How did he forestall the intention of the French?.....	89
28. What battle was fought on the 28th of May, 1754? .....	90
29. In how many battles had Washington previously participated? ..	90

	PAGE
30. Was that battle the first, second, or third, of the war?.....	90
31. To whom did Washington send his prisoners?.....	90
32. What was then done by him in anticipation of an attack?.....	90
33. Who commanded the force that attacked him?.....	90
34. How large a force did De Villiers have at the time?.....	90
35. For how long a time did Washington defend himself?.....	90
36. When did he capitulate?.....	90
37. At whose instigation was a congress held at Albany?.....	90
38. Why had the ministry made the recommendation?.....	90
39. What man, afterward distinguished, was at the congress?.....	90
40. What measure, prepared by Franklin, was adopted?.....	90
41. Why was the plan rejected by both the colonies and the king? 90,	91
42. What then did the British government determine upon?.....	91
43. How many and what expeditions were planned for 1755?.....	91
44. Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the royal forces?... 91	
45. Give an account of the expedition against Nova Scotia.....91,	92
46. What two forts did Monekton capture?..... (See map, page 103.)	
47. Who commanded the expedition against Fort Duquesne?.....	91
48. What person, afterward eminent, was his aide-de-camp?.....	92
49. What suggestions did Washington make to Braddock?.....	92
50. In what disaster did the expedition terminate?.....	92
51. When did the battle of the Monongahela take place?.....	92
52. To what position did Governor Shirley succeed?.....	92
53. Give an account of the expedition against Niagara.....91, 92,	93
54. What preparations did Lyman make against Crown Point?....	93
55. What movement was made by Johnson from Fort Edward? ...	93
56. What movement was made by Dieskau towards Fort Edward?.	93
57. Give an account of the battle between Dieskau and Williams.. 93,	94
58. Give an account of the battle fought at Lake George.....	94
59. What further account of Dieskau can you give?.....	94
60. Who succeeded Shirley as commander-in-chief?.....	95
61. When was war declared between France and England?.....	95
62. Give an account of Montcalm's expedition against Oswego....	96
63. Why did the English attack and destroy Kittaning?.....	96
64. What was done by Loudon during the year 1757?.....96,	97
65. When did Montcalm lay siege to Fort William Henry?.....	97
66. What command did Monroe hold at the time?.....	97
67. How long did Monroe hold out against Montcalm?.....	97
68. When and why did he at last surrender?.....	97
69. Give an account of what took place after the surrender.....	97
70. What can you state of the further history of Fort Wm. Henry?	97

## EVENTS OF 1758.

I. The campaign of 1758 opened, on the part of the English, with fifty thousand men in the field. These forces were divided into three distinct bodies: one, under General Amherst, for the subjugation of Louisburg, and the Island of Cape Breton (*brit'-on*); another, under Abercrombie, who had succeeded London as commander-in-chief, was to proceed against Ticonderoga and Crown Point; and the third, under General Forbes, was to undertake the reduction of Fort Duquesne.

II. Amherst made Halifax, in Nova Scotia, his rendezvous, from which place he embarked in the fleet of Admiral Boscawen. A landing was effected near Louisburg, then defended by the strongest fortress in America, and a siege, memorable for its length and desperate resistance, commenced. At length, on the 26th of July, the French surrendered by capitulation, and, with the town, the whole Island of Cape Breton, as well as that of St. John's, fell into the hands of the British.



JAMES WOLFE.

III. During the siege two persons particularly distinguished themselves by their courageous conduct. These were James Wolfe and Richard Montgomery (*mont-gum'-er-e*); the first, the real hero of the enterprise, was slain at Quebec in the following year, while fighting for his king; and the other, Montgomery, was also slain at

EVENTS OF 1758.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What was the plan of the campaign for 1758?

II. 2. Where did Amherst rendezvous? 3. On whose fleet did he embark his troops? 4. Where did he land his troops? 5. How is Louisburg situated? (See map, p. 103.) 6. How was Louisburg defended? 7. What was the result of the expedition? 8. In what direction from Cape Breton Island is the Island of St. John's? (See map, p. 103.)

III. 9. Give the names of the persons who distinguished themselves during the siege of Louisburg. 10. What is said of the further history of Wolfe and Montgomery?



Quebec, but several years later, while contending for the cause of liberty. 1758.

IV. While success was crowning the arms of the British at the east, Abercrombie was slowly making his way northward. At the head of about sixteen thousand men, he descended Lake George, and, debarking at its northern extremity, commenced a march through the dense forests towards Ticonderoga,\* then commanded by Montcalm.

V. An advance force suddenly coming upon a detachment of the French, on the 6th of July, a severe conflict ensued, in which, though the enemy were routed, Lord Howe, an officer greatly beloved by the army and the American people, was killed.

VI. The death of Howe, who was the leading spirit in the expedition, was keenly felt. For awhile it put a complete check upon operations, and the most of the army fell back to the landing-place at the foot of the lake; but, on the 8th of July, an advance was made in full force, and the fort was assaulted. The British fought gallantly, though fruitlessly. After losing nearly two thousand of their number in killed and wounded, they withdrew once more to the landing-place; whence, fearing an attack from the enemy, on the following morning, they re-embarked for the head of the lake.

VII. The failure of this expedition was somewhat relieved

\* Fort Ticonderoga was built by the French in 1755. It was then called Carillon (chime of bells), in allusion to the music of the waterfalls in the outlet of Lake George, near it.

IV. 11. What was Abercrombie doing while London was operating in Nova Scotia? 12. In what direction from Albany is Lake George? (See map, p. 85.) 13. On what lake is Ticonderoga situated? (See map, p. 85.)

V. 14. Describe the action of the 6th of July.

VI. 15. What effect did the death of Howe have upon the expedition? 16. Describe the action of the 8th of July. 17. What movement did the British make after their defeat?

VII. 18. How was the failure of the expedition against Ticonderoga relieved? 19. What was Bradstreet's object in his enterprise? 20. In what direction from Lake George was Fort Frontenac? (See map, p. 85.) 21. What city is situated where Fort Frontenac then stood? (See map, p. .) 22. What route did Bradstreet take? 23. Why was the blow a severe one to the French? 24. How did Bradstreet dispose of his captures?

1758. by the success of an enterprise conducted by Colonel Bradstreet, an officer under Abercrombie. While the main army was wasting away the season at the head of Lake George, Bradstreet obtained permission to go against Fort Frontenac, situated where Kingston now stands, on the north side of the entrance of Lake Ontario. Proceeding by way of the Mohawk and Oswego, he crossed the lake, and, on the 27th of August, captured the fort, the garrison having either fled or surrendered at discretion. This was a severe blow to the French, as the place, besides being in a commanding position, contained a vast amount of military stores intended for Fort Duquesne, and in the harbor were several armed vessels. Bradstreet, after sending two of the vessels, laden with the spoils, to Oswego, destroying the others, and dismantling the fort, returned to Lake George.

VIII. In the third expedition planned for the year, that against Fort Duquesne, Washington held an important command under Forbes. Instead of advancing by the old road which Braddock had taken in 1755, it was decided, against the judgment of Washington, that a new one further east should be opened for the expedition. As was to have been expected, the progress made was exceedingly tedious. Winter was fast approaching, and yet Forbes was many miles from Duquesne. A feeling of discouragement pervaded the troops, which was augmented by a defeat, and loss of three hundred men, sustained by Major Grant while leading an advance detachment.

IX. In this strait Forbes called a council of war, the result of which was a determination to abandon the expedition. Before, however, the order to return was given, intelligence of an encouraging character was received. The march was

\*VIII. QUESTIONS.—25. In which expedition did Washington hold a command? 26. By what road was the advance against Duquesne made? 27. What was the result? 28. What check was experienced by Grant?

IX. 29. What was determined upon in a council of war? 30. Why was not the determination carried out? 31. What success finally rewarded the efforts of the expedition? 32. Why had the French abandoned the fort? 33. What did the English do with the fort?

therefore resumed, and when, towards the latter part of November, Duquesne was reached, it was found in ruins. The French had set fire to it and retreated down the Ohio. The destruction of Frontenac had cut off all hope of reinforcements and supplies; their savage allies, when destitution and danger threatened, had deserted—hence the ruin and abandonment of the fort. The English at once repaired and garrisoned the place, and, in honor of their illustrious statesman, changed the name to Fort Pitt.

## EVENTS OF 1759.

I. The great object of the campaign of 1759 was the re-



duction of Canada; and General Amherst, who had gained great favor by his success at Louisburg, was appointed com-

EVENTS OF 1759.—QUESTIONS.—I. 1. What was the object of the campaign of 1759? 2. What change took place in the commanders? 3. What was the plan of operations?

1759.     mander-in-chief, to succeed Abercrombie. By the plan of operations, General Wolfe was to lay siege to Quebec; Amherst was to reduce Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and then co-operate with Wolfe; while a third division, under General Prideaux (*pre-do'*), after capturing Niagara, was to proceed against Montreal.

II. Early in July, Prideaux reached Niagara, and at once commenced a siege, during which he was unfortunately killed by the bursting of a shell. Sir William Johnson, having succeeded to the command, defeated a force of twelve hundred French and Indians who were advancing to the relief of the place, and compelled the besieged to capitulate. Instead, however, of proceeding against Montreal, according to the plan of operations, he garrisoned the fort which he had taken, and then made his way to Albany.

III. In the mean time Amherst had reached the vicinity of Ticonderoga. As he advanced, the French fled from both Ticonderoga and Crown Point without striking a blow, and retired to an island in the Sorel River. Neglecting to follow up his successes as he should have done, he allowed the summer to pass before he made any attempt at pursuit. Then a succession of storms damaged his fleet; and the cold weather approaching, he went into winter quarters at Crown Point, and thus failed to co-operate against Quebec.

IV. Of the three expeditions, that under Wolfe can be said to have been the only one completely successful. With an

II. QUESTIONS.—4. What is said of Prideaux's operations and fate? 5. Who succeeded him? 6. What success did Johnson meet with? 7. In what respect did he deviate from the original plan of operations? 8. How is Niagara situated? (See map, p. 85.)

III. 9. How far had Amherst proceeded, in the mean time? 10. How are Ticonderoga and Crown Point situated? (See map, p. 85.) 11. Of what lake is the Sorel River the outlet? (See same map.) 12. By what other name is the Sorel sometimes known? (See map, p. 124.)

IV. 13. With how many men did Wolfe advance against Quebec? 14. What route did he take? 15. On what small island did he land his men? 16. In what direction from Quebec is that island? (See map, p. 103.) 17. Where is Point Levi? 18. What did Wolfe do at Point Levi? 19. With what success?

army of eight thousand men, he ascended the St. Lawrence River as far as the Isle of Orleans, where, in 1759. the latter part of June, he landed his whole force in safety. Taking possession of Point Levi, opposite Quebec, he established a battery there, which, though it destroyed the buildings near the river's edge, did but little damage to that part of the city situated on the promontory.



THE ST. LAWRENCE, IN 1759.

V. Becoming convinced that the battery was not near enough to accomplish the reduction of the place, he determined upon a bold attack. Accordingly, on the 31st of July, an attempt was made upon the enemy's intrenchments, but it resulted in defeat and the loss of nearly five hundred men. This contest is known as the battle of the Montmorenci.



1759. VI. Not discouraged by the disaster, Wolfe resolved upon another plan. During the night of the 12th of September his troops effected a landing, at a place about two miles above the city, and, climbing by a narrow path the steep bank of the St. Lawrence, at daylight, on the following morning, they stood on the Plains of Abraham in battle array.

VII. Montcalm, who was in command of the French, refused at first to believe that the force on the Plains was any thing more than a small foraging or marauding party, such confidence did he feel in the unapproachableness of the place in that direction. But, becoming convinced of his error, he abandoned his intrenchments, and led his troops against the enemy. A fierce and bloody battle followed, which resulted in the defeat of the French. Wolfe fell in the moment of victory, and Montcalm,\* mortally wounded in the action, expired soon after. The French, fearing a famine, and dreading the horrors of an assault, surrendered the city five days after the battle.

#### EVENTS OF 1760, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR.

I. Although the British had captured Quebec, the reduction of Canada, which was the object of the campaign of 1759, was not yet accomplished. This failure undoubtedly was owing to the want of activity on the part of Amherst. His long stay, too, at Crown Point, gave De Levi, Montcalm's successor, an opportunity to make preparation for the recovery of Quebec.

---

\* Montcalm was born in France, in 1712. At the close of the battle in which he was mortally wounded, on being told that he could not live long, "So much the better," he said; "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." He died on the morning of the 14th of September.

---

VI. QUESTIONS.—21. What plan did Wolfe then determine upon?

VII. 22. How was Montcalm surprised? 23. Give an account of the battle that followed. 24. By what name is that battle known? *Ans.*—The battle of the Plains of Abraham. 25. On what day did it occur? 26. When did Quebec surrender?

EVENTS OF 1760.—I. 1. Why had not the British completed the reduction of Canada before the close of 1759? 2. What, beside, was the result of Amherst's inactivity? 3. Who succeeded Montcalm in the command of the French?



II. As soon as the St. Lawrence was free of ice, De Levi proceeded to besiege the city. The British, instead of awaiting the approach of the enemy, and defending themselves from the strong position which they occupied, marched about three miles above the city, and there, on the 28th of April, 1760, was fought one of the most desperate battles of the war. After losing a thousand men or more, the British were compelled to fall back to the defenses which they had unwisely abandoned. The opportune arrival of a British fleet, some days after, changed the scene completely; and the French lost no time in raising the siege and retreating to Montreal.

III. It was not till September that Amherst, taking the indirect route by way of Oswego, made his way into Canada and invested Montreal. The French governor, unable to resist, signed a capitulation, by which not only Montreal, but the whole of Canada, was surrendered into the hands of the English.

IV. On the 10th of February, 1763, a treaty of peace between Great Britain and France was signed at Paris. France, by the terms of the treaty, ceded to Great Britain all her American possessions east of the Mississippi, north of the Iberville River, in Louisiana (*lou-e'-z'-ah'-na*). At the same time a treaty was made by which Spain ceded her possessions of East and West Florida to Great Britain. Thus, it will be seen, the French and Indian War lasted more than eight years. The first gun was fired in Washington's engagement with Jumonville, in 1754, and the contest was brought to a close by the treaty of Paris, in 1763.

V. Among the dependencies which were surrendered to

---

II. QUESTIONS.—4. Give an account of De Levi's operations. 5. How was Quebec saved to the English?

III. 6. By what route did Amherst proceed against Montreal? 7. How is Quebec situated? (See map, p. 103.) 8. How, Montreal? (See map, p. 85.)

IV. 9. By what treaty was the war brought to a close? 10. What territory did Great Britain acquire? 11. What other treaty was made at the same time?

V. 12. What stations or posts were included in the surrender of territory to the English? 13. What is said of this transfer? 14. Of what did the Indians soon make themselves masters?

Great Britain by the treaty, were several stations or posts between the lakes and the Ohio, and in the valley of that river. The transfer of these places from the French, with whom the Indians had been on friendly terms, to the English, whom they disliked, greatly exasperated the savages in that region, and they, in a short time, made themselves masters of all the posts, except those of Niagara, Fort Pitt, and Detroit; and hundreds of families were butchered or driven from their homes.

VI. Detroit was besieged for six months, but was finally relieved. The Indians at last were compelled to sue for peace, though Pontiac (*pon'-te-ak*), their principal chief, from whom the war takes its name, refused to submit. He wandered towards the Mississippi, endeavoring to stir up the western tribes against the English, till his career was terminated by the hand of one of his own people.

#### PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

DATES.	BATTLES.	COMMANDERS.		VICTORS.
		English.	French.	
1754.				
May 28,	Great Meadows.....	Washington	Jumonville.	English.
July 4,	Fort Necessity .....	Washington	De Villiers.	French.
1755.				
June 16,	Fort Beausejour.....	Monckton..	De Vergor.	English.
June 17,	Fort Gasperau.....	Monckton..	De Villeraï.	English.
July 9,	Monongahela.....	Braddock..	Beaujeu....	French.
Sept. 8 {	Near Lake George...	Williams...	Dieskau....	French.
	Head of Lake George..	Johnson...	Dieskau....	English.
1756.				
Aug. 14,	Oswego .....	Mercer ....	Montcalm..	French.
1757.				
Aug. 9,	Fort William Henry..	Monroe. ...	Montcalm..	French.
1758.				
July 6,	Near Ticonderoga....	Howe .....	De Trepesce	English.
July 8,	Ticonderoga.....	Ab'nerombie	Montcalm..	French.
July 26,	Louisburg.....	Amherst...	Drucourt...	English.
Sept. 21,	Near Fort Duquesne..	Grant .....	Aubry.....	French.
1759.				
July 25,	Fort Niagara.....	Johnson...	Aubry ....	English.
July 31,	Montmorenci.....	Wolfe .....	Montcalm..	French.
Sept. 13,	Plains of Abraham..	Wolfe .....	Montcalm..	English.
1760.				
Apr. 28,	3 miles above Quebec.	Murray....	De Levi....	French.

VI. 15. What is said of the siege of Detroit? 16. By what name is the war known? 17. What is said of the closing career of Pontiac?

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. How many troops did the English have in the field in 1758?..	100
2. What was the object of the division under Amherst?.....	100
3. Give an account of Amherst's operations and success.....	100
4. What was the object of the division under Abercrombie?.....	100
5. Give an account of Abercrombie's operations.....	101
6. What was the object of the division under Forbes?.....	100
7. Give an account of Forbes's operations.....	102, 103
8. Give an account of the expedition against Frontenac.....	102
9. Why did the French abandon Fort Duquesne, in 1758?.....	103
10. What further can you give of the history of that fort?....	103, 108
11. In what year did the English determine to take Canada?.....	103
12. Who succeeded Abercrombie as commander-in-chief?.....	103, 104
13. What part against Canada was assigned to Wolfe?.....	104
14. Give an account of Wolfe's operations until July.....	104, 105
15. What part against Canada was assigned to Prideaux?.....	104
16. Give an account of his operations and fate .....	104
17. What was done and also omitted by his successor?.....	104
18. What part against Canada was assigned to Amherst?.....	104
19. Give an account of his march and tardy operations .....	104
20. What was done against Quebec by Wolfe, in July, 1759?..	105
21. What was done by Wolfe on the night of the 12th Sept., 1759?	106
22. When did the battle of the Plains of Abraham occur?.....	106
23. What were the memorable words of the dying Montcalm?....	106
24. When did the French surrender Quebec to the English? . . .	106
25. Why did they not hold out longer before surrendering?.....	106
26. What was the great object of the English campaign of 1759?.	103
27. Did the English accomplish the object during that year?.....	106
28. By whom was Montcalm succeeded in command of the French?	106
29. What was the consequence of Amherst's inactivity?.....	106
30. When did De Levi commence operations against Quebec?....	107
31. What mistake did the British make?.....	107
32. Give an account of the battle fought near Quebec.....	107
33. What prevented the French from recovering the city?....	107
34. How did the English get Montreal and the rest of Canada?..	107
35. What took place on the 10th of February, 1763?.....	107
36. What territory did the French surrender to the English?....	107
37. What stations or posts were included in the surrender?....	107, 108
38. What was the consequence of surrendering them?..	108
39. Who was then the principal Indian chief in that section?....	108
40. How was the "Pontiac War" brought to a close?.....	108

## SECTION IV.

## THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.—CAUSES OF THE WAR.

I. THE expenses which Great Britain had incurred in the French and Indian War had increased her national debt more than three hundred millions of dollars. The English ministry, asserting that this had been done in defending the colonies, declared that the Americans ought of right to share in the burden; and, accordingly, it was proposed by the ministry, George Grenville being at its head, that a direct revenue should be drawn from the colonies by a system of taxation. It was also affirmed that, regardless of the manner in which the national debt had been contracted or augmented, or even in the absence of any debt whatever, Parliament possessed the inherent right to tax America.

II. On the other hand, it was maintained that the colonies had been founded at their own expense; and that they had already contributed more than their fair proportion in defending themselves, while the advantages accruing from their preservation were shared by England in common with themselves. The colonists also maintained that they could only be justly taxed by a legislature in which they were represented. Inasmuch, therefore, as they were not allowed to send representatives to the British Parliament, that body had no right to impose upon them any taxes whatever.

III. Beside, the policy of Great Britain towards her American colonies, from the very beginning of their existence, as

CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1 How much did the French and Indian War add to Great Britain's debt? 2. What assertion did the British ministry make? 3. What declaration did they deduce therefrom? 4. What proposition was accordingly made? 5. What strong affirmation was made?

II. 6. What was maintained by the Americans, as regards the founding of their colonies? 7. What, as regards their contribution for defense in connection with the advantages? 8. What, as regards the principle of taxation?

III. 9. What is said of the policy of Great Britain? 10. What were the "Writs of Assistance?"

shown in the "Navigation Act," with the oppressive measures that preceded and those that succeeded, even down to the authorization of the "Writs of Assistance," in 1761, had been unjust and illiberal, and calculated to incite a rebellious spirit. These "Writs of Assistance" were general search-warrants, which empowered custom-house officers to break open ships, stores, and private dwellings, in search of merchandise which, it was suspected, had paid no duty; and the writs also empowered the officers to compel sheriffs and others to assist in the odious task.

IV. When, therefore, the news of the Stamp Act, passed by Parliament in 1765, reached America, intense indignation was produced throughout the country. By the provisions of the act, all instruments in writing, such as deeds, bonds, and notes, as well as printed pamphlets, newspapers, almanacs, etc., were to be executed on stamped paper, to be purchased from the agents of the British government.

V. The first burst of opposition appeared in the legislature of Virginia, where Patrick Henry\* distinguished himself by his bold and manly eloquence. In Massachusetts too the opposition was fearless, and, upon the recommendation of her Assembly, a Colonial Congress, composed



PATRICK HENRY.

---

\* Patrick Henry was born in Virginia, in 1736. He died in 1799, the year of Washington's death.

IV. QUESTIONS.—11. When was the Stamp Act passed? 12. How was the news of its passage received in America? 13. What was exacted by the provisions of the Act?

V. 14. What is said of Patrick Henry? 15. Of the opposition in Massachusetts? 16. What recommendation did the Massachusetts Assembly make? 17. How many colonies were represented in the Congress? 18. Who was the presiding officer of the Congress? 19. Where was the Congress held? 20. What was the result of their deliberations?

of delegates from nine colonies, with Timothy Ruggles,\* of Massachusetts, for president, was held in New York, to consult with reference to the general safety. The result of their deliberations was the adoption of a Declaration of Rights, a Petition to the King, and a Memorial to both Houses of Parliament.

VI. So intense was the popular indignation against the Stamp Act, as also against the officers appointed to distribute the stamps, that when the day came on which the obnoxious law was to go into effect, there were no officials courageous enough to carry it into execution. All the stamped paper was either destroyed or concealed; and, for a time, all transactions requiring stamps were entirely suspended.

VII. At length business resumed its previous course, being conducted without stamps. In addition to this general opposition, the merchants of New York, Philadelphia, Boston, and other places, agreed to import no more British goods while the Stamp Act remained a law. A change in the British ministry occurring, William Pitt and others exerted themselves in opposition to the obnoxious measure, and it was repealed in 1766, the year after its enactment.

VIII. The news of the repeal caused great rejoicing throughout America, but, as the sequel proved, without adequate cause; for, notwithstanding the repeal of the Stamp Act, Parliament, still claiming the right to tax the colonies, passed, at the same time, another law, called the Declaratory Act, which affirmed the right claimed, in all its length and breadth. It

---

\* Notwithstanding the patriotic stand taken by Ruggles before the hostilities of the Revolution actually commenced, he soon headed a body of loyalists and fought against the Americans. At the close of the war he went to Nova Scotia, and there resided till his death.

VI. QUESTIONS.—21. What was the effect of the feeling against the Stamp Act? 22. What was done with the stamped paper? 23. What was the consequence, for a time, as regards transactions?

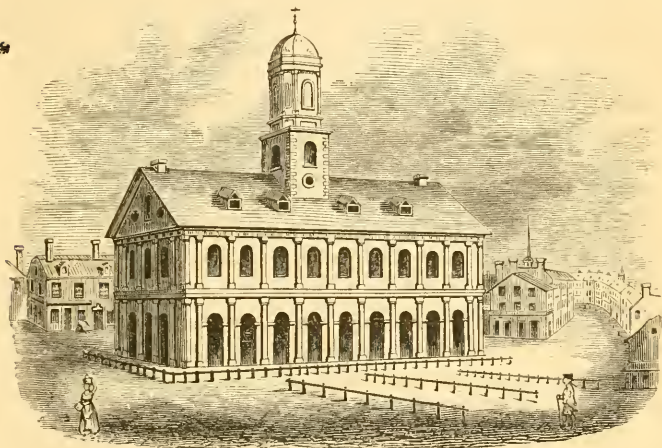
VII. 24. How did business afterward shape itself? 25. In what way did the merchants show their opposition to the Stamp Act? 26. Give the closing history of the act.

VIII. 27. How was the news of the repeal received in America? 28. How did it appear that the cause for rejoicing was illusory? 29. How was the asserted right to tax the colonies shown in 1767?



was attempted to exercise the right so claimed by the passage of a bill, in the following year, 1767, for levying duties on glass, paper, painters' colors, and tea, imported into the colonies. Two other obnoxious acts were also passed during the same year.

IX. The intelligence of these enactments produced a revival of the feelings which had been caused by the passage of the



FANEUIL HALL, IN 1776.\*

Stamp Act. Non-importation associations were formed, the members of which were pledged not to import or use any articles of British production, subject to duty. The Massachusetts Assembly issued a circular to the other Colonial Assemblies, asking their co-operation in efforts to obtain redress: in response, the most of them adopted resolutions protesting against the odious enactments.

\* Faneuil Hall, in Boston, was used by the patriots during the Revolution, and, for that reason, is often called the "Cradle of American Liberty." The original building, comprising a market-place on the ground floor, a town-hall, and other rooms, was erected by Peter Faneuil, permission having been previously granted by the authorities of Boston. In 1761 it was destroyed by fire, but in 1763 it was rebuilt at the expense of the town, and when the British occupied Boston, in 1775, they used the hall for a theatre. In 1805 the building underwent considerable alteration, when it was also enlarged.

IX. QUESTIONS.—30. How did the news of these enactments affect the colonists? 31. What organizations were formed? 32. What was done by the Massachusetts Assembly? 33. How did the other colonies respond?

X. The people of Boston were particularly decided in their opposition to one of the enactments known as the "New Revenue Law;" and, in consequence, repeated collisions took place between them and the custom-house officers. For the purpose of overawing the Bostonians, the Governor of Massachusetts requested General Gage, the commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, to station troops in the city. In compliance therewith, two regiments arrived from Halifax, in September, 1768; but their presence still more exasperated the people, and affrays ensued, in one of which, called the "Boston Massacre," the soldiers fired upon the populace, killing three men and wounding others.

XI. Before the news of the "massacre" reached England, an act was passed by Parliament, revoking all the duties laid in 1767, excepting that of threepence per pound on tea. As, however, the people of America were contending, not against the *amount* of taxes imposed, but against the *principle* of taxation without representation, the concession was by no means satisfactory. The Non-importation associations continued, but, of course, only as against the importation and use of the article upon which a duty was still laid. The tea for New York and Philadelphia was sent back to London, without being landed; in Charleston it was stored in cellars, where it perished.

XII. At Boston, on a cold moonlight night in December, 1773, a party of men, disguised as Indians, boarded the ships, broke open the chests of tea, emptied their contents into the water, and then quietly retired. In retaliation for

X. QUESTIONS.—34. Wherein did the people of Boston evince particular opposition? 35. What was the consequence? 36. What request did the governor of Massachusetts make? 37. Why did he make the request? 38. How was the request complied with? 39. Give an account of the Boston massacre.

XI. 40. What concessions were made by Parliament in 1770? 41. Why was not this concession satisfactory to the colonists? 42. To what extent did the agreement of the Non-importation associations continue? 43. How was the tea which arrived disposed of?

XII. 44. Give an account of the doings of the "Boston Tea Party." 45. How was the act retaliated? 46. How did the Salem people behave upon the occasion? 47. How, the people of Marblehead? 48. What other obnoxious act was also passed?

this defiant destruction, the British government determined to punish Boston; and the Boston Port Bill, intended to close that port to all commerce, and transfer the seat of the colonial government to Salem, was accordingly passed. But the people of Salem refused to thrive at the expense of their neighbors, and Marblehead, fifteen miles distant from the despoiled town, offered her port, free of charge, to the Boston merchants. Other acts, which were considered gross violations of the charters and rightful privileges of the colonies, were also passed. Among these was one for quartering the king's troops on the colonies, at the people's expense.

XIII. Meanwhile, delegates were chosen to represent the colonies at Philadelphia. Here, in September, 1774, a general congress, known as "The First Continental Congress," or the "Old Continental Congress," convened, to deliberate on such measures as the united interests of the colonies might require. Fifty-one delegates, representing all the colonies except Georgia, were present, and Peyton Randolph,\* of Virginia, was chosen President.

XIV. Their first act was the passage of a resolution commending the conduct of the people of Boston in their opposition to the obnoxious laws of Parliament. They also agreed upon a declaration of rights, recommended the suspension of all commercial intercourse with Great Britain, and voted an address to the king, another to the people of Great Britain, and a memorial to the Canadians.

XV. General Gage, who, in addition to his position as commander-in-chief of the king's forces, had been recently ap-

---

\* Peyton Randolph was born in Virginia, in 1723. As stated above, he was the President of "The First Continental Congress." He was also elected President of the second Congress, held at Philadelphia in the following year, but political duties calling him to Virginia before the close of its session, he was succeeded in the position by John Hancock, of Massachusetts. His death was sudden, occurring at Philadelphia, towards the close of October, 1775.

XIII. QUESTIONS.—49. What convention took place in 1774? 50. How many delegates were present? 51. Name the twelve colonies that were represented. 52. Who was chosen president of the Congress?

XIV. 53. What measures did they pass?

XV. 54. What appointment had Gage received? 55. What did he determine upon? 56. What did he do in conformity with the determination?

pointed governor of Massachusetts, determined, in this crisis, upon more active measures. He fortified Boston Neck, and seizing the military stores which the Americans had collected at Cambridge and Charlestown, conveyed them to his headquarters.

XVI. The people everywhere were excited, but their feelings were controlled by a prudence befitting the solemnity of the occasion. A conflict with the "mother country" seemed to be inevitable. The Massachusetts Assembly, though dissolved by the governor, had again convened as a Provincial Congress, and adopted a plan for organizing the militia. The men in Massachusetts capable of bearing arms were daily trained in military exercises, and pledged to take the field at a minute's notice; hence their name of "minute men." Military measures were also adopted in other colonies, and a general determination was manifested to resist, even with arms, the new oppressions attempted to be imposed by Great Britain.

#### EVENTS OF 1775.

I. The British government was not idle. Gage's forces at Boston had been so augmented by arrivals from England that in the beginning of April, 1775, he found himself in command of three thousand troops.

II. For the purpose of destroying the stores which the Americans had collected at Concord, a town about sixteen miles from Boston, he dispatched, at night, a detachment of eight hundred men, under Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn;

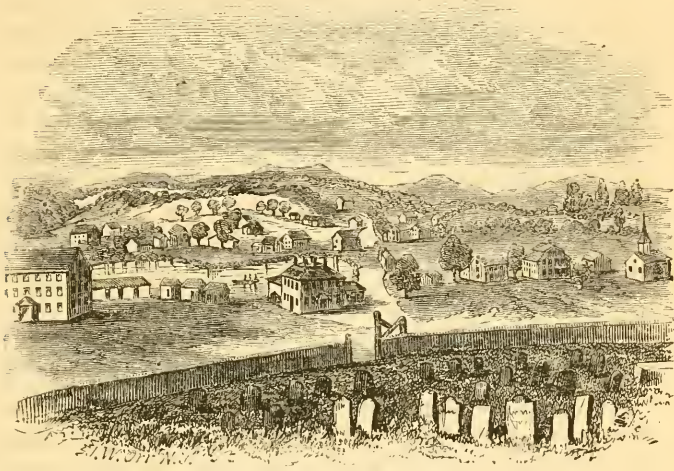
---

XVI. QUESTIONS.—57. What is said of the excitement of the people? 58. In what respect did the Massachusetts Assembly undergo a change? 59. What is said of the "minute men?"

EVENTS OF 1775.—I. 1. What activity had Gage shown?

II. 2. What expedition was sent out under Smith and Pitcairn? 3. In what manner was it intended the expedition should be conducted? 4. How was the intention foiled? 5. In what direction from Boston is Concord? (See map, p. 87.) 6. In what direction from Boston is Lexington? (See same map.) 7. When did the British reach Lexington? 8. What did they find there?

but notwithstanding the intended secrecy of the expedition, the alarm was given, and the "minute men" were aroused in every direction by messages and signals from Boston. When the British reached Lexington, half the distance to Concord, before sunrise, on the morning of the 19th of April, between sixty and seventy of the citizens were drawn up under arms.



CONCORD, MASS., IN 1774.

III. Pitcairn rode forward and shouted, "Disperse, you rebels; throw down your arms and disperse;" but, not being obeyed, he ordered his men to fire. Then was shed the first blood of the Revolution. Eight of the men of Lexington were killed, nine were wounded—a quarter of that heroic band had thus fallen—and the others dispersed. The British proceeded to Concord, and destroyed all the stores they could find. In the mean time the "minute men" from all directions had begun to assemble, and a skirmish ensued, in which several per-

1775. sons were killed on both sides. Towards noon the invaders began their retrograde march for Boston.

IV. The Americans pursued the retreating troops, keeping up a constant fire upon them from behind trees and stone fences. Colonel Smith was severely wounded, and his men, fainting and exhausted, were in danger of being entirely cut off, when they were joined at Lexington\* by a re-enforcement of nine hundred men, under Lord Percy. A short interval for rest and refreshment was allowed, and then the united detachments of the British continued the retreat, taking the road to Charlestown. The minute men followed as before, keeping up the pursuit until after sunset. The loss of the British during the memorable affair of this day was about two hundred and eight, in killed, wounded, and missing; that of the Americans was about ninety.

V. The tidings of the day's contest spread with wonderful rapidity, and the militia from New Hampshire, Connecticut, and other parts of New England, hastened to join their brethren of Massachusetts in forming a camp in the neighborhood of Boston. Here General Artemas Ward, of Massachusetts, was exercising a limited command, by virtue of an appointment from the Provincial Congress of that colony; but the men from the different colonies appeared mostly as independent corps, under leaders of their own choosing. This was not all. The effect of the day's strife took a direction which nobody could have anticipated,—people began to talk of a separation from England, and of an independent government of their own.

VI. It being deemed important to secure Ticonderoga and Crown Point, in May, 1775, a number of volunteers from Ver-

---

\* Lexington, the scene of the first encounter between the British and Americans in the Revolutionary contest, is situated about ten miles northwest from Boston, and seven miles east from Concord. At the time of the encounter the town contained about seven thousand inhabitants.

IV. QUESTIONS.—11. Give an account of the retreat and pursuit as far as Lexington. 12. How were the British aided at Lexington? 13. Give an account of what afterwards took place.

V. 14. What effect did the battle of Lexington have? 15. Under what organization were the American forces which were collected near Boston? 16. What other effect did the day's strife have?



mont and Connecticut, under Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold, captured both places without loss; and, by this fortunate achievement, a large supply of military and naval stores fell into the hands of the Americans. 1775.

VII. So closely were the British troops at Boston hemmed in by the provincials, that the place began to experience the privations of a besieged city. The timely arrival of re-enforcements from England, under Generals Howe, Burgoyne, and Sir Henry Clinton, enabled Gage to act with more decision; and that commander issued a proclamation, in which he declared all Americans in arms to be rebels and traitors, but offered pardon to those who should return to their allegiance. To this offer two exceptions were made—John Hancock\* and Samuel Adams†—their offences being pronounced too great to admit of pardon.



JOHN HANCOCK.

VIII. The Americans, anticipating that the British had designs against the country beyond Charlestown, determined to seize and fortify the heights commanding the neck of the peninsula. Accordingly, on the evening of the 16th of June, Colonel Prescott was sent with a detachment of one thousand men to execute this perilous enterprise.

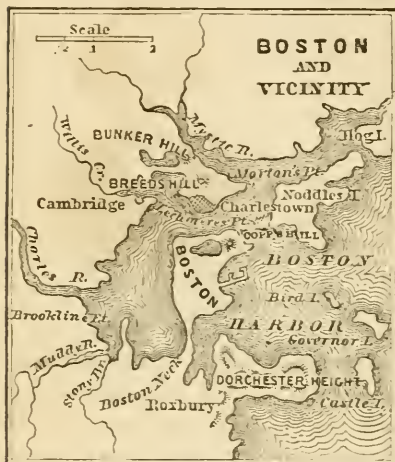
\* John Hancock was born in Quincy, Massachusetts, in 1737. In 1775 he was elected President of the Continental Congress, and in 1776 he signed the Declaration of Independence. He died in Quincy, in 1793.  
 † Samuel Adams was born in Boston, in 1722. He and John Adams were related, having the same great-grandfather, making them second cousins. He was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. His death occurred in Boston, in 1803.

VI. QUESTIONS.—17. Give an account of the capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point. 18. How are these two places situated? (See map, p. 85.)

VII. 19. What is said of the condition of the British troops in Boston? 20. By whom was Gage joined from England? 21. What is said of a proclamation? 22. Who were excluded from the offer in the proclamation? 23. Why were they excluded?

VIII. 24. On what business was Prescott sent? 25. Why did the Americans wish to occupy the heights?

1775. IX. On attaining the ascent of Bunker Hill\* he concluded, after consulting his officers, to deviate from the letter of his orders and fortify Breed's Hill, because the latter was nearer to Boston, and had a better command of the town and shipping. The consultation and change delayed matters until midnight. Then the work commenced\* Every man of the thousand seized, in his turn, the pick-axe and spade; and by the dawn of day a strong redoubt was completed.



X. The British, on discovering the works on Breed's Hill, began a cannonade from vessels in the harbor, and also from a battery on Copp's Hill, in Boston; but with little or no effect. They then made preparations for an assault. About three thousand troops, under Generals Howe and Pigot, crossed over to Charlestown, while,

mainly through the exertions of General Putnam, about five hundred men were added to Prescott's force in the course of the day.

XI. Meanwhile the British had set fire to the village of Charlestown, by means of shells thrown from Copp's Hill; and,

\* Bunker Hill monument, an obelisk two hundred and twenty-one feet high, erected in commemoration of the battle, now stands on the spot where the redoubt was built on Breed's Hill. Its corner-stone was laid by General Lafayette, on the 17th of June, 1825, the fiftieth anniversary of the battle. An immense concourse of persons was present on the occasion, including nearly two hundred revolutionary soldiers and forty surviving patriots of the battle, and President John Quincy Adams, with his entire cabinet. Daniel Webster delivered the oration.

IX. QUESTIONS.—26. What conclusion did Prescott afterward come to? 27. Why did he so conclude? 28. How was the work then carried on?

X. 29. What did the British do on discovering the works? 30. How next did they proceed?

XI. 31. When was the battle of Bunker Hill fought? 32. Give an account of it.

amid the glare of its flame, Howe and Pigot advanced to the attack. Twice did they get to within a few rods of the redoubt, when the Americans, each time, opened upon them so deadly a fire that they were repulsed with heavy loss. General Clinton arriving, the third charge was more successful; and the Americans, their ammunition being entirely exhausted, were forced to retreat. 1775.

XII. The loss to the British, in killed and wounded, according to their own account, was more than a thousand men: the Americans lost less than half that number, though among their slain was Joseph Warren,\* one of the ablest and most popular of the patriot leaders, and an estimable man. His loss was deplored as a severe calamity to the cause of freedom.



JOSEPH WARREN.

XIII. Though the British had gained the hill—the ground contended for—the victory to them was more disastrous and humiliating than an ordinary defeat; while, to the Americans, the defeat had the effect of a triumph: it gave them confidence in themselves, and consequence in the eyes of their enemies. The day's doings, too, convinced the people that the military training and experience which the Putnams, the Starks, and the Washingtons had acquired, in the "school" of the French and Indian War, had been gained to some purpose.

\* Joseph Warren was born in Roxbury, Mass., in 1731. After having been graduated at Harvard College, he studied medicine, and became a physician of extensive practice in the city of Boston. He was one of the leading men in resisting the unjust and oppressive measures sought to be fastened upon the colonies by Great Britain, holding as he did, at the time of his death, two of the most responsible civil positions under the commonwealth of Massachusetts, and a commission as major-general.

XII. QUESTIONS.—33. What loss did the British sustain in the battle? 34. What, the Americans? 35. What is said of Warren?

XIII. 36. How did the victory affect the British? 37. How, the Americans? 38. Of what did the people become convinced?

1775. XIV. On the very day of the capture of Ticonderoga, May 10, the second Continental Congress convened at Philadelphia. That body voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men, and, on the 15th of June, by a unanimous vote, elected George Washington commander-in-chief. Washington, who, at the time, was a delegate in the Congress from Virginia, rose in his place, and, with dignity and modesty, accepted the appointment, but declined all compensation for his services: he only asked for the payment of his expenses. He thereupon resigned his position in the Congress, and repaired to Cambridge, three miles from Boston, where, on the 3d of July, he took command of the army, then numbering about fourteen thousand men.

XV. While the revolution was gaining strength at the east, in the south it was also making progress. Lord Dunmore, the governor of Virginia, having seized some powder and removed it to a vessel in the York River, Patrick Henry, at the head of a corps of volunteers, demanded and received compensation therefor. Some months later, in December, a force, consisting of British regulars, tory volunteers, and negroes, which had been collected by Dunmore, attacked a body of Virginia patriots near Norfolk; but the assailants were repulsed with great loss. In revenge, Dunmore, at a later period, reduced the town of Norfolk to ashes.

XVI. It having been ascertained that the British intended to invade the colonies from Canada, Congress determined to anticipate the movement, by carrying the war into that pro-

XIV. QUESTIONS.—39. When did Allen and Arnold capture Ticonderoga? 40. What also occurred on that day? 41. What two acts of Congress are mentioned? 42. How did Washington receive the appointment? 43. What did Washington thereupon do?

XV. 44. Describe the York River. (See map, p. 85.) 45. What event is mentioned in connection with the York River? 46. What was done by Patrick Henry? 47. Give an account of the battle near Norfolk. 48. How did Dunmore gratify his revenge? 49. How is Norfolk situated? (See map, p. 24.)

XVI. 50. What scheme of invasion did the British intend? 51. How was it determined to anticipate the movement? 52. What advantage did the possession of Canada promise? 53. What forces were sent?

vince. Beside, if Canada were gained, its use to the British as a place of rendezvous and supply would be prevented. Two forces were accordingly sent; one by the way of Lake Champlain, under General Schuyler\* (*ski'-ler*), and the other by the Kennebec River, commanded by Arnold.



GENERAL SCHUYLER.

XVII. Schuyler proceeded down Lake Champlain, and encamped on an island at the head of the Sorel (*so-rell'*) River, but sickness compelling his return to Albany, the command devolved upon Montgomery. Ethan Allen,† who, at the setting out of the expedition, had been engaged in reconnoitering the country between the Sorel and the St. Lawrence, was again dispatched in the same direction, this time for recruits. Instead, however, of prosecuting the business on which he was sent, he crossed the St. Lawrence to make an attack upon Montreal. The result of this reckless enterprise was defeat; and he was sent a prisoner to England, in irons. This mishap did not in the least interfere with the operations of the main force; and before the middle of November, Montgomery, by a series of well-directed movements, had acquired

\* Philip Schuyler was born at Albany, New York, in 1733. He was engaged in the French and Indian war, and accompanied Sir William Johnson in 1755. His death occurred at Albany, in 1804.

† Ethan Allen was born in Connecticut, in 1742, or thereabouts. His parents, soon after his birth, took him to Vermont, and there, when he grew to manhood, he was one of the most determined of the settlers, in resisting the claims of New York to the Vermont territory. As colonel of an armed force he protected those who had received grants of land from the Governor of New Hampshire, and drove out of the district the New York settlers. The troubles continued about ten years, when the more important events of the Revolution put an end to the hostile acts, though the controversy was afterward renewed. Allen, as stated above, was sent to England in irons. After suffering a captivity of more than two years in England, Halifax, and one of the prison-ships of New York, he was exchanged. He never afterward actively engaged in military service; but died at Burlington, Vt., in 1789.

XVII. QUESTIONS.—54. Near what boundary-line is the head of the Sorel River? (See map, p. 124.) 55. In what direction from the head of the Sorel is Montreal? (See same map.) 56. How long did Schuyler's connection with the expedition continue? 57. Give an account of Allen's doings. 58. Give an account of Montgomery's successes.



1775. possession of Fort Chambly (*sham'-ble*), St. John's, and Montreal, and was thereby master of a large part of Canada. He then proceeded against Quebec.



PART OF THE SOREL RIVER.

XVIII. In the mean time Arnold, having performed a tedious march through the wilderness, enduring almost incredible toils and hardships, appeared before Quebec; but not being sufficiently strong to attack the city alone, he retired twenty miles up the St. Lawrence, and there awaited the arrival of Montgomery. A junction of the two forces was effected in the beginning of December, and, with Montgomery in the chief command, the entire army, numbering but nine hundred effective men, proceeded to take a position before Quebec.

XIX. After a siege of three weeks without gaining any advantage, it was resolved to attempt the capture of the place by an assault. Accordingly, at dawn on the last day of the year, and while a violent snow-storm was prevailing, the American army, in four columns, advanced to the attack. Montgomery,\* who led one of the columns, had gained some advantage, when a discharge of grape-shot, from a single cannon of the enemy, made deadly havoc, killing him and one of his aides instantly, and mortally wounding others. His column at once retreated. Arnold, who led another of the columns, was severely wounded and borne from the field, and Captain Morgan assumed the command. Morgan took refuge in a stone house, from which he defended himself awhile, but,

\* Richard Montgomery was born in Ireland, in 1736. In 1775 he was a representative from New York in the Continental Congress.

XVIII. QUESTIONS.—59. What had Arnold been doing in the mean time? 60. When did Montgomery's and Arnold's forces unite? 61. What movement did they then make?

XIX. 62. Give an account of the battle of Quebec.



seeing no prospect of relief, he and his few followers were compelled to surrender.

XX. Arnold, though wounded and disabled, took command of the troops that had effected a retreat, and, in an encampment a short distance from Quebec, passed a rigorous winter. In the spring, General Wooster arrived from Montreal and took the command; and he, in turn, was succeeded by General Thomas. The British, having received large re-enforcements from England, assumed the offensive, and before June, 1776, the Americans had abandoned one place after another, and entirely evacuated Canada.



GENERAL MONTGOMERY.

XX. QUESTIONS.—62. What did Arnold do after the battle? 64. By whom was he succeeded in the command? 65. What further is stated of military operations in Canada?

### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. How did the expenses of the French and Indian War affect the national debt of Great Britain? . . . . . 110
2. What assertion, having reference to the increased debt, did the British ministry make? . . . . . 110
3. What principle, in relation to taxing the colonies, was also maintained by the ministry? . . . . . 110
4. What two assertions were made by the colonists, in reply, respecting the expenses which had been incurred in founding the colonies, and in aiding the "mother country" to prosecute the war? . . . . . 110
5. What principle of taxation did the colonists maintain? . . . . . 110
6. Inasmuch as the principle was not respected by the British government, what deduction was drawn therefrom? . . . . . 110

7. What had been the policy of Great Britain toward her American colonies from their first establishment?.....110, 111
8. In what year were the "writs of assistance" authorized?.... 111
9. What obnoxious act was passed by Parliament, in 1765?.... 111
10. What effect did the news of its passage have in America?.... 111
11. What were the obnoxious provisions of the act?..... 111
12. Who, in Virginia, was the first to oppose the act in public?.... 111
13. How did Massachusetts show her opposition to the act?... 111, 112
14. Give an account of the Colonial Congress..... 111, 112
15. Give the further history of the Stamp Act..... 112
16. What law was passed at the time of the repeal of the Stamp Act? 112
17. By what act was the "right to tax America" again asserted? 113
18. State the circumstances which led to the Boston Massacre.... 114
19. What concession had been made by Parliament before the news of the "massacre" reached England? ..... 114
20. Why was not the concession satisfactory to the colonists?.... 114
21. What became of the tea sent to America?..... 114
22. When and where did "The First Continental Congress" meet? 115
23. What acts, recommendations, &c., were passed by the Congress? 115
24. What active measures did General Gage adopt?..... 115, 116
25. What preparations were then made by Massachusetts?..... 116
26. Who commanded the expedition sent by Gage in April, 1775? 116
27. What was the object of that expedition?..... 116
28. State what took place at Lexington and Concord..... 117, 118
29. Give an account of the retreat and pursuit..... 118
30. At what place, and how, did the Americans form a camp?... 118
31. What was achieved by Allen and Arnold in May, 1775?..... 119
32. Give the preliminaries of the battle of Bunker Hill..... 119, 120
33. Give an account of the battle of Bunker Hill..... 120, 121
34. What was done by Congress and Washington in June and July? 122
35. What took place in Virginia in the year 1775?..... 122
36. Where, at the North, did the Americans resolve to carry the war? 122
37. Why did they determine to go against Canada?..... 122, 123
38. How were operations against Canada commenced?..... 123
39. How far did Schuyler proceed, and why did he return? ..... 123
40. Give an account of Arnold's doings and misfortune..... 123
41. What progress did Montgomery make before December?... 123, 124
42. What can you state of Arnold's operations meanwhile?..... 124
43. What was done by Montgomery and Arnold, acting together? . 124
44. What was afterward done in Canada by Arnold alone?..... 125
45. How did the operations against Canada end?..... 125

## EVENTS OF 1776.

I. Owing to various causes, Washington's army in the vicinity of Boston had dwindled to less than ten thousand men, but by great exertions it was augmented to fourteen thousand before the close of February, 1776. Congress, believing that this force would be required in other directions, urged Washington to attack the British, and, if possible, drive them from the city. This accorded with his own desire, which had been previously made known; yet, in a council of his officers, the recommendation was rejected as involving too much risk. A plan of action was, however, adopted, by which a line of fortifications was in one night erected on Dorchester Heights, which completely commanded the city and harbor of Boston.

II. Howe, who had succeeded Gage\* in the command, seeing that he must either dislodge the Americans at once or evacuate the city, resolved on an attack; but a violent storm preventing it till the Americans were strongly fortified, his only alternative was evacuation. An understanding was thereupon informally entered into, by which the British should be allowed to embark without molestation from the batteries, upon condition that they would not set fire to the city. In accordance therewith, on the 17th of March, 1776, they evacuated Boston, accompanied by fifteen hundred families of loyalists, and sailed for Halifax.

---

\* Thomas Gage was the last royal governor of Massachusetts. He was an active officer during the French and Indian war, and, during Braddock's campaign, he and Washington met.

---

EVENTS OF 1776.—QUESTIONS.—I. 1. What fluctuations took place in the number of Washington's army? 2. What was Washington urged to do? 3. To whom did he submit the recommendation? 4. What was its fate? 5. What works were erected instead?

II. 6. By whom was Gage succeeded in command of the royal forces? 7. What two alternatives were presented to Howe? 8. Upon what did he resolve? 9. Why did he not carry it out? 10. What is said of a certain understanding? 11. When did the British leave Boston? 12. By whom were they accompanied? 13. In what direction from Boston is Halifax?

III. A little more than two months before their departure, a secret expedition, conducted by Clinton, had been dispatched by water in a southerly direction. Surmising its destination to be New York, Washington gave General Charles Lee authority to raise volunteers in Connecticut and march to the protection of that city. It happened that on the very day of Lee's arrival in New York, Clinton appeared off Sandy Hook, just outside the harbor.

IV. Foiled in his design against the city, Clinton sailed southward; and Lee, who had been appointed to the command of the southern forces, pushed rapidly on, watching, as best he could, his movements. At Cape Fear Clinton was joined by Sir Peter Parker and Lord Cornwallis (*corn-wol'-lis*), with a fleet and troops from England, and the whole force proceeded against Charleston, in South Carolina.

V. The people of Carolina had received intelligence of the intended attack, and were making great exertions in the erection of defenses at various places in the harbor. A fort of palmetto wood, on Sullivan's Island, garrisoned by about five hundred men under Colonel Moultrie (*môle'-tre*), commanded the channel leading to the town, and was considered, in connection with Fort Johnson, on James Island, the key to the harbor. A combined attack by land and water upon Sullivan's Island was commenced on the morning of the 28th of June, 1776. After a conflict of nine hours, during which Clinton was foiled in his attempt to reach the island, and the fleet was much shattered, the vessels drew off, and the British abandoned the enterprise.

III. QUESTIONS.—14. What expedition was sent under Clinton? 15. In what way did Washington undertake to anticipate Clinton's designs? 16. What coincidence occurred?

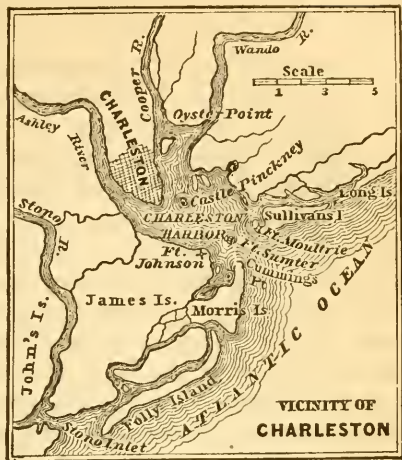
IV. 17. In what direction did Clinton then sail? 18. What took place at Cape Fear? 19. Where is Cape Fear? (See map, p. 79.) 20. Against what place did the British then proceed?

V. 21. How were the people of Charleston prepared? 22. What fort is between Forts Moultrie and Johnson? (See map, p. 129.) 23. Give an account of the battle of Fort Moultrie.

VI. While success was thus attending the American arms at the South, Congress was preparing to declare a separation of the political relations existing between Great Britain and the colonies. On the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, offered the following resolution: "*Resolved*, That these united

colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved."

VII. Thereupon a discussion took place which continued for three days, when the further consideration of the subject was postponed to the 1st of July. In the mean time, Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin,\* Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston, were appointed a committee to draft a Declaration of Independence. Lee's resolution was passed by a large majority on the 2d of July; and the DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, which had been prepared by



\* Benjamin Franklin was born in Boston, in 1706. He died in Philadelphia, in 1790.

VI. QUESTIONS.—24. What was Congress doing in the mean time? 25. Recite the resolution which was offered by Lee. 26. When did he offer it?

VII. 27. What is said of the discussion that followed? 28. What committee was appointed? 29. What became of Lee's resolution? 30. Give the further history of the Declaration.



DR. FRANKLIN.

Thomas Jefferson, the chairman of the committee, was unanimously adopted on the 4th of July, 1776.\* Everywhere the action of Congress was heartily approved by the people, and the Declaration was received in assemblies, cities, and among the troops, with demonstrations of joy.

VIII. In the beginning of July, General Howe arrived from Halifax, and took possession of Staten (*stat'-in*) Island, at the entrance of New York Bay. This he made the rendezvous for a powerful army intended to act against New York. He was soon joined by his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, from England, and by Clinton from the South: these, with other arrivals, including a body of Germans, or Hessians (*hesh'-ans*), as they were generally called, gave him an army of thirty-five thousand men.

IX. The design of the British was to seize the city of New York and the country along the Hudson River, establish a communication with Canada, separate the New England from the other States, and overrun the populous portions of the revolted districts. Washington's army, in the vicinity of New York city, amounted to twenty-seven thousand men; but, as many of these were sick, and many others were with-

---

\* The old State House, in Philadelphia, where Congress met, is still standing. It is generally known by the name of Independence Hall, though the room in which the Declaration of Independence was adopted and signed, received at first that appellation. The building was erected in 1735, but its bell-tower was not put up until 1750. A bell which was imported from England, expressly for the tower, was found cracked upon its arrival, and thereupon it was recast in the city of Philadelphia, and raised to its place in 1753. Upon fillets around its crown are the words: *Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof.* It has a world-wide reputation as the "Liberty Bell."

---

VIII. QUESTIONS.—31. Of what island did Howe take possession? 32. In what direction from New York city is Staten Island? (See map, p. 131.) 33. By what additions did he acquire an army?

IX. 34. What was the design of the British? 35. What is said of Washington's army?



out arms, his effective force did not exceed seventeen thousand men.

X. Lord Howe and his brother, having been commissioned to grant pardons to all who would lay down their arms and return to their allegiance, undertook to make known their powers by a proclamation addressed to the people, and by letters to Washington. The letters were not received, because they were addressed to George Washington, Esquire, instead of being addressed to him as commander-in-chief of the American army. This rejection of the letters was owing, not to any official pride on the part of Washington, but to a conviction that to receive them would compromise American rights and dignities.

XI. Baffled in the attempt, Howe determined to strike an effective blow without further delay. His troops were accordingly landed on the western end of Long Island, and, in three divisions, by three different roads, they advanced towards the American camp at Brooklyn, which was then in command of General Putnam.\*

XII. While two of the divisions were engaging the Americans, the third, under Clinton, having taken a circuitous route, fell upon their rear. Some of the patriots, by a desperate effort, cut their way through the host of foes, but a great many were either killed or taken prisoners. The loss of the



NEW YORK BAY.

\* Israel Putnam was born in Danvers, Massachusetts, in 1718. He took an active part in the French and Indian war. His death occurred in 1790, at Brooklyn, Connecticut.

X. QUESTIONS.—36. What special commission had Lord Howe and his brother received? 37. How did they undertake to make known their powers? 38. How were the letters addressed? 39. What was their fate? 40. Why were they rejected?

XI. 41. What did Howe then determine upon? 42. Where were his troops landed? 43. What passage of water did he cross in going from Staten Island to Long Island? (See map, p. 131.) 44. What plan of advance did the British adopt?

XII. 45. Give an account of the battle of Long Island.

1776. Americans, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was nearly two thousand; that of the British was less than four hundred. This conflict, generally known as the battle of Long Island, was fought on the 27th of August, 1776.

XIII. On the night of the 29th, while a heavy fog was hanging over Brooklyn, and concealing the movements of the Americans, the troops were embarked, under Washington's supervision, and in safety they all crossed to New York city. This retreat was undoubtedly one of the most signal achievements of the war, and redounded greatly to the military reputation of Washington.

XIV. As the evident design of the British was to encompass the American army on the Island of New York, Washington called a council of his officers, and, influenced by their opinion, abandoned the city and retreated to the northern part of the island. A part of the British army, thereupon, crossed the East River and took possession of the city.

XV. Desiring to gain a knowledge of the condition and plans of the enemy remaining on Long Island, Washington applied for a discreet officer to enter their lines and procure this intelligence. Captain Nathan Hale,\* of Connecticut, volunteered for the service. Hale reached the British camp, and obtained the information desired, but on his return was arrested. He was taken before Howe, by whom, without even the form of a regular trial, he was ordered for execution the next morning. He died a patriot and a hero, saying with his last breath: "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

\* Nathan Hale was born in Connecticut, in 1755. After being graduated at Yale College, he became a teacher. Immediately after the battle of Lexington, he entered the army as lieutenant, and before the close of the year was promoted to be a captain. His death occurred on the morning of the 22d of Sept., 1776. The tree on which he was hung, was one of an orchard owned by Colonel Rutgers, and stood "near the present intersection of East Broadway and Market street," New York city.

XIII. QUESTIONS.—46. Give an account of Washington's masterly retreat to New York.

XIV. 47. Why did Washington abandon the city of New York? 48. To what place did he retreat?

XV. 49. Relate the circumstances connected with the death of Nathan Hale.

XVI. About the middle of September, a large detachment of the British crossed the East River, at a point toward the upper part of New York Island, and formed a line almost across the island. On the morning of the 16th, they advanced, in strong force, towards the American lines, two miles off, when a spirited skirmish took place, resulting in the defeat and pursuit of the British. Though the Americans lost Colonel Knowlton and Major Leitch (*leech*), their principal officers engaged, the affair was of advantage, inasmuch as it was the first gleam of success in the campaign, and consequently tended to revive the spirits of the army.



GENERAL PUTNAM.

XVII. It was evident, from Howe's movements, that he intended to get above Washington's army and destroy his communications with the Eastern States. While three English frigates were sent up the Hudson to cut off the communication with New Jersey, Howe passed through the strait at the east of New York Island, and landed the greater part of his army in Westchester county, beyond the Harlem River. To render these movements fruitless, Washington withdrew his troops further north, to White Plains, and here, the British following, a partial though severe engagement took place, on the 28th of October, in which the Americans suffered defeat, losing between three and four hundred men, a loss about equal to that of the enemy.

XVIII. During the following night the Americans had so improved and strengthened their position, that Howe con-

---

XVI. QUESTIONS.—50. Give an account of the battle that took place on the 16th of September.

XVII. 51. What did Howe's movements indicate? 52. Describe the movements. 53. Give an account of the battle of White Plains. 54. In what direction from Tarrytown is White Plains? (See map, p. 47.)

1776. cluded not to renew the contest until the arrival of reinforcements; but before these came Washington withdrew his troops still further north, to the hills of North Castle. Instead of following, the British general turned his attention to the American posts on the Hudson, with the apparent design of invading New Jersey, and marching against Philadelphia.

XIX. Leaving one detachment, under Lee, at North Castle, and another, under Colonel Magaw, at Fort Washington, the American commander crossed the Hudson with the main body of his army, and entered New Jersey. On the 16th of November, 1776, the British made an attack upon Fort Washington, situated on New York Island, about eleven miles above the city, and, although they were successful, the victory cost them a thousand men.

XX. They then, in large force, commanded by Cornwallis, crossed the Hudson and took possession of Fort Lee, nearly opposite Fort Washington, which had been abandoned on their approach. Closely pursued by Cornwallis, Washington retreated through New Jersey, and, early in December, crossed the Delaware with his diminished and disheartened army. Congress, then in session at Philadelphia, soon after adjourned to Baltimore.

XXI. Lee,\* who had been urged by his commander-in-chief to hurry to the support of the main army, instead of obeying, at first delayed, and then advanced leisurely. Hav-

---

\* Charles Lee was born in England, in 1731. He was with Braddock in the battle of the Monongahela, and with Abercrombie in the assault on Ticonderoga. He afterward served in the Russian army. His death occurred at Philadelphia, in 1782.

XVIII. QUESTIONS.—55. Why did not Howe afterward renew the contest? 56. By what movement was Howe foiled? 57. In what direction from Verplanck's Point is North Castle? (See map, p. 47.) 58. What was Howe's next movement?

XIX. 59. On what stream of water was Fort Washington situated? (See map, p. 47.) 60. Give an account of the battle there.

XX. 61. Give an account of the retreat and pursuit. 62. What movement did Congress make? 63. On what river is Philadelphia situated? (See map, p. 142.) 64. Baltimore? (See map, p. 200.)

XXI. 65. How did Lee obey Washington's order to hurry to his support? 66. What misfortune befell him? 67. What was then done with Lee's detachment?

ing incautiously taken quarters at a distance from his detachment, he was surprised and taken prisoner by a scouting party of the enemy. Sullivan, who had been made a prisoner at the battle of Long Island, and recently exchanged, then took command of the detachment, and promptly conducted it to Washington's camp across the Delaware.



GENERAL LEE.

XXII. Owing to the reverses which the army had sustained, a feeling of gloom and despondency prevailed among the patriots. This was soon dispelled by a bold enterprise accomplished by Washington. On the night of the 25th of December, 1776, a division of the army crossed the Delaware under his command—two other divisions, in consequence of the ice, not having succeeded in getting over—and at eight o'clock on the morning of the 26th, attacked a body of Hessians stationed at Trenton. Rahl,\* their commander, was mortally wounded, between thirty and forty of his men were slain, and nearly a thousand taken prisoners. Washington's loss was only four men, two of whom fell in the battle, and two were frozen to death.

XXIII. Conscious that he could not hold Trenton against the superior force which the British could concentrate there in a few hours, he recrossed the Delaware with his prisoners and spoils. The victory restored confidence to the Americans,

---

\* The name of this officer was also spelled Rall, and in other ways. After the battle he was conveyed to the house of a Quaker family, where Washington and Greene visited the dying man.

---

XXII. QUESTIONS.—68. In what direction from Philadelphia is Trenton? (See map, p. 68.) 69. When did a battle take place there? 70. Give an account of the battle.

XXIII. 71. Why did Washington abandon Trenton? 72. What effect did the result of the battle have? 73. What induced Washington to again proceed to Trenton?



1776. while it startled and mortified the British. Encouraged by his success, and finding his army strengthened very much by recent recruits, Washington resolved to act on the offensive. With that view he again crossed the Delaware and took post at Trenton, though the enemy were assembled in great force at Princeton, only ten miles distant.

#### EVENTS OF 1777.



CENTRAL PART OF NEW JERSEY.

I. After being joined by troops under Generals Mifflin and Cadwallader, Washington's whole force at Trenton, on the 1st of January, 1777, did not exceed five thousand men. Fortunately, Congress had invested him with almost dictatorial powers in all things relative to the operations of war, and, thus empowered, he was making

efforts to augment his army by the addition of artillery battalions.

II. Towards the evening of the 2d of January, Cornwallis, at the head of a large body of troops, reached Trenton, and after making several attempts to cross the stream which runs through the town, and being as often repulsed with loss, he concluded to give his wearied troops a night's repose, and defer hostilities until morning, feeling sure of then capturing Washington and his entire army.

III. Washington's situation was indeed critical. To retreat

---

EVENTS OF 1777.—I. QUESTIONS —1. How large was Washington's army at Trenton in the beginning of 1777? 2. With what extraordinary power had Congress invested Washington?

II. 3. Give an account of what took place on the 2d of January.

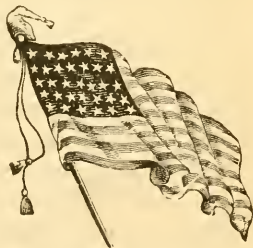
III. 4. Describe the situation in which Washington was placed. 5. What bold expedient suggested itself to his mind in this critical position? 6. In what direction from Trenton is Princeton? (See map, p. 136.) 7. When did the battle of Princeton take place? 8. Describe it. 9. What officer did the Americans lose?



across the Delaware, which was then very much obstructed by floating ice, or to remain and risk a battle with a superior force, appeared full of danger. In this hour of darkness, a bold expedient suggested itself, and he adopted it. Leaving his camp-fires burning, he marched by a circuitous route toward Princeton, intending to surprise and attack the British troops left there. At sunrise, January 3d, the van of his forces encountered, near Princeton, a part of the British troops, already on their march to join Cornwallis. At first the American militia gave way, but Washington coming up with a select corps, turned the tide of battle and routed the enemy. The loss of the British, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was about four hundred men; that of the Americans did not exceed thirty, but among them was General Mercer, who was mortally wounded.

IV. Washington's army was encamped at Morristown during the first months of 1777. The place had not been selected for winter quarters, but, being well protected by forests and rugged hills, no change was made until the latter part of May, when the encampment was removed to Middlebrook.

V. Early in 1776, Congress sent Silas Deane to France, to solicit aid for the United States. He was afterward joined by Dr. Franklin and Arthur Lee. France hesitated to extend any open assistance, but secretly aided the Americans by loans and gifts of money, and by supplies of arms, provisions, and clothing. And what aid France did not extend as a nation, was, to



FLAG OF THE UNITED STATES,  
ADOPTED IN JULY, 1777.

IV. QUESTIONS.—10. Where did Washington's army spend the first months of 1777? 11. Why did the army remain there so long? 12. When and to what place did the army remove? 13. In what direction from Morristown is Middlebrook? (See map, p. 68.)

V. 14. What persons were sent to France for aid? 15. In what way did France respond? 16. What is said of Lafayette?

1777. some extent, at least, accorded by her citizens. The Marquis de Lafayette was a notable example. At his own expense he fitted out a vessel, and, in the spring of 1777, arrived in America. He at once joined the army of Washington as a volunteer without pay, but was soon after appointed by Congress a major-general.

VI. Toward the close of April, 1777, General Tryon, late royal governor of New York, made an expedition eastward. With a force of two thousand men he marched against Danbury, Connecticut, and, after destroying the stores which had been collected there by the Americans, burned the town. Fearing an attack from the militia, who were assembling in great force, he retreated to his shipping in Long Island Sound, being repeatedly harassed on his retrograde march by detachments of the Americans, commanded by Generals Wooster, Arnold, and Silliman. Tryon's loss, during the expedition, amounted to nearly three hundred men: that of the Americans was not so large, but Wooster was among the slain.

VII. The destructive expedition against Danbury was fully retaliated in less than a month after. Colonel Meigs (*megz*), with a party of Connecticut militia, crossed Long Island Sound, destroyed the British stores and shipping at Sagg Harbor, and, carrying off ninety prisoners, returned to Connecticut without the loss of a man.

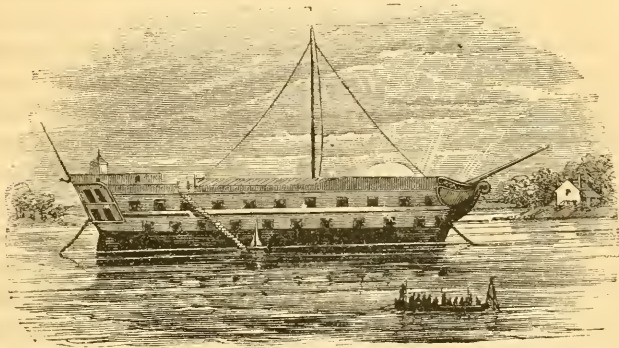
VIII. This gallant exploit was followed, in July, by another of equal, if not greater daring. Colonel Barton, with a small party of resolute men, at night crossed Narragansett Bay to the Island of Rhode Island, surprised and captured General Prescott, the British commander there, and returned

VI. QUESTIONS.—17. When and by whom was the town of Danbury burned? 18. In what direction from New Haven is Danbury? 19. Give an account of Tryon's expedition. 20. What officer did the Americans lose?

VII. 21. How is Sagg Harbor situated? (See map, p. 47.) 22. Give an account of the expedition conducted by Colonel Meigs.

VIII. 23. Give an account of the expedition conducted by Colonel Barton. 24. What was afterward done with Prescott?

safe to the mainland with his prisoner. This achievement put it into the power of the Americans to recover Lee, an officer of equal rank with Prescott, and the exchange was accordingly effected in May, 1778.



THE JERSEY PRISON-SHIP.\*

IX. As spring approached, it became evident that Howe's scheme in New Jersey was to draw the Americans from their camp at Middlebrook, and bring on a general engagement. In furtherance of the plan, he concentrated the main body of his army at New Brunswick, within ten miles of the camp; and, in one attempt, a skirmish took place between a corps under Cornwallis and Stirling's brigade, in which the British had the advantage. The scheme, however, failed: Washington continued to pursue his "Fabian policy," and, at length, the whole force of the enemy in New Jersey was withdrawn to Staten Island, leaving the American commander in complete possession of the State.

---

\* During the Revolution, the British used the hulks of their decaying ships for the imprisonment of Americans captured by them. One of these, the *Jersey Prison-Ship*, is proverbial in our revolutionary history on account of the great numbers who were confined there, and of the cruel and inhuman treatment they received. She was anchored in the Wallabout, a small bay on the Long Island shore, opposite New York, and used as a prison-ship until the close of the war.

---

IX. QUESTIONS.—25. What became evident as spring approached? 26. Did the British succeed? 27. To what place did the British withdraw?

1777. X. The troops thus withdrawn, amounting to eighteen thousand men, were embarked on board the fleet commanded by Admiral Lord Howe, and the vessels put to sea, leaving a large force under Clinton still at New York, to retain possession there, and make the city a base of other operations then in progress. The destination of the fleet being unknown to Washington, he remained for many days in painful uncertainty about it.

XI. At last the mystery was explained. The object of the British was to get possession of Philadelphia, but, on reaching Delaware Bay, they were deterred from entering by reports that measures had been taken to obstruct the navigation of the Delaware River. The Admiral, it afterward appeared, then determined to make for Chesapeake Bay, and, in that way, approach as near as possible to the city. Accordingly a landing was effected at a point on the Elk River, a stream flowing into the bay from the north.

XII. Washington hastened to dispute the march of the British, and, with the main part of his army, took a position at Chad's Ford, on Brandywine Creek. On the 11th of September, the enemy advanced in two divisions, and while one, under Knyphausen (*nip-how'-zen*), made a direct attack upon the left wing of the Americans, the other, under Howe and Cornwallis, crossed the stream above, and unexpectedly fell upon their right. The patriots defended themselves with great valor, but were at length forced to give way. The loss of the Americans, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was full twelve hundred men; that of the British was about five

---

X. QUESTIONS.—28. What disposition did Howe make of his troops? 29. On what subject did Washington feel a painful uncertainty?

XI. 30. How was the mystery of Howe's movements explained? 31. By what route did the British finally proceed? 32. What town is situated at the mouth of the Elk River? (See map, p. 142.)

XII. 33. Where did Washington take a position to dispute the march of the British? 34. Is Chad's Ford nearer the mouth of Brandywine Creek than Wilmington? (See map, p. 142.) 35. Give an account of the battle of Brandywine. 36. What distinguished officer, on the American side, was wounded? 37. What other distinguished officer was in the battle?

hundred. Lafayette, who was wounded, and Pulaski (*pu-las'-ke*), a Polish nobleman, were both in the battle, doing brave service for the cause of liberty.



WASHINGTON'S HEAD-QUARTERS AT BRANDYWINE.

XIII. During the following night, the Americans retreated to Chester, where they rendezvoused, and next day marched toward Philadelphia. Washington, desiring to save the city

XIII. QUESTIONS.—38. To what place did the American army retreat during the night? 39. State how Washington's determination to meet the enemy again was frustrated. 40. Give an account of the battle of Paoli. 41. Into what body of water does the Schuylkill flow? (See map, p. 142.) 42. In what direction from Philadelphia is Paoli? (See same map.)

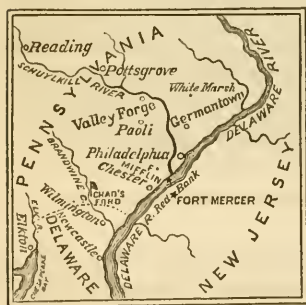


1777. if possible, recrossed the Schuylkill (*skool'-kil*), with the determination of seeking the enemy and giving battle. The two armies met, and were on the point of engaging, when a violent rain-storm prevented. To add to the disaster of Brandywine, General Wayne, who had been detached with about fifteen hundred men to get in the rear of Howe's advancing army, and cut off his baggage train, when near Paoli (*pā-o'-le*), on the 20th of September, was surprised by a midnight attack, and defeated with great loss.

XIV. A movement on the part of the British, which threatened the magazine and military stores at Reading (*red'-ding*), induced Washington to make a counter-movement and take a position at Pottsgrove. Philadelphia, thus abandoned, was entered by the British on the 26th of September, 1777. Howe prepared to make the city his winter-quarters, while the main body of his army was encamped at Germantown, four miles distant.

XV. Some days after, Washington, on learning that a strong detachment of the British had left for the reduction of Forts Mifflin and Mercer, determined to attack the force re-

maining at Germantown. Accordingly, early on the morning of the 4th of October, the Americans advanced upon the encampment of the enemy, and, for a time, had the advantage; but a fog which prevailed, and a stone house into which several companies of British troops had thrown themselves, favored the party attacked, and, after one of the



PHILADELPHIA AND VICINITY.

XIV. QUESTIONS.—43. How is Reading situated? (See map, p. 142.) 44. How is Pottsgrove situated? (See same map.) 45. Why did Washington occupy Pottsgrove? 46. What was the consequence? 47. Where did the main body of the British encamp for the winter?



bloodiest and most obstinate conflicts of the war, the patriots were repulsed. The loss, on the part of the Americans, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was about a thousand men; on the part of the British, about half that number.

XVI. Seven or eight miles below Philadelphia, the Americans had erected two forts on opposite sides of the Delaware River. One of these, called Fort Mifflin, was at Mud Island, near the Pennsylvania shore, and the other, Fort Mercer, was at Red Bank, on the New Jersey side. It was evident that while these two forts were in the hands of the Americans, and the obstructions remained which had been placed in the river, the British shipping could not ascend to Philadelphia, and consequently the army there would not readily obtain supplies.

XVII. Howe was aware of this, and, in concert with his brother, a plan of operations was agreed upon for the reduction of the forts and the removal of the obstructions. Accordingly, on the 22d of October, both forts were attacked: Mercer, by a land force of two thousand Hessians, under Count Donop; and Mifflin, by a powerful naval force of frigates and other vessels. But, in both cases, the British were most signally repulsed, with heavy loss. Donop was mortally wounded; about five hundred of the Hessians and marines were either killed or wounded, and two of the largest ships were destroyed. Colonel Green, who commanded at Fort Mercer, Colonel Smith, who commanded at Fort Mifflin, and Commodore Hazelwood, who did good service in command of a small fleet of galleys, were thanked by Congress for their courageous conduct, and to each was afterwards voted a sword.

---

XV. QUESTIONS.—43. In what direction from Pottsgrove is Germantown? (See map, p. 142.) 49. While at Pottsgrove, what information did Washington receive? 50. When did the battle of Germantown occur? 51. Give an account of it.

XVI. 52. How are Forts Mifflin and Mercer situated? 53. What was evident in connection with the two forts?

XVII. 54. What plan of operations was agreed upon? 55. When were the two forts attacked? 56. Give an account of the two battles? 57. How was the gallant conduct of the American commanders afterwards noticed?

1777. XVIII. On the tenth of November a second attempt to reduce Fort Mifflin was commenced. After a heroic defense of five days, during which the British kept up a destructive fire from a battery which they had erected, and also



COLONEL MOULTRIE.

from their ships-of-war, the garrison set fire to and evacuated the fort, and crossed over to Red Bank at night by the light of the flames. Washington endeavored to keep possession of Fort Mercer, but before he could send a sufficient force, Lord Cornwallis, with two thousand men, appeared before it. As a defense against such odds was hopeless, the place

was abandoned.

XIX. During the winter of 1777-'78, Washington's troops were quartered in huts at Valley Forge, on the west side of the Schuylkill River, about twenty miles from Howe's headquarters at Philadelphia. Here they suffered greatly for want of food, clothing, and comfortable quarters, and many of the officers resigned in consequence of not receiving their pay. In a letter which Washington addressed to the President of Congress, on the 23d of December, he says: "We have no less than two thousand eight hundred and ninety-eight men now in camp unfit for duty, because they are barefoot and otherwise naked."

---

XVIII. QUESTIONS.—58. When did the British a second time undertake to reduce Fort Mifflin? 59. Give an account of what followed. 60. What is said of Fort Mercer?

XIX. 61. Where did Washington's army make their head-quarters during the winters of 1778-'79? 62. In what direction from Fort Mifflin is Valley Forge? (See map, p. 142.) 63. What is said of the sufferings of the Americans at Valley Forge? 64. What statement did Washington make in a letter?

## BURGOYNE'S INVASION.

I. The failure of the campaign of 1776 against Canada, left the British at liberty to make hostile demonstrations from that quarter, and they were not slow in availing themselves of it. An army of ten thousand men, consisting of British and German troops, and a large body of Canadians and Indians, was concentrated at St. John's, on the Sorel River.

II. The immediate design of General Burgoyne, who commanded this large army, was to invade the United States by the way of Lake Champlain, and force his way to Albany. He further designed to effect a junction of his own army with that of one from New York city, and thus cut off Washington's communications with the Eastern States. Before making any advance, however, he sent a detachment, under St. Leger, to proceed by way of Oswego, capture Fort Schuyler (*ski'-ler*), situated on the Mohawk River, and then rejoin him at Albany.

III. Burgoyne, at the head of his invading host, moved slowly up the lake, and, after taking possession of Crown Point, proceeded to invest Ticonderoga, which was then garrisoned by a force of three thousand men, under General St. Clair.\* This commander had determined



GENERAL ST. CLAIR.

\* Arthur St. Clair was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, in 1735. He was with Wolfe in the battle of the Plains of Abraham, and with Washington in the battles of Trenton and Princeton. He died near Greensburg, Pennsylvania, in 1818.

BURGOYNE'S INVASION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What was the consequence of the failure of the Canada campaign in 1776? 2. Where did the British army of invasion concentrate? 3. How is St. John's situated? 4. Is St. John's north or south of Rouse's Point? (See map, p. 124.)

II. 5. Who commanded the army at St. John's? 6. What was Burgoyne's immediate design? 7. What further design did he have? 8. What detachment did he send out?

1777. to hold out to the last extremity, but, to his dismay, discovering that the enemy had erected batteries on Mount Defiance, a rocky height commanding the fort, he determined upon a speedy retreat.

IV. On the night of the 5th of July, while dispatching his ammunition and stores for Skenesborough (*skeenz'-bur-rō*), now Whitehall, the army crossed over to Mount Independence, and took a road through the woods, on the east side of the lake, towards Fort Edward, the head-quarters of General Schuyler, who then commanded the American forces at the north. Early on the morning of the 7th, the rear division of the retreating army was overtaken at Hubbardtown, Vermont, and, after a severe battle, routed with considerable loss. The ammunition and stores were also overtaken at Skenesborough, and destroyed.

V. Schuyler, deeming his force, which then numbered only about four thousand men, inadequate to make a successful stand against that of the invaders, gradually fell back to the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk. Burgoyne reached Skenesborough, and thence his march was slow and difficult, owing to the impediments which Schuyler had placed in his way, by destroying the bridges and felling immense trees across the roads.

III. QUESTIONS.—9. In what part of the State of New York is Lake Champlain situated? (See map, p. 62.) 10. What State is on the east of the lake? (See map, p. 62.) 11. How is Crown Point situated? (See map, p. 149.) 12. Ticonderoga? (Ditto.) 13. Mount Defiance? (Ditto.) 14. Up what lake did Burgoyne sail? 15. What place did he take possession of? 16. What place did he then proceed to invest? 17. By whom was Ticonderoga defended? 18. What had St. Clair determined upon? 19. Why did he not carry out his determination?

IV. 20. What did St. Clair do with his ammunition and supplies? 21. In what direction from Fort Edward is Whitehall? (See map, p. 149.) 22. To what place did the American army cross? 23. Where is Mount Independence? (See map, p. 149.) 24. What road did the army then take? 25. When was the battle of Hubbardtown fought? 26. How is Hubbardtown situated? (See p. 149.) 27. Give an account of the battle fought there. 28. What became of the ammunition and stores?

V. 29. To what place did Schuyler retire? 30. Into what river does the Mohawk flow? (See map, p. 149.) 31. Why did Schuyler retire to the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk? 32. What is said of Burgoyne's march after leaving Skenesborough?

VI. While approaching Fort Edward, an act of barbarity was perpetrated which excited wide-spread abhorrence. This was the murder of Miss McCrea. The lady, it appears, was on a visit to a friend residing near the fort. Several Indians, part of one of Burgoyne's marauding parties, burst into the house where Miss McCrea was, and carried her off. On the way, a quarrel arose among the savages as to whose prize the captive was. The dispute becoming furious, one of the Indians, in a paroxysm of rage, killed her, and bore off her scalp as a trophy.

VII. St. Leger, who, it will be recollected, had been sent against Fort Schuyler, on reaching the place, and finding it resolutely defended by Colonel Gansevoort, determined upon a siege. The besiegers were a motley force, composed mostly of British and Indians, the latter led by the famous Brant, with some Royalists, Hessians, and Canadians. On the 6th of August, two days after the commencement of St. Leger's operations, General Herkimer, with a body of militia, while advancing to the relief of Gansevoort, fell into an ambuscade at Oriskany, (*o-ris'-kan-e*), within a few miles of the fort, and was mortally wounded.



KOSCIUSKO.\*

---

\* Thaddeus Kosciuszko, a Polish patriot, was born about 1755. He was with Gates in the two battles of Stillwater, and subsequently distinguished himself as an adjutant of Washington. His death, which occurred in Switzerland, in 1817, was caused by a fall from his horse over a precipice.

---

VI. QUESTIONS.—33. Give an account of the murder of Miss McCrea. 34. How is Fort Edward situated? (See map, p. 149.)

VII. 35. Against what place had St. Leger been sent? 36. Where was Fort Schuyler? (See map, p. 148.) 37. By whom was Fort Schuyler defended? 38. Upon what did St. Leger determine? 39. Why did he not make an attack at once? 40. Of whom did the besiegers consist? 41. Give an account of the battle of Oriskany.

1777.



VICINITY OF FORT SCHUYLER.

VIII. At the same time, and for the purpose of making a diversion in favor of Herkimer, of whose approach Gansevoort had been informed, a spirited sortie from the fort was made upon the camp of the besiegers, who were driven away or fled, and a large quantity of baggage and stores was seized. The Americans retreated in good order to the fort just as St. Leger

came up with re-enforcements.

IX. Schuyler, upon hearing that Gansevoort was so closely pressed, sent a detachment of eight hundred men to his relief. Arnold, who commanded it, by contriving to send a report ahead, exaggerating the number of his force, so worked upon the fears of St. Leger's Indian allies that they fled, and the siege was abandoned.

X. While these events were taking place on the Mohawk, others, of no less importance, were being enacted nearer to Burgoyne. That commander, in consequence of the delays to which he had been subjected, found himself in want of supplies for his army. Learning that large quantities were stored at Bennington, he sent a detachment of five hundred men, mostly Hessians, commanded by Colonel Baum, to seize them. The detachment was met a short distance from the town, on the 10th of August, 1777, by a body of New Hampshire militia, under General Stark, and entirely defeated, Baum being killed. The victors then dispersed in various directions about the field.

VIII. QUESTIONS.—42. Give an account of the sortie from the fort.

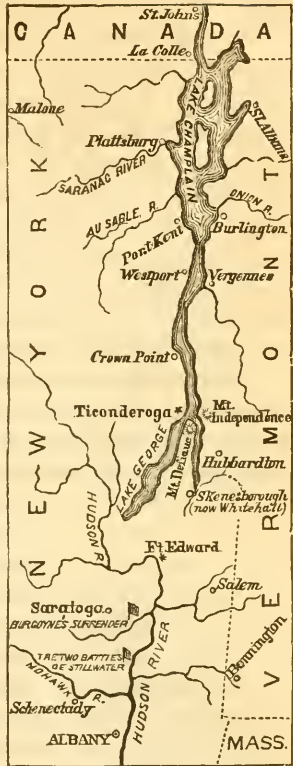
IX. 43. Give an account of Arnold's stratagem.

X. 44. What did Burgoyne find himself in need of? 45. How came it that his supplies were gone? 46. By what method did he undertake to procure supplies? 47. How is Bennington situated? (See map, p. 149.) 48. When did the battle of Bennington take place? 49. Give an account of it. 50. What error did the Americans commit after the battle?



XI. At this juncture, five hundred Hessians, whom Burgoyne had sent to the aid of Baum, came up. These were joined by many of their countrymen who had fled. Stark was endeavoring to gather together his scattered men, when, fortunately, Colonel Warner,\* with a fresh body of militia, arrived from Bennington, and the enemy were again defeated.

XII. The reverses experienced by the British at Fort Schuyler and Bennington, seriously embarrassed the movements of Burgoyne, and weakened and dispirited his whole army. Just then, when the Americans were in good force to confront the British, a change was made in the command of the patriot army of the north—General Gates, by act of Congress, was appointed to succeed Schuyler.



SARATOGA AND VICINITY.

XIII. Gates advanced to Bemis Heights, a little above

\* Seth Warner was born in Connecticut, about 1744. He took part in the capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, in 1775; was at the battles of Bunker Hill, Bennington, and Bemis Heights, and was with Montgomery in Canada. He died in Connecticut, in 1785.

XL QUESTIONS.—51. What occurred at this juncture? 52. How did fortune favor the Americans?

XII. 53. How did the defeat of the British at Bennington affect them? 54. Who was appointed to succeed Schuyler? 55. What injustice was done to Schuyler by the change?

XIII. 56. To what place did Gates advance? 57. In what direction is that from Bennington? (See map, p. 149.) 58. What movement did Burgoyne make? 59. When was the first battle of Stillwater fought? 60. Give an account of it. 61. By what other name is that battle also known?

1777. Stillwater, and Burgoyne crossed the Hudson, arriving within two miles of the American camp. On the following day, September the 19th, was fought the first battle of Stillwater, sometimes called the battle of Bemis Heights, in which Arnold was the leading spirit, and the bravest among the brave. Both parties claimed the victory; but, though the British remained on the field of battle, their progress toward Albany was effectually checked.

XIV. The two armies remained in sight of each other for more than two weeks, Burgoyne, in the mean time, strengthening his position, to await the co-operation of Clinton from New York. Despairing of aid from that quarter, the British commander determined, if possible, to cut his way through the American lines. Then, October the 7th, occurred the second battle of Stillwater, or, as it is often called, the battle of Saratoga.



GENERAL BURGoyNE.

XV. After a fierce conflict of several hours, in which the British lost General Fraser and other valuable officers, beside over four hundred men, they were compelled to give way. Though having no command assigned him, Arnold was the most active in the battle, and was severely wounded just as victory was deciding for the Americans.

XVI. Burgoyne\* retired to Saratoga shortly after, where, finding

\* John Burgoyne was born in England, about 1730. After his surrender to Gates he returned to England, being then a prisoner on parole, where he was coldly received in Parliament, of which body he was a member. He died in London, in 1792.

XIV. QUESTIONS.—62. How long did the two armies remain in sight of each other? 63. What did Burgoyne do in the mean time? 64. What did he at last determine to do? 65. When did the second battle of Stillwater occur? 66. By what other name is that battle also known?

XV. 67. Give an account of the battle of Stillwater.

XVI. 68. To what place did Burgoyne then retire? 69. What was his condition at Saratoga? 70. When did he surrender? 71. What did the Americans acquire by the surrender?

himself so surrounded that all chance of retreat was cut off, and being without provisions, on the 17th of October he surrendered his whole army, numbering more than five thousand men, prisoners of war. By the surrender, the Americans acquired a fine train of artillery, five thousand muskets, and a large quantity of clothing, tents, and military stores.

XVII. In the mean time Sir Henry Clinton had ascended the Hudson as far as Forts Clinton and Montgomery, and captured the two forts; but, instead of hastening to the co-operation of Burgoyne, he sent an expedition to devastate the country, intending thereby to make a diversion in favor of the northern British army. The troops garrisoning Ticonderoga and other forts on the northern frontier, upon hearing of Burgoyne's surrender, abandoned their posts and fled to Canada, and Clinton's expedition returned to New York.



GENERAL GATES.

XVIII. The all-important successes of Gates\* at Bemis Heights and Saratoga formed an unsatisfactory contrast with Brandywine and Germantown, and served the purpose of a faction, subsequently known as "Conway's Cabal," who were laboring in secret to undermine the popularity of Washington. The leading conspirator, the one from whom the cabal derived its name, was Thomas Conway, who had come from Europe with a military reputation, and been appointed a major-general in the American army.

\* Horatio Gates was born in England, in 1728. He was an officer in Braddock's expedition, in 1755, and was severely wounded in the battle of the Monongahela. After the Revolutionary War, he resided on an estate which he owned in Virginia, until 1790. He then removed to New York, where he died in 1806.

XVII. QUESTIONS.—72. What had Sir Henry Clinton done in the mean time? 73. How were the two forts, Clinton and Montgomery, situated? (See map, p. .) 74. What expedition did he send? 75. What effect did Burgoyne's surrender have upon the expedition, and the British troops on Lake Champlain?

XVIII. 76. What invidious contrast was made? 77. What is said of the cabal and the leading conspirators?

1777. XIX. A knowledge of this intrigue coming to Washington, his despondency, occasioned by the distresses at Valley Forge, was very much augmented, but during the trying season he comported himself with dignity; and time fully vindicated the wisdom of Congress in electing him to be the commander-in-chief of the army.

XX. In November, 1777, ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION for the government of the United States were adopted by Congress. These, however, in consequence of not being ratified by a sufficient number of States till 1781, did not go into effect before that year.



RUINS OF FORT TICONDEROGA.

XIX. QUESTIONS.—79. Did Washington hear of the intrigue against him? 79. How did the knowledge affect him? 80. What was his conduct under the circumstances? 81. What is said of the wisdom of Congress in connection with the subject?

XX. 82. When did Congress adopt the Articles of Confederation? 83. When did the Articles go into effect? 84. Why did they not go into effect sooner?

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. What measures were taken to drive the British from Boston? . 127
2. When and under what circumstances did they leave the city? 127
3. What authority did Washington give to General Charles Lee? 128
4. When, where, and by whom was Clinton's force increased?... 128
5. How was Charleston prepared for defense?..... 128
6. Give an account of the battle of the 28th of June, 1776..... 128
7. What was done in Congress on the 7th of June, 1776?..... 129
8. What on the 2d of July and the 4th of July?..... 129, 130
9. What extensive preparations were made by the British?..... 130
10. What was their design in making the preparations?..... 130
11. Give an account of the battle of Long Island..... 131, 132
12. Of Washington's retreat to New York and evacuation of the city 132
13. Of Howe's subsequent movements to intercept Washington. 133, 134
14. How did the British get Fort Washington and Fort Lee?..... 134
15. How did Gen. Lee behave when ordered to join the main army? 134
16. How did the British succeed in making him a prisoner?..... 135
17. Give an account of the battle of Trenton..... 135
18. Give an account of the battle of Princeton..... 136, 137
19. Why were Dr. Franklin and others sent to France?..... 137
20. What can you state of the generous conduct of Lafayette?... 138
21. What expeditions were made in April, May, and July?..... 138
22. In what way did Howe proceed from New Jersey to the Elk R.? 140
23. Give an account of the battle of Brandywine..... 140, 141
24. Give an account of Wayne's disaster at Paoli..... 142
25. When did the British army enter Philadelphia?..... 142
26. Give an account of the battle of Germantown..... 142, 143
27. Give an account of the two battles fought October 22d..... 143
28. How were Forts Mifflin and Mercer afterwards lost?..... 144
29. What can you state of Washington's army at Valley Forge? .. 144
30. What army did the British concentrate at St. John's, Canada?. 145
31. Give an account of St. Leger's operations..... 145, 147, 148
32. Of Burgoyne's movements against Ticonderoga..... 145, 146
33. Of the battle of Hubbardtown..... 146
34. Of the two battles fought near Bennington..... 148, 149
35. By whom was Schuyler superseded in the Northern command? 149
36. Give an account of the battle of Bemis Heights..... 149, 150
37. Give an account of the battle of Saratoga..... 150
38. What was Burgoyne finally compelled to do?..... 150, 151
39. What account can you give of Conway's Cabal?..... 151, 152
40. What can you say of the Articles of Confederation?..... 152



## EVENTS OF 1778.

I. The success of the Americans at Saratoga decided the negotiations which had been set on foot in 1776. France acknowledged the independence of the United States, and a treaty of alliance and commerce was concluded between the two countries. The commissioners by whom the treaty was made met at Paris,—those on the part of the United States being Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee,—and on the 6th of February, 1778, signed the important document.

II. In England the tidings of Burgoyne's surrender produced alarm, which was aggravated by apprehensions that France was about to espouse the cause of the Americans; and instead of the determination formerly manifested by the British ministry, to conquer the rebellious colonies at any cost, a more conciliatory spirit began to prevail, and two bills, in keeping with this feeling, were passed by Parliament.

III. Commissioners were sent to America, with all dispatch, to negotiate a restoration of peace; but Congress refused to treat with them until Great Britain should withdraw her fleets and armies, or acknowledge the independence of the United States.

IV. One of the commissioners, in his eagerness to forward the end of his mission, attempted to bribe General Joseph Reed and Robert Morris, members of Congress. Said Reed, in reply, "I am not worth purchasing; but, such as I am, the king of Great Britain is not rich enough to do it."

---

EVENTS OF 1778.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. How did the American success at Saratoga affect matters in France? 2. Who were the American commissioners by whom the treaty was negotiated? 3. When was it signed?

II. 4. How did the success at Saratoga affect the cause in England? 5. What was done by Parliament?

III. 6. Who were sent to America? 7. How did Congress act toward them?

IV. 8. What is said of the attempt at bribery?



V. France, immediately upon the conclusion of the treaty with the United States, fitted out a squadron, commanded by D'Estaing\* (*des-taing'*), the first object of which was to blockade the British fleet, then in the Delaware.



D'ESTAING.\*

VI. In the mean time, General Howe had resigned his command, and General Clinton been appointed his successor. The British government, fearing for the safety of their fleet in the Delaware, and apprehending a result to their main army similar to that of Burgoyne's, ordered the ships to leave the river, and the troops\* to abandon Philadelphia, and both forces to proceed to New York. Consequently, D'Estaing, in his first intention, was foiled, for, before his arrival, Admiral Howe had sailed.

VII. On the 18th of June, Clinton completed the evacuation of Philadelphia, crossed the Delaware, and commenced his march through New Jersey toward New York. Washington gave pursuit, and at Monmouth, on the 28th of June, a severely contested battle was fought. In the early part of it, Lee's division fell back, and was in full retreat just as Washington came up. Lee was sharply rebuked by the commander-in-chief, and directed to assist in further operations;

\* Charles Hector Comte d'Estaing was a native of France, born in 1729. He was a member of the Assembly of Notables in the French Revolution, but, falling under the suspicion of the Terrorists, was guillotined in 1794.

V. QUESTIONS.—9. How did France commence to assist the Americans?

VI. 10. What change took place in the British command? 11. In what intention was D'Estaing foiled? 12. What was the cause? 13. Why did Clinton leave Philadelphia?

VII. 14. When did he leave? 15. In what direction did he go? 16. What movement did Washington make? 17. When did the battle of Monmouth take place? 18. In what direction is Monmouth from Philadelphia? (See map, p. 68.) 19. What is Monmouth now called? *Ans.*—Freehold. 20. Give an account of the battle.

1778. he complied, and during the remainder of the battle displayed both faithfulness and courage.

VIII. Though, at the close of the day, the result of the engagement was indecisive, the advantage was clearly with the Americans, and they slept on their arms, intending to renew the contest on the following morning; but Clinton silently departed before dawn, and proceeded on his march. The loss of the British in the battle reached five hundred, and this was increased by more than a thousand desertions, principally among the Hessians, before the march was ended. The Americans lost more than two hundred, many of whom fell from the excessive heat and fatigue of the day.

IX. Lee's pride having been wounded by the rebuke he had received on the battle-field, he addressed two disrespectful letters to Washington on the subject, and, at his own request, was tried by a court-martial. Three charges were made out against him, namely: disobedience of orders, misbehavior before the enemy, and disrespect to the commander-in-chief. A tedious investigation of more than a month was had, when he was found guilty and sentenced to be suspended from all command for a year.

X. Lee never rejoined the army, but, just before the close of the war, died in Philadelphia. It is certain that his conduct, on more than one occasion during the war, gave rise to painful suspicions; and the evidence is now strong that, once at least, he was ready to act a treacherous part.

XI. During the summer of 1778, an enterprise was decided upon by Washington and D'Estaing, having for its object the

VIII. QUESTIONS.—21. What is said of the result? 22. What prevented a renewal of the contest? 23. What losses were sustained by each party?

IX. 24. To whom did Lee address two disrespectful letters? 25. Why did he do so? 26. What action was taken at his request? 27. What charges were brought against him? 28. What was the result of the trial?

X. 29. When and where did Lee die? 30. What is said of his conduct during the war?

XI. 31. What enterprise did Washington and D'Estaing decide upon? 32. What force did the enemy have there at the time? 33. How did the French and Americans commence operations? 34. In what direction from Providence is Newport? (See map, p. 37.)

expulsion of the British from the Island of Rhode Island, which place had been made a military dépôt and stronghold by them. The enemy's force there, at the time, consisted of about six thousand men, commanded by General Pigot, whose headquarters were at Newport. In accordance with the plan of attack, the French fleet entered the harbor of Newport and anchored near the town, while Sullivan,\* commanding the American troops, crossed from Tiverton and landed on the northern part of the island.

XII. Just as arrangements were matured for a combined attack, Lord Howe, who had heard of Pigot's danger, and hastened to his relief, made his appearance with his large fleet. The new-comer entirely diverted the French commander from his object, who, tempted by the hope of a naval victory, sailed out to meet Howe. The two fleets were about to engage when a furious storm came on, which parted and disabled them.



GENERAL SULLIVAN.

XIII. D'Estaing returned to Newport, but, instead of co-operating with the Americans, as agreed, he announced his intention of sailing for Boston, to refit his ships. Against this contemplated desertion, not only Sullivan, but Lafayette and Greene, who were then with the army at Rhode Island, remonstrated, but without effect. In the mean time, Sullivan had advanced almost to Newport, but, finding himself deserted

\* John Sullivan was born in Berwick, Maine, in 1740. In consequence of ill health, he resigned his position in the army before the close of the war. His death occurred at Durham, New Hampshire, in 1785.

XII. QUESTIONS.—35. Describe what took place in connection with D'Estaing's fleet.

XIII. 36. Upon D'Estaing's return to Newport, what announcement did he make? 37. How was the announcement received by the Americans? 38. What had Sullivan done in the mean time?

1778. by the French, he withdrew to the northern part of the island, followed up by the British.

XIV. Here, on the 29th of August, occurred an engagement known as the battle of Quaker Hill, or, taking its name from another eminence, on which the Americans had thrown up a redoubt, the battle of Batt's Hill. After a loss, in killed, of over two hundred on each side, the British retired. Learning that a fleet with troops was coming to the aid of Pigot, Sullivan gained the mainland, by a night movement, just in time to avoid being intercepted by Sir Henry Clinton.

XV. A little later in the season, a marauding expedition, commanded by General Grey, committed great devastation, burning vessels in Buzzard's Bay, sacking New Bedford and Fair Haven, and, at Martha's Vineyard, levying an immense contribution in sheep and cattle. But no acts of the enemy during the entire war were considered of greater atrocity than those committed by the Tories and Indians at Wyoming, in Pennsylvania, and at Cherry Valley, in New York.

XVI. Early in July, 1778, a large force of Tories and Indians, under Colonel John Butler, entered the Valley of Wyoming, spread desolation in every direction, and defeated, with great slaughter, a body of the inhabitants, who had marched out to check their ravages. In November, of the same year, a force of the same mixed character fell upon the settlement of Cherry Valley, and killed, or carried into captivity, many of the settlers.

XVII. Towards the close of the year, Sir Henry Clinton sent an expedition of two thousand men to invade Georgia.

XIV. QUESTIONS.—39. When did the battle of Quaker Hill take place? 40. Give an account of it. 41. What is said of Sullivan's escape?

XV. 42. Give an account of Grey's expedition. 43. Where is Buzzard's Bay? (See map, p. 37.) 44. In what direction from Newport is New Bedford? (See same map.) 45. Where is Fair Haven? *Ans.*—On the Acushnet River, opposite New Bedford, with which it is connected by a bridge. 46. Where is Martha's Vineyard? (See map, p. 37.) 47. What acts of the enemy were looked upon as of peculiar atrocity? 48. Where is Cherry Valley? (See map, p. 62.) 49. Where, Wyoming? (See map, p. 62.)

XVI. 50. Give an account of the "Massacre at Wyoming." 51. Of the "Massacre at Cherry Valley."

Colonel Campbell (*kam'-el*), who commanded it, proceeded against Savannah, then defended by a force of only six hundred regulars and two or three hundred militia, under General Robert Howe, and, on the 29th of December, made an attack. The Americans were defeated with much loss, and, in consequence, Savannah fell into the hands of the British, and was retained by them until July, 1783.

#### EVENTS OF 1779.

I. Savannah having fallen into the hands of the British, no other post in Georgia remained to the Americans except Sunbury (*sun'-ber-e*). On the 9th of January, 1779, General Prevost, who had arrived from Florida with a body of troops, captured this post, and, assuming the command of the British forces in the South, ordered Campbell to occupy Augusta, for the purpose of giving encouragement and support to the loyalists in that region.

II. The Tories along the western frontiers of Carolina, having organized themselves into a body, and placed Colonel Boyd in command, marched to join the royal army under Prevost. Throughout their entire route, they committed depredations and cruelties upon the property and persons of the patriots; but at Kettle Creek, Georgia, they were attacked, on the 14th of February, by a force of Carolina militia, under Colonel Pickens, and utterly defeated, Boyd being among the killed.

III. Encouraged by this success, General Lincoln (*link'-on*), who had arrived to take command of the American troops at

XVII. QUESTIONS.—52. What expedition was sent against Georgia? 53. How is Savannah situated? (See map, p. 164.) 54. When did a battle occur? 55. Give an account of it. 56. What was the consequence?

EVENTS OF 1779.—I. 1. What post in Georgia remained to the Americans after the fall of Savannah? 2. State how and when this, too, was lost. 3. What command did Prevost assume? 4. What order did he give? 5. In what direction from Savannah is Sunbury? (See map, p. 164.)

II. 6. What organization of Tories was effected? 7. What is said of their acts? depredations, etc.? 8. When did the battle of Kettle Creek take place? 9. Where did it take place? *Ans.*—At Kettle Creek, Georgia, near its junction with the Savannah River. 10. Give an account of the battle.

1779. the South, sent General Ashe to drive the British from Augusta, and confine them to the country near the sea. Campbell fled at his approach; but at Brier Creek, Georgia, Ashe was surprised by Prevost, on the 3d of March, and defeated, losing nearly his whole army by death, captivity, and dispersion. Elated with victory, Prevost advanced against Charleston, but the timely arrival of Lincoln forced him to retire.

IV. Learning that a body of British troops was stationed at Stono Ferry, ten miles southwest from Charleston, Lincoln determined, if possible, to drive the enemy from a position so menacing to the city. Accordingly, on the 20th of June, the attempt was made, but, after a severe engagement, the Americans were repulsed.

V. While these operations were being carried on at the South, General Tryon made two more expeditions against Connecticut, and Clinton captured Stony and Verplanck's Points, on the Hudson. In Tryon's second expedition, he destroyed some salt-works at Horseneck, and dispersed a body of troops under Putnam; in his third, he plundered New Haven, and laid East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk, in ashes.

VI. Washington, desiring to recapture Stony Point, planned a midnight attack under General Wayne.\* On the 15th of July, Wayne set out, and, dividing his force into two col-

---

\* Anthony Wayne was born at Waynesborough, Chester County, Pennsylvania, in 1745. He died at Presque Isle, now Erie, in 1796, while on his way from the West, where he had been on public business.

III. QUESTIONS.—11. Who succeeded General Robert Howe in the command of the American troops at the South? 12. On what expedition did Lincoln send Ashe? 13. How is Augusta situated? (See map, p. 164.) 14. When did the battle of Brier Creek take place? 15. Into what body of water does Brier Creek flow? (See map, p. 164.) 16. Give an account of the battle.

IV. 17. When did the battle of Stono Ferry take place? 18. Where was the battle fought? 19. Give an account of it.

V. 20. In the mean time, what had the British done at the East and North? 21. How is Stony Point situated? (See map, p. 169.) 22. Which is the nearer to Peekskill, Stony Point or Verplanck's Point? (See map, p. 169.) 23. How are New Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk situated? (See map, p. 47.) 24. Where is East Haven? *Ans.*—Four miles east from New Haven. 25. What did Tryon accomplish in his second expedition? 26. In his third?



umns, for simultaneous attacks on opposite sides of the fort reached the outworks before the alarm was given: the two columns then forced their way with the bayonet, in the face of a tremendous fire of grape-shot and musketry, and, meeting in the centre of the works, the garrison surrendered at discretion. The entire loss of the Americans was fifteen killed, and eighty-three wounded: the British lost upward of six hundred, in killed and prisoners. This achievement, considered one of the most brilliant of the war, was effected without the firing of a single gun on the part of the victors.



GENERAL WAYNE.

VII. Only four days after, July 19, another gallant exploit crowned the efforts of the Americans. The British post at Paulus (*paw'-lus*) Hook,\* in New Jersey, opposite the city of New York, was surprised at night by Major Henry Lee, and one hundred and fifty men of the garrison were made prisoners.

VIII. These two successes were counterbalanced by a complete reverse, experienced about a month later, in Maine. A squadron of armed vessels, fitted out by Massachusetts, proceeded against a military post which the British had established on the Penobscot River. Just as the Americans were about to make an assault, after an ill-judged siege of fifteen days, a British fleet arrived and defeated them with great loss.

---

\* Paulus Hook was so called for a number of years. Its name was afterwards changed to "the city of Jersey," and in 1838, by act of incorporation, it was called Jersey City.

VI. QUESTIONS.—27. What place did Washington desire to recapture? 28. How is Stony Point situated? (See map, p. 169.) 29. When was the battle of Stony Point fought? 30. Give an account of it. 31. How is Wayne's achievement considered?

VII. 32. Give an account of the exploit at Paulus Hook.

VIII. 33. Describe the Penobscot River. (See map, p. 103.) 34. Give an account of the reverse on the Penobscot.

1779. IX. As many of the Indian tribes, especially those in the western part of New York, were constantly warring upon the border settlements, General Sullivan was sent to check their depredations, as also to avenge the "Massacre of Wyoming." On his march, he was joined by General James Clinton, from the vicinity of Albany, when the united forces amounted to about five thousand men. After defeating a body of Indians and Tories at Newtown, now Elmira, in a conflict known as the "Battle of Chemung" (*she-mung'*), he penetrated as far as the Genesee (*jen-e-see'*) River, destroying forty Indian villages and a vast amount of corn. This chastisement greatly intimidated the Indians, and their murderous excursions became less frequent.

X. The winter of 1779-'80 set in early, and was very severe. Washington made his winter quarters at Morristown; and, though he made great exertions for the comfort of his troops, they still were at times on half allowance, and suffered greatly for want of sufficient clothing and shelter.

XI. D'Estaing, it will be remembered, sailed from Rhode Island for Boston, to refit his ships, after they had been disabled in a storm. From Boston he went to the West Indies. In September, 1779, he returned, and prepared to co-operate with Lincoln in an attempt to recover Savannah. On the 9th of October, after a siege of about three weeks, the two commanders made a combined assault, but were repulsed with the loss of nearly a thousand men, in killed and wounded. Among those who fell was the gallant Count Pulaski, a Polish patriot, who had distinguished himself at the battle of Brandywine, and had otherwise rendered good service to the American cause.

---

IX. QUESTIONS.—35. Upon what expedition was Sullivan sent? 36. By whom was he joined? 37. Where is Elmira? (See map, p. 62.) 38. What took place there? 39. What did Sullivan accomplish? 40. Describe the Genesee River. (See map, p. 62.)

X. 41. What is said of the condition of Washington's army during the winter of 1779-'80?

XI. 42. What is said of D'Estaing's movements? 43. Give an account of the attempt to recover Savannah. 44. What officer of note did the Americans lose?

XII. In September of this year, one of the most obstinate naval engagements ever fought took place off Flamborough Head, England. It was between a small squadron of French and American vessels, commanded by Paul Jones,\* and two British frigates that were convoying a merchant fleet. At about seven, on the evening of the 23d, the battle commenced. The *Bon-Homme Richard*, Jones's flagship, coming in contact with the *Serapis*, one of the frigates, commanded by Captain Pearson, Jones lashed the two vessels together. The contest continued with great fury till ten at night, when the *Serapis* struck. The other frigate in the mean time had surrendered to the *Pallas*, one of the vessels of the squadron. Jones, finding that his own ship was sinking, was compelled to transfer his crew to the *Serapis*.



PAUL JONES.

XIII. Great Britain found an additional antagonist this year, in Spain; that power with a view to regaining Gibraltar, Jamaica, and Florida, joined France and declared war against her.

## EVENTS OF 1780.

I. The principal military operations of 1780 were carried on in South Carolina. Sir Henry Clinton, with a fleet commanded by Arbuthnot, having sailed from New York to pro-

\* John Paul Jones was born in Scotland, in 1747. At the age of twelve, he was apprenticed to a ship-master who was engaged in the American trade. When the American Revolution broke out, he was in Virginia. His name was John Paul, to which, for some unknown reason, he added Jones. After the Revolution, he entered the Russian naval service, and died at Paris, in poverty and neglect, in 1792.

XII. QUESTIONS.—45. Where did a naval battle take place on the 23d of September, 1779? 46. What was the character of the battle? 47. Give an account of it.

XIII. 48. What additional antagonist appeared against Great Britain?

EVENTS OF 1780.—I. 1. Where were the principal military operations of 1780 carried on? 2. When did Sir Henry Clinton appear before Charleston? 3. How is Charleston situated? (See map, p. 164.) 4. What took place at Monk's Corner? 5. Where is Monk's Corner? (See map, p. 164.) 6. Give an account of the surrender of Charleston.

ceed against Charleston, appeared before that city in 1780. February, and, on the 1st of April, commenced a regular siege. While it was in progress, an American force, sta-



tioned at Monk's Corner, to keep open a communication between the city and the interior, was surprised by Colonel Tarleton, and put to flight. On the 12th of May, Lincoln, the American commander, unable to hold out any longer, surrendered, and every man in Charleston became a prisoner of war.

II. To complete the subjugation of South Carolina, as Clinton contemplated, three expeditions were sent into the interior. The first was to scour the country along the Savannah; the second, to go against the post of Ninety-Six; while the third was to pursue a body of troops which had been sent

II. QUESTIONS.—7. Why did Clinton send three expeditions? 8. What special objects had each?

to the relief of Charleston, but, on learning of the surrender of that city to the British, had turned back, and were marching towards North Carolina.

III. The first and second expeditions met with no opposition. As Buford, the commander of the retrograding Americans, was moving very rapidly, and had a long start of the third expedition, Cornwallis, its commander, detached Tarleton with a force of dragoons and mounted infantry, to lead the pursuers. At Waxhaw Creek, on the 29th of May, Tarleton overtook the retreating Americans, and, impetuously falling upon them, gave no quarters, but massacred or maimed nearly every man.

IV. Sir Henry Clinton, believing South Carolina to be completely subdued, sailed for New York, leaving Cornwallis to carry the war into North Carolina and Virginia. In this opinion, however, Clinton was mistaken: for Generals Sumter and Marion, by their partisan warfare, kept alive the spirit of freedom. Although the former was repulsed at Rocky Mount, yet at Hanging Rock, only a week after, he attacked a large body of British and Tories and gained a decided victory.

V. Previous to the surrender of Charleston, Washington had sent the Baron De Kalb with re-enforcements, for the purpose of aiding Lincoln; but, owing to various difficulties, De Kalb advanced no further than Deep River, in North Carolina, where, hearing of the fate of Charleston, he determined to await further orders. While thus waiting, Gates, who had been appointed by Congress to succeed Lincoln in

III. QUESTIONS.--9. How did the first and second expeditions succeed? 10. When did the battle of Waxhaw Creek take place? 11. Give an account of it. 12. Into what river does Waxhaw Creek flow? (See map, p. 164.)

IV. 13. Why did Clinton return to New York? 14. Whom did he leave in command? 15. What is said of Sumter and Marion? 16. What is said of the battles at Rocky Mount and Hanging Rock? 17. Where are these two places situated? (See map, p. 164.)

V. 18. How did Washington endeavor to prevent the loss of Charleston? 19. Give an account of De Kalb's movements. 20. Into what body of water does the Deep River flow? (See map, p. 164.) 21. Who was Lincoln's successor in command at the South? 22. To what place did Gates march his army?



the command at the South, arrived and took charge.  
1780. The army then marched to Clermont, in South Carolina.

VI. At this time there were two large forces of the British in South Carolina: one at Charleston, under Cornwallis, and the other on the Santee River, under Lord Rawdon. On hearing of the approach of Gates, Rawdon concentrated his troops at Camden, twelve miles from Clermont, at which place Cornwallis soon arrived with a small number of troops and took the command. On the 15th of August, Gates sent re-enforcements to aid Sumter in capturing a train of supplies intended for the enemy; and, on the night of the 16th, he advanced towards Camden, for the purpose of attacking the British should they march out in force to repel Sumter.

VII. On the same night, by a singular coincidence, Cornwallis sallied from Camden to attack the camp at Clermont. Just after midnight the two vanguards met at Sanders Creek, and a slight skirmish took place, and early in the morning a

general battle commenced. After a desperate contest, the American regulars, being deserted by the militia, and overwhelmed by superior numbers, were forced to retreat, with a loss in killed, wounded, and prisoners, of about a thousand men. De Kalb\* was among the mortally wounded, and died three days after. The loss of the British was between three and four hundred. This contest, fought on the 16th of August,



GENERAL DE KALB.

\* The Baron De Kalb was a native of Alsace, a German province in possession of France. He came to America with Lafayette, in 1777.

VI. QUESTIONS.—23. Where, at the time, were the British in force in South Carolina? 24. Describe the Santee River. (See map, p. 164.) 25. How is Camden situated? (See same map.) 26. What movements did Rawdon and Cornwallis make before the 16th of August? 27. What did Gates do on the 15th and 16th?

VII. 28. Give an account of the battle of Sanders Creek. 29. When did it take place? 30. By what other names is it also known? 31. What officer of note did the Americans lose?



1780, is known as the battle of Sanders Creek. It is also known as the first battle of Camden, or, it is quite as often simply designated as the battle of Camden.

VIII. Sumter was successful in capturing the train of supplies; but the defeat of Gates not only left him without any co-operation from that quarter, but let loose the enemy against him. He was pursued by Tarleton, and at Fishing Creek, a tributary of the Wateree, was surprised and routed with great slaughter.

IX. Believing South Carolina to be at last subdued, Cornwallis proceeded to overrun North Carolina. His first measure was to detach Major Ferguson to overawe the inhabitants favoring the patriot cause, and embody the loyalists under the royal banner. A large number of Tories and disreputable persons flocked to Ferguson's standard, and, as a consequence, his progress was attended by many disgraceful excesses.

X. These acts of violence so exasperated the inhabitants, that, on the 7th of October, a hastily-formed force, consisting of bodies of mountaineers and backwoodsmen, under the general command of Colonel William Campbell, of Virginia, attacked the enemy at King's Mountain,\* in South Carolina. Ferguson and one hundred and fifty of his men were killed, and the remainder, to the number of more than eight hundred,

---

\* King's Mountain is the name of a village in North Carolina. Near it, but in South Carolina, is the eminence of the same name, which was the scene of the battle. The conflict took place about a mile and a half south of the boundary-line between the two States.

VIII. QUESTIONS.—32. What is said of Sumter's success and subsequent defeat? 33. By what name is the Wateree River known in North Carolina? *Ans.*—The Catawba. 34. At what place was Sumter surprised and routed by Tarleton? 35. Into what stream does Fishing Creek flow? 36. Into what stream does the Wateree flow? (See map, p. 164.)

IX. 37. Under what delusion did Cornwallis proceed to overrun North Carolina? 38. What was his first measure? 39. What is said of the persons who flocked to Ferguson's standard? 40. What was the consequence?

X. 41. When was the battle of King's Mountain fought? 42. Was the battle fought in North or South Carolina? 43. In what direction is King's Mountain from the Cowpens? (See map, p. 164.) 44. Of whom did the American force at King's Mountain consist? 45. Give an account of the battle. 46. What officer did the Americans lose? 47. How did the result of the battle affect Cornwallis?

1780. surrendered. Though the Americans had only twenty men killed, the loss of Colonel Williams, a brave and efficient officer, who was among the slain, was very much felt. The blow was a severe one to Cornwallis, and compelled him to make a retrograde march into South Carolina.



GENERAL MARION.

XI. Marion\* (*mā'-re-un*), by his stratagems and expedients, continued to frustrate the purposes of British detachments, and Sumter, appearing again in the field after his rout at Fishing Creek, was victorious in two engagements—one at Fishdam Ford, with Major Wemyss (*wēmz*), and the other at Blackstocks, with Tarleton.

XII. At the north, in the mean time, events of great importance were taking place. Sir Henry Clinton, having heard that a mutinous spirit was breaking out in Washington's army, deemed the occasion propitious for an expedition. Accordingly, a force of five thousand men, under Knyphausen, advanced into New Jersey, took possession of Elizabeth, and burned "Connecticut Farms," a village now called Union. In a second advance, also led by Knyphausen, the British were met at Springfield, on the 23d of June, and repulsed.

---

\* Francis Marion was born in South Carolina, in 1732. The amount of service which he rendered the patriot cause during the Revolution can hardly be estimated. He was sometimes at the head of an independent force, surprising relief and supply parties of the British, and often rescuing captive Americans; and then he and Sumter would be engaged in some daring enterprise, or he would aid Greene. All attempts of the enemy to overreach or baffle him were entirely futile. He was an honest man and a pure patriot. His death occurred in 1795.

---

XI. QUESTIONS.—48. What is said of Marion's successes? 49. Of Sumter's? 50. Where is Fishdam Ford? (See map, p. 164.) 51. Where is Blackstocks? (See map, p. 164.)

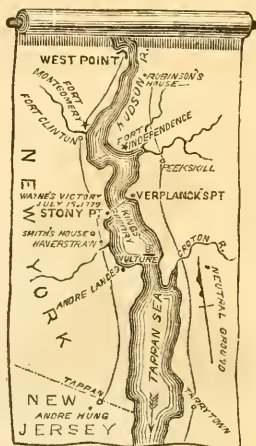
XII. 52. What prompted Clinton to send an expedition into New Jersey? 53. What expedition did he send? 54. What did Knyphausen accomplish in his first advance? 55. How is the village of Union situated? (See map, p. 68.) 56. How is the city of Elizabeth situated? (See map, p. 136.) 57. What was the city of Elizabeth formerly called? *Ans.*—Elizabethtown. 58. When did a battle take place at Springfield? 59. What was the result? 60. How is Springfield situated? (See map, p. 136.)

## TREASON OF ARNOLD.

XIII. The year 1780 is particularly memorable for the treason of Arnold. In 1778, directly after the British had evacuated Philadelphia, Washington appointed Arnold to the command of that city, as the state of his wound, received at Stillwater, would not permit him to resume active duty. At Philadelphia he lived at an expense far beyond his income, and, to meet the demands of his creditors, appropriated public funds to his own use. Charges were preferred against him, and, though acquitted by a court-martial of actual criminal intent, he was adjudged to be reprimanded by Washington.

XIV. The decision of the court was received by Arnold with an ill grace, and with evident emotions of resentment; and though Washington administered the sentence with great delicacy and consideration, Arnold felt the disgrace, and determined to effect a plan by which he might wreak his vengeance, and, at the same time, repair his fortune.

XV. He had already made secret advances to the enemy,

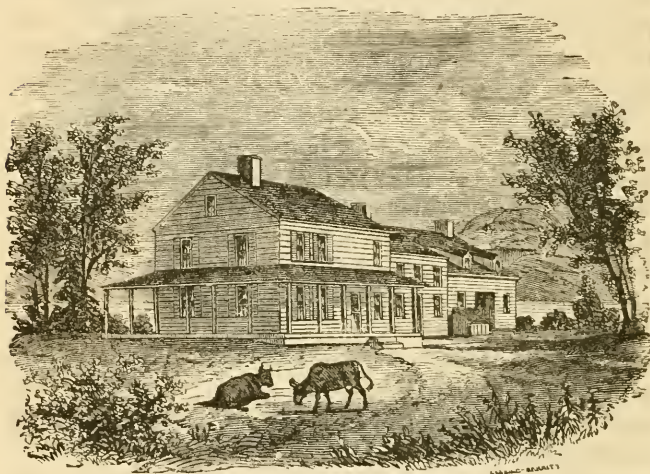


XIII. QUESTIONS.—61. For what is the year 1780 particularly memorable? 62. When was Arnold appointed to a command at Philadelphia? 63. Why was he not given a command requiring greater activity? 64. What is said of Arnold's style of living at Philadelphia? 65. What misappropriation of funds did he make? 66. What followed?

XIV. 67. How did Arnold receive the decision of the court? 68. How did Washington perform his unpleasant task? 69. Upon what did Arnold determine?

XV. 70. Of what had Arnold already been guilty? 71. What command did he solicit? 72. What correspondence was he at that time engaged in? 73. What is said of the importance of West Point? 74. Where is it situated? (See map, p. 169.) 75. How did Arnold's request strike Washington? 76. Why then did he grant the request?

1780. under a feigned name; and while actually engaged in a treasonable correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, he solicited the command of West Point, then the strongest and most important fortress in the United States. Washington expressed surprise that an officer so remarkable for energy and activity should seek a post where there was comparatively so little to be done; but, having confidence in Arnold's patriotism, he granted the request.



ARNOLD'S HEAD-QUARTERS, OPPOSITE WEST POINT.

XVI. The treasonable correspondence had now been carried on eighteen months. The plot was ripe. Arnold was in the command of an important fortress which he proposed to betray into the hands of the British; and Major André, aide-de-camp to Clinton, was sent to complete the plan of treason and adjust the traitor's recompense. André left New York,

---

XVI. QUESTIONS.—77. How long had Arnold carried on his correspondence with Clinton before the treasonable plot was ripe? 78. On what mission was André sent? 79. Who was André? 80. How did André reach Arnold?

proceeded up the Hudson, and, at a place about six miles below West Point, met Arnold and completed the bargain.

XVII. Instead of returning by water, as had been previously arranged, circumstances compelled André to cross to the east side of the Hudson, and proceed towards New York by land. When near Tarrytown, he was stopped by three militiamen—John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart—and searched. In his boots were found a number of papers in Arnold's own hand-writing; and he was therefore pronounced a spy. In vain he remonstrated, and attempted to bribe his captors; they conducted him to North Castle, the nearest military station of the Americans.

XVIII. Colonel Jameson, the commander at North Castle, instead of initiating measures for the capture of Arnold, stupidly dispatched a letter to that officer, informing him of the circumstances of the arrest. The traitor, startled and alarmed upon reading the letter, immediately escaped on board the British sloop-of-war *Vulture*, the vessel which had been intended for André's return, and took refuge in New York.



BENEDICT ARNOLD.

XIX. André was conveyed to Tappan, a village on the west side of the Hudson, opposite Tarrytown, and there tried by a court-martial, found guilty, and, agreeably to the law

XVII. QUESTIONS.—81. What change was made in André's traveling arrangements? 82. What was the consequence? 83. Where is Tarrytown? (See map, p. 169.) 84. Give the names of the three persons who arrested him. 85. What was the result of the search? 86. Did André endeavor to effect his release, or not? 87. By what means? 88. What did his captors do with him? 89. Where is North Castle? (See map, p. 47.)

XVIII. 90. Who commanded the Americans at North Castle? 91. What folly did he perpetrate? 92. What was the consequence?

XIX. 93. Whither was André taken? 94. How is Tappan situated? 95. Where was he executed? (See map, p. 169.) 96. How was Arnold rewarded for his treachery?



and usages of nations, executed as a spy Arnold\*  
1780. was made a brigadier-general in the British service,  
and received six thousand three hundred pounds sterling as  
an additional reward for his treachery.

---

\* Benedict Arnold was born at Norwich, Connecticut, in 1740. After the Revolution he was engaged in business for a time at St. John's, New Brunswick. He went to England, and at London, where he died in 1801, he lived in obscurity, everybody avoiding him with disgust.

### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. What foreign negotiations were commenced in 1776?.....	154
2. What acknowledgment did France make in 1778?.....	154
3. What treaty was also made at the same time?.....	154
4. Who, on the part of the United States, signed the treaty?....	154
5. What effect did Burgoyne's surrender have in England?.....	154
6. Upon what mission were commissioners sent to America?....	154
7. How did Congress act with reference to the commissioners?..	154
8. What error did one of the commissioners fall into?.....	154
9. How did General Reed reply to him?.....	154
10. What foreign squadron was fitted out to aid the Americans?..	155
11. By whom was Howe succeeded in the command of the British? ..	155
12. Why did not D'Estaing capture the British fleet?.....	155
13. When did Clinton evacuate the city of Philadelphia?.....	155
14. By whom was he pursued towards New York?.....	155
15. When did the battle of Monmouth occur?.....	155
16. Give an account of the battle.....	155, 156
17. What was the loss of the British during the battle and retreat? ..	156
18. How did Lee take the rebuke from Washington?.....	156
19. Upon how many and what charges was he tried?.....	156
20. What is said of the investigation and its result?.....	156
21. Give the subsequent account of Lee... ..	156
22. Where was Pigot in command during the summer of 1778?... ..	157
23. What rendered the place important at the time?.....	157
24. What enterprise was decided upon against it?.....	156, 157
25. Into what harbor did D'Estaing's fleet enter? .....	157
26. What was done by Sullivan at the same time?.....	157
27. How was D'Estaing diverted from the attack upon Newport?..	157
28. Upon his return to Newport, what announcement did he make? ..	157
29. How was the announcement received by the Americans?....	157
30. Give an account of the battle that took place on the island. .	153, 159



	PAGE
31. What fortunate retreat did Sullivan afterward make?.....	158
32. Give an account of Grey's marauding expedition .....	158
33. When did the "Massacre of Wyoming" take place?.....	158
34. When did the "Massacre of Cherry Valley" take place?.....	158
35. Upon what southern expedition was Campbell sent?.....	158, 159
36. Give an account of the battle between him and Gen. R. Howe	159
37. What did the Americans hold in Georgia at the opening of 1779?	159
38. When and by whom was Sunbury captured?.....	159
39. How did the force under Colonel Boyd originate.....	159
40. Give an account of the battle between him and Pickens.....	159
41. Who, in 1779, commanded the American troops at the South?	159
42. On what expedition did Lincoln send General Ashe?.....	160
43. Give an account of the battle between Ashe and Prevost. ....	160
44. Give an account of the battle of Stono Ferry.....	160
45. What was done by Tryon in his second and third expeditions?.	160
46. By whom was the recapture of Stony Point planned?.....	160
47. Give an account of Wayne's brilliant achievement. ....	160, 161
48. What brilliant success crowned the efforts of Major Lee?.....	161
49. Where, in Maine, had the British established a military post?.	161
50. Give an account of the expedition against it.....	161
51. On what westward expedition was Sullivan sent?.....	162
52. What did he accomplish during the expedition?.....	162
53. What preparations were made, in 1779, to recover Savannah?.	162
54. Give an account of the battle of Savannah.....	162
55. What account can you give of Pulaski?.....	161, 162
56. Where did Paul Jones have his famous naval battle?.....	163
57. Give an account of it.....	163
58. Give an account of the operations against Charleston.....	163, 164
59. What expeditions did Clinton send into the interior?.....	164, 165
60. What success did they meet with?.....	165
61. After Lincoln's capture, who succeeded to his command? ....	165
62. Give an account of the battle of Sanders Creek.....	166
63. Give an account of the battle of King's Mountain.....	167, 168
64. Of the events which led to Arnold's treason.....	169 170
65. What place did Arnold propose to surrender to the British?...	170
66. Whom did Clinton send to negotiate with Arnold?.....	170
67. At what place did André and Arnold meet?.....	171
68. State the circumstances of André's arrest.....	171
69. What further account can you give of André?.....	171, 172
70. How did Arnold succeed in making his escape?.....	171
71. How did the British afterward reward him?.....	172

## EVENTS OF 1781.

I. The Pennsylvania line of troops, to the number of thirteen hundred, having experienced much suffering through want of pay, clothing, and provisions, left their camp at Morristown, with the intention of marching to Philadelphia and demanding redress from Congress. At Princeton they were overtaken by two emissaries whom Clinton had sent, for the purpose of inducing them by bribes to enter the service of the king.

II. Though smarting under the neglect to which they had been subjected, the troops were not to be bribed. Regarding Clinton's attempt as a reflection upon their fidelity to the cause of freedom, they seized the emissaries and conducted them to General Wayne, to be treated as spies. While at Princeton a committee of Congress met the disaffected soldiers, and, after making concessions and granting relief, settled the difficulty. The two emissaries were tried by court-martial, found guilty, and executed as spies.

III. The plan of concession by which the troubles with the Pennsylvania troops were settled, had a pernicious effect; for the example of the Pennsylvanians was soon followed by a part of the Jersey troops, who claimed like treatment; but Washington, by vigorous measures, not only quelled this second mutiny, but repressed all similar manifestations among other portions of the army.

IV. However much these two demonstrations were regretted at the time, they produced a quickening and salutary effect upon Congress. Direct taxes were resorted to, an agent was sent to Europe for aid, the Bank of North America was chartered, and other efficient measures were adopted for the support

---

EVENTS OF 1781.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What is said of the mutiny of the Pennsylvania troops? 2. Where and by whom were they overtaken?

II. 3. What did the troops do with the emissaries? 4. What was finally done with them? 5. How was the difficulty with the troops settled?

III. 6. What is said of the method by which the difficulty with the Pennsylvania troops was settled? 7. How was that soon shown? 8. How were the Jersey troops dealt with? 9. What was the effect?

of the army and the maintenance of the government. Through the exertions of Robert Morris,\* as superintendent of the national treasury, and as president of the bank, was Congress mainly enabled to prosecute the war.



ROBERT MORRIS.

V. Early in 1781, two months after he had joined the British, Arnold was appointed to the command of an expedition against Virginia. With about twelve hundred men, he sailed up the James River to Richmond, plundered and destroyed public and private property there, and all his movements, in every direction, were marked by ravages and distress.

VI. Descending the river, he took post at Portsmouth. An opportunity for his defeat and capture seeming full of promise, Washington arranged a plan by which troops under Lafayette,† co-operating with a French fleet from Rhode Island, were to make the attempt. But the effort failed in consequence of the British fleet, under Arbuthnot, overtaking that of the French off the capes of Virginia, and, after an engagement of about an hour, compelling it to return.

VII. Gates's defeat at Sanders Creek caused his removal from the command of the Southern troops, and the appointment of Greene in his place. Establishing a camp on the

\* Robert Morris was born in Lancashire, England, in 1734. He came to America when thirteen years old, and was educated at Philadelphia. He was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. After the Revolution, he lost, by land speculations, an immense fortune which he had gained in the China trade, and he died at Philadelphia, in 1806, in comparative poverty.

† The Marquis de Lafayette was born in France, of an ancient and distinguished family, in 1757. He was in the battles of Brandywine, Monmouth, and Yorktown, and was a member of the court that tried André as a spy. He died in Paris, in 1834.

IV. QUESTIONS.—10. What is said of the effect which the two uprisings of the troops had upon the Congress? 11. What measures did Congress adopt? 12. What is said of Robert Morris's exertions?

V. 13. When did Arnold commence operations in behalf of those to whom he had deserted? 14. What is said of his expedition? 15. Describe the James River. (See map, p. 85.)

VI. 16. How is Portsmouth situated? (See map, p. 44.) 17. What plan of capture did Washington arrange? 18. Why did it fail?

1781. Great Pedee, the first care of the new commander was to reorganize the army, after which, separating it into



LAFAYETTE.

two divisions, he sent one, under Morgan, to check the devastations of the British in the western part of South Carolina; the other, he retained under his own immediate command.

VIII. Cornwallis no sooner heard of the movement of Morgan, than he dispatched Tarleton to disperse his force or drive

it out of the State. Morgan, on receiving intelligence of the approach of the British, was at first inclined to make a stand where he was encamped, but, being informed of the superiority of their numbers, he retreated and took a position near the Cowpens. Here Tarleton found him, on the morning of the 17th of January.

IX. Upon the signal being given, the British rushed forward with a shout, and a conflict ensued, in which, though Tarleton was confident of success, up to almost the very close of the battle, the Americans were completely victorious, inflicting a loss, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, of more than eight hundred men, while their own did not exceed seventy. The battle of the Cowpens was one of the most decisive of the Revolution. The patriots fought, actuated by a desire to revenge the wrongs and outrages which the Tories and English had committed upon them, their neighbors, and their homes,

VII. QUESTIONS.—19. What change in commanders did Gates's defeat at the South cause? 20. Where did Greene establish a camp? 21. Into what river does that flow? (See map, p. 164.) 22. How did he divide his army, and what did he do with one of the divisions?

VIII. 23. What expedition was dispatched by Cornwallis? 24. What movement did Morgan make? 25. Where is the Cowpens? (See map, p. 164.) 26. When did the battle of the Cowpens take place?

IX. 27. Give an account of the battle. 28. What is said of the decisiveness of the battle? 29. What is said of the desire which actuated the patriots?

and the result was a blow which perceptibly paralyzed the power of the royalists in the South.

X. Morgan\* did not linger on the battle-field. Believing that Cornwallis would advance upon him with an overwhelming force as soon as he should hear of Tarleton's defeat, the victor set out in a northeasterly direction, his object being to get across the Catawba before the enemy, then only twenty-five miles distant, could intercept him. Nor was he mis-



GENERAL MORGAN.

taken with regard to the movement of Cornwallis. That commander soon received the inglorious tidings from the Cowpens, and, starting off in pursuit of Morgan, reached the Catawba at evening, on the 29th, just two hours after the Americans had forded the river. He halted, intending to cross in the morning, but during the night a heavy rain set in, and by daybreak the stream was so swollen as to be impassable.

XI. Greene, who had received intelligence of the victory and pursuit, hurried forward with only a guard of dragoons, and, reaching the east side of the Catawba, took command of Morgan's division, and continued the retreat. After some delay and opposition, Cornwallis effected a crossing, and reached the Yadkin only in time to capture a few wagons which had lingered in the rear of the retreating army. Another fall of rain, which had occurred during the day, overflowed the ford

---

\* Daniel Morgan was born in New Jersey, in 1736. He was with Braddock in the expedition of 1755, performing the humble duties of teamster. At the breaking out of the Revolution, he joined Washington at Cambridge, with a rifle corps. He accompanied Arnold across the wilderness to Quebec, and participated in the attempt to capture that city. In the battle of Bemis Heights he took a distinguished part. His death occurred in 1802, at Winchester, Virginia.

---

X. QUESTIONS.—30. Why did Morgan hurry away after his victory? 31. What movement did Cornwallis make? 32. How were the Americans aided, as if providentially?

XI. 33. Who now assumed command of the American army? 34. Give an account of the pursuit as far as the Yadkin. 35. Describe the Yadkin. (See map, p. 164.) 36. How were the Americans aided the second time?

1781. Cornwallis had expected to use, and he was therefore compelled to find a crossing higher up.

XII. By stratagems and manœuvres, Greene succeeded in reaching the Dan River, and effected a crossing just as the astonished enemy appeared on the opposite bank. Grieved and vexed, Cornwallis abandoned the pursuit, and marched southward to Hillsboro (*hiltz'-bur-reh*).



GENERAL GREENE.

XIII. With his force increased to over four thousand men, Greene\* recrossed the Dan, feeling himself to be in sufficient strength to confront Cornwallis with boldness. But at Guilford (*ghil'-furd*) Court House, in North Carolina, he was attacked on the 15th of March, and, after one of the severest actions of the war, was forced to retreat.

His loss, in killed and wounded, amounted to four hundred men, in addition to which, many of the militia deserted.

The result, though a victory to the British, cost them, in killed, wounded, and missing, more than five hundred men, and so disabled Cornwallis as to compel him to retreat from the field of victory.

XIV. Undismayed by his reverse, Greene determined to follow the victor, and again give battle. The pursuit was

---

\* Nathaniel Greene was born of Quaker parents, at Warwick, Rhode Island, in 1742. He aided, at the beginning of the Revolution, in driving the British from Boston, and he took a distinguished part in the battles of Trenton, Princeton, Brandywine, Germantown, and Quaker Hill; and commanded in the battles of Guilford Court House, Hobkirk's Hill, and Eutaw Springs. He died of "sun-stroke," in Georgia, near Savannah, in 1786.

XII. QUESTIONS.—37. Give an account of the retreat and pursuit after leaving the Yadkin. 38. Describe the Dan River. (See map, p. 164.) 39. To what place did Cornwallis then march? 40. Where is Hillsboro? (See map, p. 164.)

XIII. 41. What bold movement did Greene make? 42. At what place did Cornwallis attack Greene? 43. When was the attack made? 44. How is Guilford Court House situated? (See map, p. 164.) 45. Give an account of the battle.

XIV. 46. What singular pursuit followed? 47. At what place did Greene almost succeed in overtaking Cornwallis? 48. Describe the Deep River. (See map, p. 164.) 49. Where is Wilmington? (See map, p. 164.)



eagerly kept up for several days, and the retreating enemy was almost overtaken at the Deep River; but there, in consequence of the bridge being broken down, and also because of the fatigue of his men, Greene had to give up the chase. Cornwallis did not halt until he reached Wilmington.

XV. Discharging a large number of the militia whose term of service had expired, Greene, with his reduced army, formed the bold resolve of entering South Carolina, and attacking the enemy at Camden. Lord Rawdon, who commanded the post at that place, wrote to Cornwallis, informing him of the threatening danger; but, believing that he would not be able to reach Camden in time to aid in its defense, Cornwallis took advantage of Greene's absence from North Carolina, and marched through that State into Virginia, where his army was strengthened by large additions.

XVI. Greene appeared before Camden, but, finding the enemy there stronger, in position and numbers, than he had anticipated, withdrew to Hobkirk's Hill, about two miles distant. Here he was partly surprised by Rawdon, on the 25th of April, but succeeded in forming his troops and repelling the first advance against him. Victory, for a time, hung in the balance: more than once, the British drove the Americans before them, but were compelled to recede before the impetuous charges of the patriots. At length, a regiment of the Americans was charged so furiously that it broke and fell into disorder. The enemy followed up this success vigorously, until the disheartened Americans retreated in one mass.

XVII. Each party lost about two hundred and fifty men,

---

XV. QUESTIONS.—50. What movement into South Carolina did Greene then make? 51. Why was his resolve a bold one? 52. Of what did Rawdon inform Cornwallis? 53. Why did not Cornwallis go to the rescue of Rawdon? 54. What did Cornwallis do instead?

XVI. 55. Why did not Greene attack Rawdon at Camden? 56. To what place did Greene withdraw? 57. What occurred there? 58. When did it occur? 59. Give an account of the battle.

XVII. 60. What loss did each party sustain in the battle? 61. Why did not the British follow up their advantage? 62. Whither did Rawdon go, directly after the battle? 63. In what situation did he find himself there? 64. What was he then compelled to do?

but, as at the battle of Guilford Court House, the 1781. British, though victorious, were too much cut up to allow them to pursue the advantage which they had gained. They re-entered Camden, but finding their supplies cut off by the Americans, and realizing that by the northward march of Cornwallis no aid could be expected, they adopted the only alternative, that of evacuation, and Camden was left in flames.

XVIII. A number of successes, in rapid succession, now attended the American arms at the South. In pursuance of Greene's plan of operations, Colonel Henry Lee was detached with a small body of troops, known as "Lee's Legion," and, in consort with Marion, Sumter,\* Pickens, and other partisan chiefs, carried on a harassing warfare against the enemy's scattered posts. Forts Watson, Motte, and Granby, fell into the hands of the Americans, and Augusta, Georgia, also surrendered after a siege of about two weeks.

XIX. Only three posts in South Carolina—Ninety-Six, Entaw Springs, and Charleston—remained in the hands of the British. Greene proceeded against Ninety-Six,† but after besieging it for almost a month, and making an unsuccessful assault, the approach of Rawdon compelled him to raise the siege, and he retreated before the arrival of the enemy. A foray which he subsequently planned, against the British troops in the vicinity of Charleston, was partially successful.

XX. As the fortunes of the British were beginning to de-

\* Thomas Sumter was born in South Carolina, about 1734. During the Revolution he took an active and able part as one of the partisan leaders at the South. The qualities of bravery, determination, and cheerfulness, which he exhibited, endeared him to his followers, who bestowed upon him the sobriquet of the "Carolina Game-Cock." Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor, was so named in honor of him. His death occurred in South Carolina, in 1832.

† The post of Ninety-Six was so called, because it was ninety-six miles from Prince George, a frontier fort in the northwestern part of South Carolina.

XVIII. QUESTIONS.—65. How did the American arms then fare? 66. What is said of Colonel Lee and others? 67. Name four of the places that fell into the hands of the Americans. 68. Give the situation of the four places. (See map, p. 164.)

XIX. 69. How many posts were then left to the British? 70. Give the situation of the three places. (See map, p. 164.) 71. Give an account of Greene's attempt against Ninety-Six. 72. What is said of a foray?

XX. 73. What call did Rawdon make upon the people? 74. How came he to make such a call? 75. Who was Colonel Isaac Hayne?

cline, even Charleston itself being threatened, Rawdon called upon all persons who had given in their adhesion to the royal cause, to repair at once to his standard. Among the persons so called was Colonel Isaac Hayne, a distinguished patriot of South Carolina, who had been assured, when he took the oath of adherence, that he would never be required to take up arms against his countrymen.

XXI. Believing this call to be in violation of the agreement, and being thus compelled to assume the sword either for or against the patriots, he did not hesitate to choose the former. At the head of a troop of horse he gained some advantages, but, being surprised and captured, was taken to Charleston. After a brief examination, without any trial whatever, he was sentenced to be hung; and, although the citizens united in petitioning for his pardon, the sentence was duly executed on the 4th of August.

XXII. Towards the latter part of August, Greene, who had been for several weeks on the "high hills of Santee," broke up his encampment to march against Stuart, who was then not twenty miles off. As he advanced, Stuart retreated to Eutaw Springs. Here, on the 8th of September, Greene, with a force not exceeding two thousand men, attacked the enemy, twenty-three hundred strong.

XXIII. The contest was desperate, and, at one time, victory seemed certain for the Americans; but the British rallying, Greene drew off his troops, taking with him about five hundred prisoners. The enemy decamped during the night. In this battle, which may be said to have ended the contest in South Carolina, both parties claimed the victory. Washing-

---

XXI. QUESTIONS.—76. What belief did Hayne hold respecting Rawdon's call? 77. What course did he consequently adopt? 78. What further account can you give of him?

XXII. 79. What movement did Greene make in August? 80. Where was a battle fought in the next month? 81. Near what river did the battle take place? (See map, p. 164.) 82. How did the battle commence?

XXIII. 83. Give a further account of the battle. 84. What may be said of the battle as regards the contest South? 85. How did Washington consider the result?

1781 ton considered it a victory for the Americans, as the advantage certainly was with them.

XXIV. Cornwallis's operations in Virginia, during the summer of 1781, were very distressing to the patriots, property to the value of several millions having been destroyed thereby. Lafayette had endeavored to check these operations, but owing to the inferiority of his force, was not able to make a stand against Cornwallis.

XXV. Clinton, believing New York to be menaced by a combined force of French and Americans, directed Cornwallis to take a position near the sea, from which he might readily send re-enforcements to the city, when called upon. The order was obeyed. Cornwallis took post at Yorktown, on the south side of York River, Virginia, opposite a promontory called Gloucester (*glos'-ter*).

XXVI. The expected arrival of a French fleet, under Count de Grasse (*dū grass*), in Chesapeake Bay, induced Washington to abandon the design which he had meditated against New York and proceed against Cornwallis, but, while doing so, to continue preparations as if against New York. The consequence was, that before Clinton became aware of the real intentions of the American commander, a body of French troops from Rhode Island and Washington's army were well on their way to Virginia.

XXVII. Clinton, finding it too late to adopt any direct measures against the great southward movement wherein the

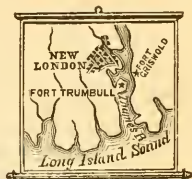
XXIV. QUESTIONS.—86. What is said of Cornwallis's operations during the summer of 1781? 87. What had Lafayette endeavored to do?

XXV. 88. What direction was sent to Cornwallis? 89. Why was he so directed? 90. How did Cornwallis obey? 91. How is Yorktown situated? 92. In what direction is Yorktown from Hampton? (See map, p. 200.)

XXVI. 93. Why did Washington abandon his design against New York? 94. What new project did he then determine upon? 95. In what way did he undertake to deceive the enemy? 96. Before Clinton became aware of his intentions, how far had his project progressed?

XXVII. 97. What expedition did Clinton hurry off? 98. What was his object in sending the expedition? 99. When did Arnold reach the harbor of New London? 100. How is New London situated? 101. How was it defended? 102. Into what body of water does the Thames flow? (See map, p. 183.)

French and Americans were combined, undertook to recall Washington by hurrying off an expedition of devastation to the eastward, under the command of Arnold. At daybreak, on the morning of the 6th of September, Arnold appeared off the harbor of New London, with a large fleet, carrying a strong land and marine force. New London is situated on the west bank of the Thames River, three miles from its mouth; and the approach to it was defended by Fort Trumbull, on the west side of the river, and Fort Griswold on the east.



NEW LONDON AND  
VICINITY.

XXVIII. The invaders were landed in two divisions; one, under Colonel Eyre (*ire*), on the east side, and the other, commanded by Arnold himself, on the west or New London side. Arnold advanced, meeting with but little resistance in taking Fort Trumbull, or in making himself master of the town. The militia which manned the fort, finding it untenable, abandoned their post and went to the aid of Fort Griswold, on the opposite side of the river.

XXIX. Meanwhile, Eyre proceeded against Fort Griswold, which had been hastily garrisoned by about a hundred and fifty militia, under the brave Colonel Ledyard. After a desperate contest, in which the assailants were repeatedly repulsed, losing their commander and many men, the fort was at last carried. Irritated by the opposition which they had met, the victors set upon the garrison without mercy, killing and maiming more in the massacre that followed than in the previous contest. Colonel Ledyard was among the first slaughtered. Major Bromfield, a malevolent Tory, who

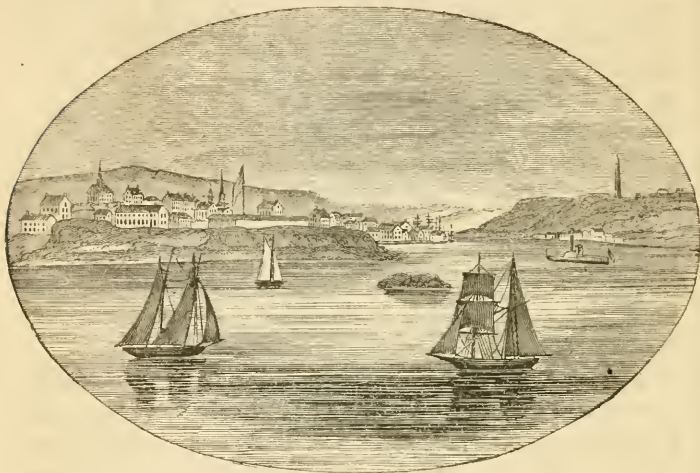
---

XXVIII. QUESTIONS.—103. In what way did the invaders proceed? 104. What success did Arnold meet with? 105. Whither did the garrison of Fort Trumbull go?

XXIX. 106. By whom was Fort Griswold garrisoned? 107. By whom commanded? 108. What is said of the contest and loss of men before the fort was carried? 109. What is said of the massacre that took place afterward? 110. Relate the case of Colonel Ledyard.

1781. had succeeded to the command, seized the sword which Ledyard was in the act of yielding up, and plunged it through the body of the brave man, killing him upon the spot.

XXX. Arnold, in the mean time, had not been idle. He burnt a number of vessels—all that had not effected their escape up the river—applied the torch to New London, and, while the town was in flames, retreated to his boats.



VIEW OF NEW LONDON.

XXXI. Arnold's expedition against Connecticut, though successful in itself, failed of its main object—the recall of Washington from the South; and consequently Cornwallis's position there was becoming every day more critical. Yorktown was besieged. The troops investing it were from the fleet of De Grasse, in addition to other French troops from Rhode Island, under Count de Rochambeau (*rō-sham-bo'*), and Washington was there as commander-in-chief of the combined

XXX. QUESTIONS.—111. What had Arnold accomplished in the mean time? 112. In what direction from New Haven is New London? (See map, p. 47.)

XXXI. 113. What is said of the success of Arnold's expedition? 114. What was the consequence to Cornwallis? 115. Of what troops were the besiegers composed? 116. What service did De Grasse render?



army, with a large American force. De Grasse blockaded the York and James Rivers and guarded the entrance to Chesapeake Bay.

XXXII. A British fleet, under Admiral Graves, which had been sent from New York for the relief of the besieged, appeared off the capes of Virginia, when De Grasse sallied forth, and a partial action took place. After remaining in sight of the French fleet during five days, Graves, despairing of success, bore away for New York.



LORD CORNWALLIS.

XXXIII. On the 9th of October, the allied armies besieging Yorktown commenced a cannonade so heavy that, in a day or two, most of the British works were demolished, and several vessels in the harbor were burned. In this desperate extremity Cornwallis determined to escape, if possible, by crossing to Gloucester, cutting his way through a French detachment stationed there, and, by rapid marches, to reach New York. But his plan was frustrated. A violent storm dispersed his boats after one division of his army had crossed the river, and the attempt was necessarily abandoned.

XXXIV. His position becoming untenable, and seeing no prospect of relief from Clinton, on the 19th of October, 1781, Cornwallis\* surrendered Yorktown and Gloucester, with more than seven thousand British soldiers, to Washington: his shipping and seamen he surrendered to De Grasse.

\* Lord Cornwallis was born in 1738. After the Revolution he was appointed to an important command in India, where he inaugurated a series of victories by which the British authority there was finally established. He died in India, in 1805.

XXXII. QUESTIONS.—117. What naval movement took place? 118. What did Graves afterwards do?

XXXIII. 119. What is said of the besiegers' cannonade? 120. What attempt at escape did Cornwallis make? 121. What prevented the success of the attempt?

XXXIV. 122. State the circumstances of Cornwallis's surrender.

CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION, AND EVENTS TO THE BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. The surrender of Cornwallis caused great rejoicings throughout the United States, being considered a death-blow to the war. The effect in England was as might have been anticipated. Public opinion became so decidedly opposed to the further prosecution of hostilities, that, upon the formation of a new ministry, negotiations were entered into for the establishment of peace.

II. A convention of commissioners from the two countries met at Paris, four of whom, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurens, represented the United States, and, on the 30th of November, 1782, they signed a preliminary treaty. A cessation of hostilities was proclaimed in the American army on the 19th of April, 1783, the eighth anniversary of the battle of Lexington; and, on the 3d of September following, a definitive treaty of peace was signed at Paris.

III. By the terms of the treaty, Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States, allowed boundaries extending to the great lakes on the north and the Mississippi on the west, and conceded an unlimited right to fish on the banks of Newfoundland. Florida was, at the same time, returned to Spain.

IV. The close of the war found the national treasury empty: the States were unable to respond to the call of Congress for money, and the resource of foreign loans was about exhausted.

CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What effect did Cornwallis's surrender have in America and England?

II. 2. Where did peace commissioners from the two countries meet? 3. Who were the American commissioners? 4. When was a preliminary treaty signed? 5. What took place on the eighth anniversary of the battle of Lexington? 6. When was a definitive treaty signed?

III. 7. What did the United States secure by the terms of the treaty?

IV. 8. What was the condition of things at the close of the war? 9. What was the consequence? 10. Where was the influence of Washington felt? 11. What arrangements were soon made?

The government was unable to meet the just claims made upon it, and the consequence was general discontent, particularly among the officers and privates of the army. Through the influence of Washington the discontents in the army were soothed, and arrangements were soon after made by which Congress granted five years' whole pay to the officers, instead of, as by resolution passed in 1780, half-pay for life. Four months' whole pay was granted to the soldiers, in part payment of their claims.

V. In conformity with general orders of Congress, the army was disbanded on the 3d of November, 1783; and on the 25th of the same month, Sir Guy Carleton, who had succeeded Sir Henry Clinton, evacuated New York. After the retirement of the British from the city, Washington met his officers there, and, "with a heart full of love and gratitude," took leave of them.

VI. Washington then repaired to Annapolis, where Congress was in session at the time, and, on the 23d of December, 1783, resigned to that body his commission as commander-in-chief of the American army. His simple and impressive address upon the occasion, and the touching response of General Mifflin,\* the president of Congress,



GENERAL MIFFLIN.

\* Thomas Mifflin was born in Philadelphia, in 1744. By birth and education he was a Quaker, but, notwithstanding the peace principles of that sect, he was one of the first to enlist in the military service at the breaking out of the Revolution. He was with Washington at Cambridge: in the battle of Long Island he fought with credit, and he was also in the battle of Trenton. His death occurred at Lancaster, Penn., in 1800.

V. QUESTIONS.—12. When was the American army disbanded? 13. When was New York evacuated by the British? 14. After the British left, what affecting scene occurred?

VI. 15. To what place did Washington then repair? 16. Where is Annapolis? (See map, p. 24.) 17. State what took place at Annapolis. 18. To what place did Washington then hasten? 19. How is Mount Vernon situated? (See map, p. 24.)

affected the assemblage to tears. He then hastened to his home at Mount Vernon, where, in the retirement of private life, he hoped to spend the remainder of his days.



MOUNT VERNON.\*

VII. Peace was no sooner established than it was found that, by the ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION, Congress had no power to discharge the debts incurred by the war; and this

\* Mount Vernon, the home of Washington and the place of his burial, is situated on the western bank of the Potomac, fifteen miles from Washington city. The place, comprising the mansion, the tomb, and two hundred acres of the original estate, was sold, in 1858, by John A. Washington, a nephew of George Washington, to the "Ladies' Mount Vernon Association," for \$200,000. "It is the design of the association to hold it in perpetuity as a place of public resort and pilgrimage."

VII. QUESTIONS.—20. What difficulty was found in regard to the debts of the Revolution? 21. What was the consequence? 22. How did Congress undertake to raise funds?

condition of things was productive of embarrassments which for a while threatened to deprive the people of the fruits of their seven years' contest for independence. As there was no other alternative, the individual States were called upon for funds, and they, in response, resorted to direct taxation.

VIII. The efforts thus made by the States were productive of great excitement, especially in Massachusetts, where the opposition grew to an open insurrection, known as SHAYS'S REBELLION. Daniel Shays, its leader, made some bold moves against the courts of the State, as well as against the military power; but the outbreak was suppressed, in 1787, with but little bloodshed, by a strong force sent against the insurgents.

IX. This daring attempt to destroy the government, though unsuccessful, filled its friends with gloomy apprehensions. Other causes increased the distrust, until at last it began to be generally felt that the Articles of Confederation were not at all adequate to the exigencies of the Union, and that measures should be taken either to revise them, or substitute others in their place.

X. Accordingly, a convention of delegates from all the States, except Rhode Island, met at Philadelphia, and their first act, by a unanimous vote, was to make George Washington their presiding officer. Instead of revising the Articles of Confederation, as was at first intended, they formed a constitution, after months of deliberation, and adopted it on the 17th of September, 1787. This, with some amendments made in after years, still exists as the Constitution of the United States.

XI. The Constitution was then submitted to the people for ratification, and after a thorough discussion, lasting in some

---

VIII. QUESTIONS.—23. Give an account of Shays's rebellion.

IX. 24. How did Shays's attempt affect the public mind? 25. What, at last, began to be generally felt?

X. 26. What, accordingly, took place? 27. What was the first act of the convention? 28. What did the convention accomplish?



of the States for two or more years, it was accepted by every one of the thirteen States. When it had been adopted by eleven (the requisite number was nine), it became valid, and went into operation on the 4th of March, 1789.

XI. QUESTIONS.—29. To whom was the Constitution then submitted? 30. For what purpose? 31. Was the Constitution thoroughly discussed or not? 32. How long did the discussion last in some of the States? 33. How many States finally accepted it? 34. When did it go into operation? 35. How many States had adopted it up to that time? 36. Which of the States had not adopted it when it went into effect? *Ans.*—North Carolina and Rhode Island.

NAMES OF OFFICERS, MENTIONED IN THIS WORK, WHO PARTICIPATED, ON THE SIDE OF THE AMERICANS, IN THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

NAME.	DIED.	NAME.	DIED.
Gen. William Alexander (Lord Stirling) .....	1783	Major Leitch .....	1776
Col. Ethan Allen .....	1789	Gen. Solomon Lovell .....	—
Gen. Benedict Arnold .....	1801	Gen. Benjamin Lincoln .....	1810
Gen. John Ashe .....	1781	Gen. Alex. McDougall .....	1786
Col. William Barton .....	1831	Gen. Francis Marion .....	1795
Col. Zebulon Butler .....	1795	Gen. Hugh Mercer .....	1777
Gen. John Cadwallader .....	1786	Gen. Thomas Mifflin .....	1799
Col. William Campbell .....	1781	Gen. Richard Montgomery .....	1775
Gen. George Clinton .....	1812	Gen. Daniel Morgan .....	1802
Gen. James Clinton .....	1812	Col. William Moultrie .....	1805
Gen. Thomas Conway .....	—	Capt. Jonas Parker .....	1775
Baron De Kalb .....	1780	Col. Andrew Pickens .....	1817
Count D'Estaing .....	1794	Col. William Prescott .....	1795
Gen. Peter Gansevoort .....	1812	Gen. Casimir Pulaski .....	1779
Gen. Horatio Gates .....	1806	Gen. Israel Putnam .....	1790
Count de Grasse .....	1788	Gen. Joseph Reed .....	1785
Col. Christopher Greene .....	1781	Count de Rochambeau .....	1807
Gen. Nathaniel Greene .....	1786	Gen. Arthur St. Clair .....	1818
Capt. Nathan Hale .....	1776	Gen. Philip Schuyler .....	1804
Col. Alexander Hamilton .....	1804	Gen. G. G. Silliman .....	—
Col. Isaac Hayne .....	1781	Col. Samuel Smith .....	1839
Gen. William Herkimer .....	1777	Gen. John Stark .....	1822
Gen. Robert Howe .....	—	Gen. John Sullivan .....	1785
Gen. Isaac Huger .....	—	Gen. Thomas Sumter .....	1832
Capt. John Paul Jones .....	1792	Gen. John Thomas .....	1776
Col. Thomas Knowlton .....	1776	Col. Seth Warner .....	1785
Gen. Henry Knox .....	1806	Gen. Artemas Ward .....	1800
Col. Thaddeus Kosciuszko .....	1817	Gen. Joseph Warren .....	1775
Gen. Lafayette .....	1834	Gen. George Washington .....	1799
Col. William Ledyard .....	1781	Gen. Anthony Wayne .....	1796
Gen. Charles Lee .....	1782	Col. Marinus Willett .....	1830
Col. Henry Lee .....	1813	Col. James Williams .....	1780
		Gen. David Wooster .....	1777



## PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE REVOLUTION.

\* The asterisk indicates the successful party. † Doubtful.

DATES.	BATTLES.	COMMANDERS.		MEN ENGAGED.	
		American.	British.	Am'rien	British.
1775.					
April 19,	Lexington .....	Parker .....	Smith* .....	unknwn	1,700
June 17,	Bunker Hill .....	Prescott .....	Gen. Howe* ..	1,500	3,000
Dec. 31,	Quebec .....	Montgomery ..	Carleton* ....	900	1,200
1776.					
June 28,	Fort Moultrie .....	Moultrie* .....	Parker .....	400	4,000
Aug. 27,	Long Island .....	Putnam .....	Gen. Howe* ..	10,000	20,000
Oct. 28,	White Plains .....	McDonall .....	Leslie* .....	1,600	2,000
Nov. 16,	Fort Washington ..	Magaw .....	Gen. Howe* ..	3,000	5,000
Dec. 26,	Trenton .....	Washington* ..	Rahl .....	2,400	1,000
1777.					
Jan. 3,	Princeton .....	Washington* ..	Mawhood .....	3,000	1,800
July 7,	Hubbardtown .....	Warner .....	Fraser* .....	700	1,200
Aug. 6, {	Oriskany† .....	Herkimer .....	St. Leger .....	1,000	1,500
	F. Schuyler, sortie.	Willet* .....	J. Johnson .....		
Aug. 16, {	Bennington (1st) ..	Stark* .....	Baum .....	2,000	1,200
	(Second battle)	Warner* .....	Breyman .....		
Sept. 11,	Brandywine .....	Washington ..	Gen. Howe* ..	11,000	18,000
Sept. 19,	Bemis Heights .....	Gates* .....	Burgoyne .....	2,500	3,000
Sept. 20,	Paoli .....	Wayne .....	Grey* .....	1,500	8,000
Oct. 4,	Germanton .....	Washington ..	Gen. Howe* ..	11,000	15,000
Oct. 6, {	Fort Clinton .....	Jas. Clinton {	Sir H. Clinton*	600	3,000
	Fort Montgomery ..	Gov. Clinton }			
Oct. 7,	Saratoga .....	Gates* .....	Burgoyne .....	8,000	4,500
Oct. 22, {	Fort Mercer .....	Col. Greene* ..	Donop .....	450	2,000
	Fort Mifflin .....	Col. Smith* ..	Gen. Howe .....	400	Mixed.
Nov. 16,	Fort Mifflin .....	Major Thayer.	Gen. Howe* ..	400	Mixed.
1778.					
June 28,	Monmouth .....	Washington* ..	Clinton .....	12,000	11,000
July 3,	Wyoming .....	Col. Z. Butler.	John Butler* ..	400	1,100
Aug. 29,	Rhode Island .....	Sullivan* .....	Pigot .....	5,000	5,000
Dec. 29,	Savannah .....	Robert Howe.	Campbell* .....	900	2,000
1779.					
Jan. 9,	Sunbury .....	Lane .....	Prevost* .....	200	2,000
Feb. 14,	Kettle Creek .....	Pickens* .....	Boyd .....	300	700
March 3,	Brier Creek .....	Ashe .....	Prevost* .....	1,200	1,800
June 20,	Stono Ferry .....	Lincoln .....	Maitland* .....	800	1,200
July 15,	Stony Point .....	Wayne* .....	Johnson .....	1,200	600
Aug. 13,	Penobscot .....	Lovell .....	McLean* .....	900	3,000
July 19,	Paulus Hook .....	Major Lee* .....	Sutherland .....	350	250
Aug. 29,	Chemung .....	Sullivan* .....	Brant .....	4,000	1,500
Sept. 23,	Flamboro' Head .....	Paul Jones* ..	Pearson .....	squad'n	2 vessels
Oct. 9,	Savannah .....	Lincoln .....	Prevost* .....	4,500	2,900
1780.					
April 14,	Monk's Corner .....	Huger .....	Tarleton* .....	300	600
May 12,	Charleston .....	Lincoln .....	Clinton* .....	8,700	9,000
May 29,	Waxhaw .....	Buford .....	Tarleton* .....	400	700
June 23,	Springfield .....	Greene* .....	Knyphansen ..	3,000	5,000
July 30,	Rocky Mount .....	Sumter .....	Turnbull* .....	600	500
Aug. 6,	Hanging Rock .....	Sumter* .....	Brown .....	600	500
Aug. 16,	Sanders Creek .....	Gates .....	Cornwallis* ..	3,000	2,200
Aug. 18,	Fishing Creek .....	Sumter .....	Tarleton* .....	700	350
Oct. 7,	King's Mountain ..	Campbell* .....	Ferguson .....	900	1,100
Nov. 12,	Fishdam Ford .....	Sumter* .....	Wemyss .....	500	450
Nov. 20,	Blackstocks .....	Sumter* .....	Tarleton .....	500	400
1781.					
Jan. 17,	Cowpens .....	Morgan* .....	Tarleton .....	900	1,100
March 15,	Guilford C. H. ....	Greene .....	Cornwallis* ..	4,400	2,400
April 25,	Hobkirk's Hill .....	Greene .....	Rawdon* .....	1,200	900
June 18,	Ninety-Six .....	Greene .....	Cruger* .....	1,000	550
Sept. 6,	Fort Griswold .....	Ledyard .....	Eyre* .....	150	800
Sept. 8,	Entaw Springs† .....	Greene .....	Stewart .....	2,000	2,800
Oct. 19,	Yorktown .....	Washington* ..	Cornwallis .....	16,000	7,500



REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. Give an account of the two mutinies among the troops in 1781..	174
2. Give an account of Arnold's expedition against Virginia.....	175
3. What plan was arranged for his capture?.....	175
4. Why did it not succeed?.....	175
5. Who succeeded Gates in the Southern command?.....	175
6. Relate the events which led to the battle of the Cowpens..	175, 176
7. Give an account of the battle, with its results.....	176, 177
8. Of Cornwallis's pursuit of Morgan and Greene.....	177, 178
9. Of the battle of Guilford Court House, with its result.....	178
10. What course did Greene pursue after the battle? .....	178, 179
11. What events led to the battle of Hobkirk's Hill?.....	179
12. Give an account of the battle, with its result. ....	179, 180
13. What advantages rapidly attended the American arms?.....	180
14. What were Greene's operations against the post of Ninety-six? ..	180
15. Relate the case of Colonel Isaac Hayne .....	180, 181
16. What battle took place on the 8th of September, 1781?.....	181
17. Give an account of it, with its results ..	181, 182
18. Where, in Virginia, did Cornwallis take post?..	182
19. What deception was practiced upon Clinton?.....	182
20. What method did he adopt to recall Washington?..	182, 183
21. What plan of action against New London did Arnold adopt?..	183
22. How did Arnold carry out his part of the plan? .....	183, 184
23. Give an account of the attack upon Fort Griswold.....	183, 184
24. How and by whom were the British at Yorktown invested?..	184, 185
25. What naval action took place off the capes of Virginia? .....	185
26. Give an account of the siege of Yorktown, with its results... ..	185
27. What was the consequence of Burgoyne's surrender?.....	186
28. When and where was a definitive treaty of peace signed?..	186
29. What was secured to the United States by the treaty? .....	186
30. In what condition was the national treasury at that time?....	186
31. What sources for supplying the treasury were cut off?....	186, 187
32. What discontents followed, and how were they checked? ....	187
33. When and where did Washington resign his commission? ...	187
34. What can you say of the ceremony on the occasion?.....	187, 188
35. What led to the insurrection known as Shays's Rebellion? ..	188, 189
36. Give an account of that insurrection....	189
37. What opinion existed about the Articles of Confederation?..	189
38. What convention was accordingly held, and with what result?..	189
39. What further history of the Constitution can you give?... ..	189, 190

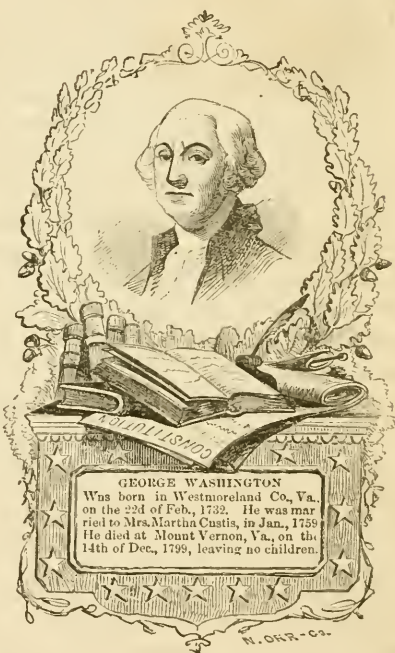
## SECTION V.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, IN  
1789, TO THE CLOSE OF JEFFERSON'S, IN 1809.

### WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. THE first election for President of the United States resulted in the choice of George Washington, he receiving the whole number of electoral votes. At the same time John Adams of Massachusetts was elected Vice-president. New York was then the capital of the United States, and in that city Washington appeared before the first constitutional Congress, and was inaugurated on the 30th of April, 1789.

II. Congress having created three executive departments,—of state, treasury, and war,—the heads of which



WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the first President of the United States? 2. Who was the first Vice-president? 3. When was Washington inaugurated? 4. Where did his inauguration take place? 5. What political relation did New York hold to the Union at that time?

were to constitute the President's cabinet, Washington appointed Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, Secretary of State, Alexander Hamilton, of New York, Secretary of the Treasury,

and Henry Knox,\* of Massachusetts, Secretary of War. The condition of the treasury was the first thing to be considered, and Hamilton, the secretary of that department, was directed to report a system of revenue. The task imposed upon him was difficult, but it was performed with ability; and, upon his recommendation, the public debts incurred during the



GENERAL KNOX.

war were assumed by the general government.

III. In 1790, a law was passed, establishing the seat of government at Philadelphia for ten years, and afterward locating it somewhere on the Potomac; and, in the following year, the Bank of the United States was incorporated. For many years, both New York and New Hampshire† had laid claim to the territory of Vermont, called, originally, the *New Hampshire Grants*. New York having finally yielded her

\* Henry Knox was born in Boston, in 1750. During the Revolution he commanded the artillery, and was in the battles of Trenton, Princeton, Brandywine, Germantown, Monmouth, and Yorktown. He was a member of the court-martial for the trial of André. His death occurred at Thomaston, Maine, in 1806.

† New Hampshire had laid claim to the territory, and between the years 1760 and 1765, her governor made grants of more than a hundred townships in it, whence it acquired the name of *New Hampshire Grants*. The claim of New York was based upon the grants made to the Duke of York by Charles II.

II. QUESTIONS.—6. What departments did Congress create? 7. Whom did Washington appoint at the head of the respective departments? 8. What was the first thing for the consideration of Congress? 9. What was Hamilton directed to do? 10. How was the task performed? 11. What was done upon his recommendation?

III. 12. What was done by Congress in relation to the seat of government? 13. What in relation to a national bank? 14. When was Vermont admitted into the Union? 15. Why had not the admission taken place at an earlier day? 16. By what name was Vermont originally called? 17. When was Kentucky admitted? 18. What is said of the previous history of Kentucky? 19. When was Tennessee admitted? 20. What is said of the previous history of Tennessee?

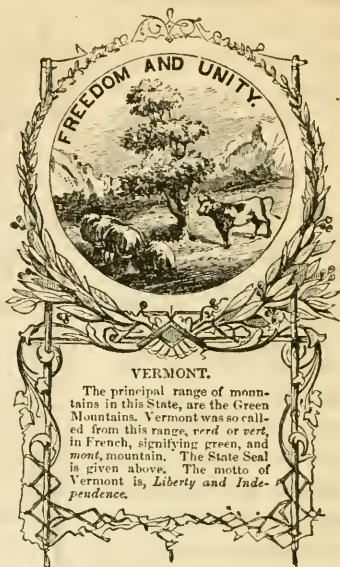


claim for \$30,000, Vermont became the fourteenth State of the Union, in 1791. Kentucky, which had been previously claimed by Virginia, was admitted in the following year; and Tennessee, originally a part of North Carolina, was admitted in 1796.

IV. For a number of years after the Revolution, the British continued to hold certain forts on the northwestern frontier, contrary to the requirements of the treaty of 1783, by which they were called upon

to relinquish them to the Americans. This fact, as well as the imprudent language used by the officers of the forts, and by British traders in that region, led the Indians to believe that the people of America would be deprived of their national existence, and be again subjected to Great Britain.

V. This belief made them overbearing and hostile; and, in 1790, they commenced war upon the settlements. Washington at first used pacific means; but, these failing, an expedition, under General Harmar, was sent against the hostile tribes. Harmar destroyed several of their villages, and large crops of corn; and then dividing his army into two bodies, the better, as he thought, for pursuit, reckoned upon a speedy conquest. In this he was doomed to sad disappointment. He encountered




---

IV. QUESTIONS.—21. What treaty violations were the British guilty of? 22. What belief did the Indians contract regarding the American Government? 23. How was this belief caused? 24. When had a treaty been made by the English?



the savages at two different times, once, on the 17th of October, and again, on the 22d, in the northeastern part of Indiana, and was both times defeated, with severe loss.

VI. A second expedition was then sent, commanded by General St. Clair; but he was not more successful than Harmar. While encamped in the western part of Ohio, in 1791, he was completely surprised, and defeated with the loss of about six hundred men.

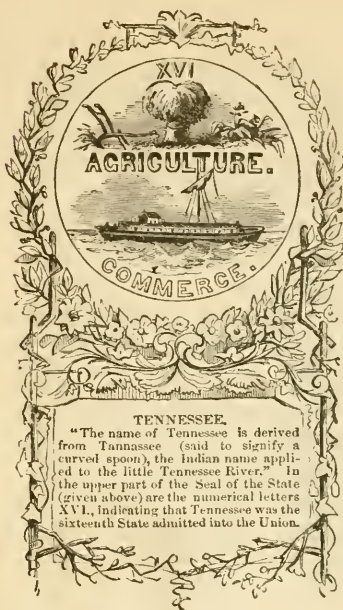
VII. A third expedition was then planned, and the command given to General Wayne, the "Mad Anthony" of the Revolution. Wayne marched against the Indians, defeated them at the battle of the Maumee, in 1794, and laid waste their coun-



V. \* QUESTIONS.—25. What did the belief of the Indians lead to? 26. How did Washington at first act towards the Indians? 27. What expedition did he then send? 28. What did Harmar accomplish? 29. Give the further account of the expedition. 30. What town is situated near where Harmar's two battles were fought? *Ans.*—Fort Wayne. 31. How is Fort Wayne situated? *Ans.*—At the confluence of the St. Joseph's and St. Mary's Rivers. 32. What river do the St. Joseph's and St. Mary's form? (See map, p. 193.)

VI. 33. Give an account of the second expedition sent against the Indians. 34. Where did St. Clair's defeat take place? 35. What town is situated near the place? (See map, p. 193.)

VII. 36. What was then planned against the Indians? 37. Give an account of the expedition. 38. Into what body of water does the Maumee flow? (See map, p. 193.) 39. What was the consequence of Wayne's victory and vigorous measures? 40. What elections took place at the expiration of the first presidential term?



try. His success, and subsequent vigorous measures, so humbled the savages that, in 1795, they consented to a treaty, by which a large tract of country was ceded to the United States. This treaty was made at Fort Greenville, in the western part of Ohio, where the town of Greenville now stands. Washington, whose first term of office expired on the 4th of March, 1793, was unanimously re-elected: Adams was also rechosen to the vice-presidency.

VIII. The great revolution in France, which broke out during Washington's administration, was powerfully felt, in its principles and effects, in this country. When France declared war against England (the revolution there still being in progress), and looked to us for aid, a large part of the people here, remembering the assistance which she had given us in our struggle for independence, would gladly have seen the United States engaged in the trans-atlantic struggle, siding with their former ally.

IX. M. Genet (*zhe-nā'*), minister to the United States from the French republic, presuming upon the favor with which his country was regarded here, began to fit out privateers in our ports, to cruise against the vessels of nations at war

---

VIII. QUESTIONS.—41. What is said of the effect of the French Revolution in this country? 42. How did a large part of the people here feel towards France?

with France. Persisting in this course, in opposition to the remonstrance of the President, Washington requested and obtained his recall. M. Fouchet (*foo-shū'*), his successor, was instructed to assure the President that France disapproved the conduct of his predecessor.

X. The first measure adopted by the United States government for raising a revenue by internal taxation, was the law of 1791, imposing a duty on domestic liquors. This law, from the first, was very unpopular in certain sections of the country, especially in the western part of Pennsylvania, where the opposition to it grew to an open rebellion in 1794, known as the *Whisky Insurrection*. The approach of a large body of militia, sent by Washington to enforce obedience, had the desired effect, and the rebellion was suppressed without bloodshed.

XI. Although the treaty of 1783 established peaceful relations between the American and British governments, yet it was not long before each party accused the other of having violated its stipulations; and so bitter did the spirit of the complaints and recriminations become, that a war seemed inevitable.



JOHN JAY.

XII. To avoid this calamity, the President sent John Jay\* as a special envoy to England, where,

\* John Jay was born in the city of New York, in 1745. In 1789, when Washington became President of the United States, so exalted was his opinion of Jay's honesty and fitness, that he tendered him a choice of the offices in his gift. Jay preferred the bench, and, consequently, was the first Chief-Justice of the United States. His death occurred in 1829, at Bedford, Westchester Co., New York.

IX. QUESTIONS.—43. What did Genet, the French minister, undertake to do? 44. Why did he presume upon such an undertaking? 45. What was the consequence to Genet? 46. Who was his successor? 47. What instructions did Fouchet receive from his government?

X. 48. What was the first government measure for raising a revenue by internal taxation? 49. How was the law regarded by the people? 50. Give an account of the Whisky Insurrection.

XI. 51. What accusations were made by the governments of the United States and Great Britain, each against the other?

in 1794, a treaty was concluded. This was published in the United States, and its provisions at once caused a prodigious storm of excitement and opposition, because they were regarded as being too favorable to the English. In the following year, however, the treaty was ratified, and the threatened conflict happily avoided. At the close of the second term, Washington, having declined a re-election, retired to the solitude of his home at Mount Vernon.

## JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. The second President of the United States was John Adams. His inauguration took place at Philadelphia, on the 4th of March, 1797.\*

II. The neutral position taken by the United States in the war between France and England, gave offence to the former government; and "Jay's Treaty," which had been ratified in 1795, by the American Senate, considerably augmented the unfriendly feeling. This was boldly made manifest by the act of the French government, in authorizing depredations to be committed upon the commerce of the United States, and in ordering our minister, Mr. Pinckney, to leave France.

III. One of the first acts of President Adams was to convene Congress in extra session, to consider these outrages.

---

\* The cabinet selected by Adams consisted of Timothy Pickering, Secretary of State; Oliver Wolcott, Secretary of the Treasury; James McHenry, Secretary of War; and Charles Lee, Attorney General. The navy department was not created until 1798, when Benjamin Stoddard was appointed its head.

---

XII. QUESTIONS.—52. What did Washington do to avoid a war? 53. What was the result of Jay's mission? 54. By what name is the treaty known? *Ans.*—"Jay's Treaty." 55. How was the treaty received in the United States? 56. Why was it so received? 57. What course did Washington pursue at the end of his second presidential term? 58. How is Mount Vernon situated? (See map, p. 24.) \*

JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. I. Who was the second President of the United States? 2. When and where was he inaugurated?

II. 3. What offended the French government? 4. How was the offense augmented? 5. How was the feeling of the French government manifested?

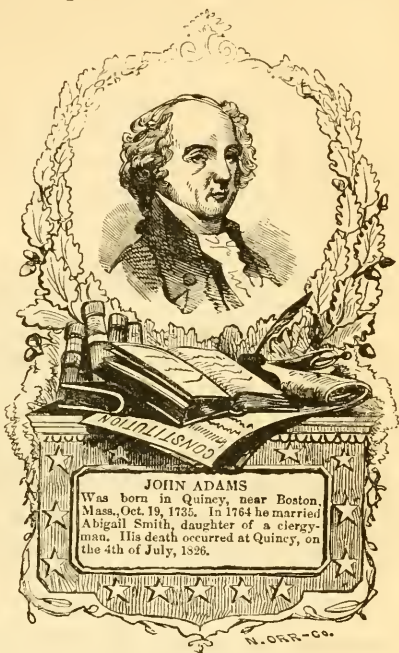
III. 6. What was one of the first acts of President Adams? 7. How did the American government undertake to adjust the difficulties? 8. With what result?

Three envoys were sent to France, with authority to adjust all difficulties, but the French government refused to receive them, and even ordered two of them, whom they looked upon as less friendly than the third, to quit the country.

IV. The insult to the envoys excited great indignation in the United States; and Congress at once adopted measures for putting the country in a state of defense, authorized a standing army and naval armament, and appointed Washington commander-in-chief of the entire land forces.

V. Hostilities at sea soon commenced. In one case, an American schooner was taken, and, in another, a French frigate was captured by the United States frigate *Constellation*. The decided stand taken by the Americans had its effect upon the French government; and overtures of peace were made, which resulted in a treaty, concluded in 1800, with Napoleon Bonaparte, who had become First Consul of France.

VI. But Washington did not live to see the troubles termi-



JOHN ADAMS  
Was born in Quincy, near Boston, Mass., Oct. 19, 1735. In 1764 he married Abigail Smith, daughter of a clergyman. His death occurred at Quincy, on the 4th of July, 1826.

IV. QUESTIONS.—9. What was the consequence of the insult to the envoys?

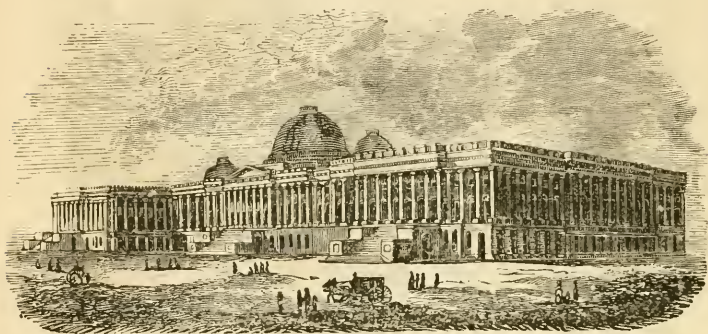
V. 10. What hostile acts actually took place? 11. What was the effect?

VI. 12. What mournful event took place before the troubles with France were terminated? 13. When and where did Washington die? 14. How was his death regarded?



nated: he died at Mount Vernon, on the 14th of December, 1799. His death was regarded as a national bereavement. Congress paid honors to his memory, and the whole people mourned the loss which each person felt that he had individually sustained.

VII. In conformity with the provisions of the law passed in 1790, in relation to the future seat of government, the capital of the United States was removed from Philadelphia to Washington, during the summer of 1800.



THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

VIII. Adams was President for only one term, or four years. Towards the close of it a fierce strife took place between the two great political parties of the day, the Federalists and the Republicans, in relation to the presidential succession. Thomas Jefferson was the successful candidate, defeating Adams, his opponent; and, at the same time, Aaron Burr, of New York, was elected Vice-President.

---

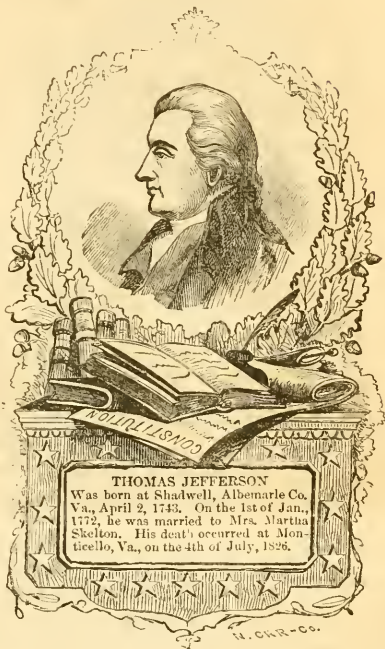
VII. QUESTIONS.—15. When was the capital of the United States removed to Washington? 16. How is Washington situated? (See map, p. 24.)

VIII. 17. For how long was Adams president? 18. What took place towards the close of it? 19. Who were the successful candidates?



## JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. The third President of the United States was Thomas Jefferson. His inauguration took place in the new capitol, at Washington, on the 4th of March, 1801.\* During his administration, the Ohio Territory,† which had previously formed the eastern part of the Northwest Territory, adopted a State government, and, in 1802, was admitted into the Union as the State of Ohio.



II. In 1803, a most important addition was made to the territory of the United States, by the purchase of an immense tract of land, for which fifteen millions of dollars were paid to France. The territory thus acquired included not only the

\* Jefferson's cabinet consisted of James Madison, Secretary of State; Henry Dearborn, Secretary of War; Albert Gallatin, Secretary of the Treasury; Robert Smith, Secretary of the Navy; and Levi Lincoln, Attorney-General.

† After the Revolutionary War, a dispute arose between several of the States respecting the ownership of the Ohio Territory, which was put an end to by the whole being ceded to the United States.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the third President of the United States? 2. When and where did his inauguration take place? 3. When was Ohio admitted into the Union? 4. What is said of Ohio's previous history?



present State of Louisiana, but a vast region extending to the Pacific Ocean. One of the first advantages secured by this purchase was the free navigation of the Mississippi River to the Gulf of Mexico.

III. In the same year, 1803, Commodore Preble (*preb'-el*) was sent to humble the pirates of the Barbary States, who, notwithstanding the tribute which the United States had paid, in imitation of European nations, to secure their commerce in the Mediterranean

from molestation, were becoming more insolent and exacting.

IV. Preble first appeared against Morocco, and, after exacting terms of the emperor, proceeded eastward. Before he had time to reach Tripoli, the frigate *Philadelphia*, one of the vessels of his fleet, which had preceded him, while reconnoitering in the harbor of Tripoli, struck on a rock, and was captured by the Tripolitans, who consigned her crew to slavery.

V. As the captured frigate added to the defenses of the place, and would undoubtedly be sent out to cruise, it was deemed important to recapture or destroy her. The latter

II. QUESTIONS.—5. How was the State of Louisiana acquired by the United States? 6. What advantage accrued from the purchase?

III. 7. What expedition was sent across the Atlantic in that year? 8. What had the Barbary pirates done?

IV. 9. What was the first thing accomplished by Preble? 10. Give an account of the loss of the *Philadelphia*.

being considered the more practicable, Lieutenant Decatur,\* with a few brave companions, entered the harbor on the night of the 15th of February, 1804, boarded the Philadelphia, killed or drove into the sea every one of the Tripolitan crew, and, after setting the vessel on fire, escaped without losing a man.



COMMODORE DECATUR.

VI. About a year later, Mr. Eaton, an agent of the United States, concerted an expedition with Hamet, the exiled though rightful heir to the throne of Tripoli, against the reigning sovereign. He left Egypt, accompanied by Hamet, with a force of about five hundred men, four-fifths of whom were Arabs: the other fifth was composed of adventurers, principally Greeks, and only nine Americans.

VII. He accomplished a remarkable march of several hundred miles across a desert country, and captured Derne, a Tripolitan city, after a fierce struggle. He held the place for several weeks, despite the exertions of an opposing army, and finally routed the enemy in a general engagement, in which more than three thousand men took part. In the midst of his successes, a treaty of peace was concluded between the reigning bashaw and Mr. Lear, the American Consul-General at Algiers.

---

\* Stephen Decatur, Jr., was born in Maryland, in 1779. The affair between the Chesapeake and Shannon, in 1807, in the opinion of Decatur was disgraceful to the Americans, and he did not hesitate to animadvert freely upon the conduct of Commodore Barron, who commanded the Chesapeake on that occasion. The consequence was a duel with Barron, at Bladensburg, Md., as late as 1820, in which Decatur was killed, and Barron was so severely wounded that he was not expected to live, and he only recovered after months of great suffering.

---

V. QUESTIONS.—11. What was deemed important with regard to the captured frigate? 12. Why? 13. What, consequently, was determined upon? 14. Give an account of the exploit.

VI. 15. What expedition was concerted against the reigning sovereign of Tripoli? 16. From what place did the expedition start? 17. Of whom was it composed?

VII. 18. What is said of the march? 19. What city did Eaton capture? 20. Give an account of his subsequent successes.



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

VIII. In July, 1804, the unfortunate duel between Alexander Hamilton\* and Aaron Burr† occurred: the latter, at the time, was Vice-President of the United States. This sad affair, which resulted in the death of Hamilton, grew out of a political quarrel between the two men. By it Burr's political influence was completely destroyed; and when Jefferson was re-elected President for a second term, George Clinton, of New York, was chosen Burr's

successor as Vice-President.

IX. After his retirement from the vice-presidency, Burr made a journey to the Southwest, and there his conduct subjected him to strange suspicion. He made considerable progress in the organization of an expedition which, it was alleged, was designed for the invasion of Mexico. His ultimate purpose, it was further alleged, was to establish an empire which should embrace one or more of the Southwestern States of the Union.

X. By order of the President of the United States he was arrested, taken to Richmond, Virginia, and there tried on a

\* Hamilton was born in the Island of Nevis, West Indies, in 1757. At the age of thirteen he was sent to New York to be educated. He was one of the first to take up arms at the beginning of the Revolution, and as captain of an artillery company, performed a creditable part in the battle of Long Island. By his activity and intelligence he attracted the attention of Washington, and, after the battles of Trenton and Princeton, in which he took part, he accepted an invitation from the commander-in-chief to take a place in his staff as aide-de-camp. He afterwards participated in the battles of Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth.

† Burr was born at Newark, New Jersey, in 1756. In 1775 he was engaged in the expedition against Canada, and accompanied Arnold upon his toilsome march through the wilderness. He was in the battles of Quebec and Monmouth. His death occurred at Staten Island, N. Y., in 1836.

VIII. QUESTIONS.—21. What sad affair, in which two public men were the principal actors, took place during Jefferson's administration? 22. When did it take place? 23. At what place? *Ans.*—At Hoboken, New Jersey, opposite the city of New York. 24. What position was Burr holding at the time? 25. What was the cause of the duel? 26. What was the result of it? 27. What was the consequence to Burr?

IX. 28. In what project was Burr subsequently engaged?

X. 29. What order did President Jefferson issue with regard to Burr? 30. What is said of the trial and its result?

charge of treason. The trial was a protracted one; but, under a ruling of the court, which did not involve the merits of the charge, he was acquitted.

XI. The wars in Europe, growing out of the French revolution, continued during Jefferson's administration. That between England and France, though it at first proved profitable to the American shipping interests engaged in the carrying trade between the ports of the two hostile nations, resulted in the adoption of measures injurious to our commerce.



AARON BURR.

XII. To annoy and cripple her adversary, England declared the whole northern coast of France in a state of blockade. Napoleon retaliated by the "Berlin Decree," in which he pronounced the British islands in a state of blockade. But the crowning grievance was the "right of search," asserted by Great Britain, under which claim American vessels were boarded, and all sailors of English birth found on board, were impressed as subjects of the king.

XIII. An event occurred in June, 1807, which brought things towards an issue. The American frigate *Chesapeake*, when off the capes of Virginia, was attacked by the British frigate *Leopard*. The *Chesapeake*, being unprepared for action, struck her colors, after having three men killed and eighteen wounded. Four of her crew, who were claimed by the commander of the *Leopard* as British deserters, were then

XI. QUESTIONS.—31. How did the war between England and France affect American interests?

XII. 32. What did England do to annoy and cripple her adversary? 33. How did Napoleon retaliate? 34. What was the crowning grievance of which Americans complained?

XIII. 35. What event brought the relations of growing hostility between England and America towards an issue? 36. When did it occur? 37. What did the outrage provoke President Jefferson to do?



transferred to the *Leopard*. This outrage provoked the President to issue a proclamation interdicting the entrance of British armed vessels into the ports or waters of the United States.

XIV. Although the act of the *Leopard* was disavowed by the English government, no reparation was made; and towards the close of the year the British "Orders in Council," forbidding all trade with France and her allies, were issued. Bonaparte again retaliated by issuing the "Milan Decree," interdicting all trade with England and her colonies.

XV. In consequence of this policy of the two European nations, so destructive to our commerce, Congress laid an embargo upon all American vessels, forbidding them to leave the ports of the United States. As the act of Congress not only failed to obtain an acknowledgment of American rights, but, on account of its ruinous effects upon the shipping interests, was very unpopular among the commercial classes, it was repealed, and the non-intercourse law, prohibiting all commerce with France and Great Britain, was substituted.

XVI. At this point in the history of the country, Jefferson, following the example of Washington, declined a second reelection to the presidency, and terminated his political career. He was succeeded by James Madison, of Virginia.

---

XIV. QUESTIONS.—38. How was the outrage committed by the *Leopard* treated by the British government? 39. What is said of reparation? 40. When were the British "Orders in Council" issued? 41. What were the "Orders in Council?" 42. How did Bonaparte again retaliate?

XV. 43. What action did Congress take in consequence of the trade-interdicting policy of France and England? 44. Why was the embargo act afterward repealed? 45. What law was substituted for it?

XVI. 46. Why was not Jefferson continued in the presidency for more than eight years? 47. By whom was he succeeded?

---

### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. What event took place on the 30th of April, 1789.....	194
2. How was Washington's cabinet constituted?.....	195
3. How were the State debts of the war disposed of?.....	195
4. What controversy had existed between N. Y. and N. H.?...	195



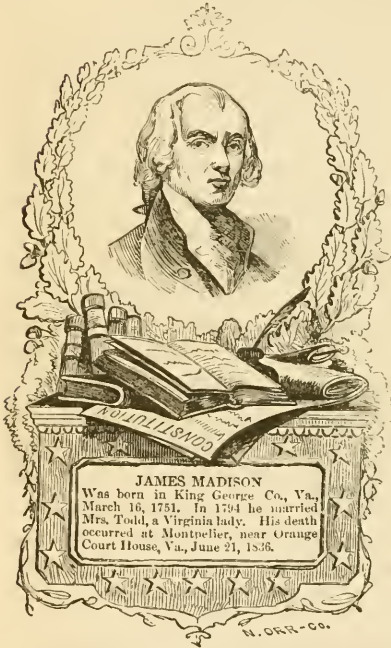
	PAGE
5. How was the controversy finally settled?.....	195, 196
6. When were Kentucky and Tennessee admitted to the Union?.	196
7. In what respect did the British violate the treaty of 1783?...	196
8. To what war did this treaty violation conduce?.....	196
9. Give an account of the expedition conducted by Harmar..	196, 197
10. Give an account of the expedition conducted by St. Clair.....	197
11. Give an account of the expedition conducted by Wayne..	197, 198
12. How did the French Revolution influence the people of the U. S.?	198
13. Give an account of the Whisky Insurrection.....	199
14. Why was John Jay sent as a special envoy to England?.....	199
15. What was the result of Jay's mission?.....	199, 200
16. What event took place on the 4th of March, 1797?.....	200
17. How did the difficulty with France originate?.....	198, 199, 200
18. What were the events of the difficulty?.....	200, 201
19. What sad event took place towards the close of 1799?....	201, 202
20. When did Philadelphia cease to be the capital of the U. S.?...	202
21. What event took place on the 4th of March, 1801?.....	203
22. Which State was added to the Union in 1802?.....	203
23. How was Louisiana acquired by the United States?.....	203, 204
24. On what expedition was Com. Preble sent in 1803?.....	204
25. What can you state of the loss of the frigate Philadelphia?...	204
26. Give an account of her recapture and destruction.....	204, 205
27. Give an account of Hamet's expedition and successes.....	205
28. When did the duel between Hamilton and Burr take place?...	206
29. What was the result of it?.....	206
30. How did the result affect Burr's political influence? .....	206
31. In what expedition was Burr afterward engaged?.....	206
32. How was the expedition brought to an end?.....	206, 207
33. How did the European wars affect American commerce?..	207
34. What decrees were issued by England and France?.....	207
35. Of what grievance did the United States especially complain?	207
36. Relate the affair between the Chesapeake and Leopard....	207, 208
37. Did the English government approve the Leopard's attack?...	208
38. Was any reparation made for the injury done by the Leopard?	208
39. What "orders" and "decrees" were afterwards issued? .....	208
40. What can you say of the embargo laid upon U. S. vessels?...	208
41. Why was the act repealed, and what substitute was passed?.	208
42. What did Jefferson decide upon towards the close of his second presidential term?.....	208
43. Whose example did he follow in this respect? .....	208
44. Did he afterward participate in political matters?.....	208

## SECTION VI.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION; FROM MARCH 4TH, 1809, TO MARCH 4TH, 1817.—THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. THE fourth President of the United States was James Madison. His inauguration took place at Washington, on the 4th of March, 1809, at a crisis in the affairs of the nation which required of his administration the utmost caution, prudence, and resolution.\* The United States were on the verge of war with Great Britain. Napoleon revoked his hostile "Decrees" in 1810, but the British "Orders in Council" continued in active force.



\* Madison's cabinet consisted of Robert Smith, Secretary of State; William Eustis, Secretary of War; Paul Hamilton, Secretary of the Navy; Albert Gallatin, Secretary of the Treasury; and Caesar A. Rodney, Attorney-General.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the fourth President of the United States? 2. When did his inauguration take place? 3. What was peculiarly required of Madison's administration? 4. Why? 5. What concession did Napoleon make? 6. What is said of the British "Orders in Council?"

II. In May, 1811, an affair occurred which tended to widen the breach which already existed between Great Britain and the United States, though, in this case, the British were the greater sufferers. The British sloop-of-war *Little Belt*, Captain Bingham, when off the coast of Virginia, fired into the American frigate *President*, Commodore Rodgers, but found her fire returned with such heavy broadsides, that, in a few minutes, thirty-two of her crew were killed or wounded.

III. About the year 1804, the Indians on the western frontiers, incited by British emissaries and influenced by the appeals of Tecumseh,\* one of their boldest and most active warriors, began to form a confederacy against the people of the United States. A brother of Tecumseh, known as the "Prophet," who by his predictions and promises had acquired great influence over the tribes along the Wabash, was a leading agent in the business of bringing about an alliance.

IV. General Harrison, then governor of the Indian territory, marched towards the western frontier and approached Tippecanoe, the town of the Prophet, situated at the junction of the Tippecanoe and Wabash Rivers, in the present State of Indiana. The Prophet, in the absence of Tecumseh, at once proposed a conference, to take place the next day, and requested the Americans to encamp for the night at a place which he designated. Harrison, suspecting treachery, ordered his troops to sleep on their arms. This proved a fortunate precaution, for, early on the following morning, November 7th, 1811, the Indians made a furious attack upon the American camp; but, after a desperate and bloody contest of

---

\* Tecumseh, or, as the name is sometimes written, Tecumtha, was a chief of the Shawnee Indians. He was born on the banks of the Scioto River, in Ohio, about 1770. "The Prophet's" name was Elkswatawa.

---

II. QUESTIONS.—7. Give an account of the naval affair which took place in May, 1811. 8. What did the affair tend to?

III. 9. What took place among the Indians about the year 1804? 10. Who was Tecumseh's principal co-operator in bringing about the alliance?

IV. 11. Where was the battle of Tippecanoe fought? 12. What town is situated not far from the battle-ground? (See map, p. 192.) 13. When was the battle fought? 14. Give an account of it.

two hours, they were repulsed. This battle ruined the plans which Tecumseh had formed, and his next attempt against the Americans was in the alliance which he formed with the English, in 1812.

#### EVENTS OF 1812.



V. The United States government had endeavored to induce the British government to abrogate its "Orders in Council," and negotiate terms for suspending the impressment of American seamen, but in vain. That government absolutely refused, and nothing remained but war.

VI. Accordingly, in June, 1812, the President of the United States, in conformity with an act of Congress, issued a proclamation declaring war against Great Britain; and preparations were at once

made for raising a large army. General Dearborn, of Massachusetts, an officer who had served with credit in the Revolu-

\* La Salle, a celebrated French navigator, was born in Ronen, about 1635. His death occurred in 1687. He made four visits to America. In his first, while endeavoring to find a passage by water to China, he explored Lake Ontario. In his third, he descended the Mississippi. The fourth was made for the purpose of settling Louisiana. A fleet, containing more than two hundred colonists, sailed from France, but instead of landing near the mouth of the Mississippi, by mistake they proceeded to Texas. After La Salle had passed two years in Texas, some portion of the time in the vain attempt to reach the Mississippi, his nephew was murdered by one of his few remaining followers, and he was shot by another.

V. QUESTIONS.—15. How had the United States endeavored to avert the war?

VI. 16. When was war declared? 17. Who was placed at the head of the army? 18. Before the commencement of hostilities, what revocation on the part of England took place? 19. But what was still insisted upon?

tion, being appointed commander-in-chief. Before hostilities actually commenced, the British government had revoked its "Orders in Council," but the "right of impressment" was still insisted upon.

VII. At the time of the declaration of war, General Hull, the governor of Michigan (*mish'-e-gun*) Territory, was marching with two thousand men from Ohio to Detroit, his purpose being to accomplish the reduction of the hostile Indians of the Northwest. In anticipation of the war with England, he had been invested with discretionary power to invade Canada.

VIII. Learning, while on the march, that war had been declared, he crossed the Detroit River, with the avowed intention of going against Fort Malden (*maul'-den*); but, instead of at once marching upon the place, he encamped at Sandwich, eighteen miles distant, and thus gave the enemy an opportunity to prepare for defense.

IX. In the mean time Fort Mackinaw, an American post situated on an island at the outlet of Lake Michigan, was surprised by a force of British and Indians, and captured before the garrison had even heard of the declaration of war. This loss was a severe one, as the fort was the key to that section of the country, and the grand dépôt of the fur companies there.

X. Hull, while at Sandwich, sent a detachment to convoy a party who were approaching his camp with supplies. Van Horn, the commander, neglecting to exercise sufficient caution, was led into an ambush near Brownstown, August 5, by six

VII. QUESTIONS.—20. On what expedition was General Hull engaged? 21. With what discretionary power was he invested?

VIII. 22. What information did Hull receive while on this march? 23. What river did he cross? 24. What was his avowed intention? 25. Where is Fort Malden? (See map, p. 214.) 26. Is Sandwich north or south of Fort Malden? (See same map.) 27. What advantage did Hull's halt at Sandwich give to the British?

IX. 28. Give an account of the loss of Fort Mackinaw. 29. Where is Fort Mackinaw situated? 30. In what direction from Detroit is Fort Mackinaw? (See map, p. 192.)

X. 31. Give an account of the defeat of Van Horn.



hundred British and Indians, and utterly defeated.

XI. After waiting nearly a month at Sandwich, Hull recrossed the river and took post at Detroit, to the great vexation and disappointment of his troops. Three days after the defeat of Van Horn, a second detachment, under Colonel Miller, was sent to convoy the supply

party. As Miller approached Brownstown, on the evening of the 9th, he came upon the British and Indians, who were protected by a breastwork of logs and branches of trees, and, after a sharp contest, completely routed them.

XII. The withdrawal of Hull across the Detroit emboldened General Brock, the British commander, who began to erect a battery opposite the American post. Not being molested, he became still bolder, and, on the 16th of August, crossed the river with seven hundred regulars and six hundred Indians, and demanded an immediate surrender of Detroit.

XIII. The Americans were strongly posted, and confident of victory in the conflict which seemed to be before them; and yet, to the great indignation of his troops, Hull ordered them to withdraw to the fort, and a white flag, in token of submission, to be lifted above the works. By this act of sur-

XI. QUESTIONS.—32. What retrograde movement did Hull make? 33. Give an account of the victory gained by Miller.

XII. 34. Give an account of Brock's operations against Detroit.

XIII. 35. What is said of the ability and disposition of the Americans to defend themselves at Detroit? 36. What made them indignant? 37. What did the British acquire by the surrender?



render, not only Detroit, but the whole Territory of Michigan, passed into the hands of the enemy.

XIV. Hull's conduct, two years after, underwent examination by a court-martial, and though he was acquitted of treason, the court pronounced him guilty of cowardice, and he was sentenced to be shot; but, in consideration of his age and revolutionary services, the sentence was remitted by President Madison. Hull's\* conduct was severely criticised at the time, as well as in after years; but a series of letters which he published in 1824, and a volume which appeared at a still later period, together form a complete vindication of his surrender, as regards either the charge of treason or cowardice.

XV. During the year 1812 a second invasion of Canada was made in another quarter. On the morning of the 13th of October, Colonel Solomon Van Rensselaer (*van-ren'-se-ler*), with a detachment of only two hundred and twenty-five men, crossed the Niagara River to storm the heights of Queenstown. The commander having been severely wounded at the landing,



\* William Hull was born in Connecticut, in 1753. He was in the battles of White Plains, Trenton, Princeton, Bemis Heights, Saratoga, Monmouth, and Stony Point; and in all of them fought with courage. His death occurred in Massachusetts, in 1825.

XIV. QUESTIONS.—38. To what was Hull's conduct afterward subjected? 39. What sentence was pronounced upon him? 40. Why was not the sentence executed? 41. How was Hull's conduct subsequently regarded?

XV. 42. At what place did the second invasion of Canada occur? 43. Describe the events that took place on the morning of the 13th of October. 44. What town, in New York, is opposite Queenstown? (See map, p. 215.)

1812. his troops, led by Captains Ogilvie and Wool, gallantly moved forward, carried a British battery, and gained the heights.

XVI. The enemy, re-enforced by several hundred men under Brock, attempted to regain the battery, but were repulsed, and Brock was killed. While this struggle was going on at the west side of the Niagara, a large body of militia was collected at Lewiston, on the east side. General Stephen Van Rensselaer, a cousin of Solomon, and the superior in command of the troops in that quarter, endeavored to send reinforcements across the river, but only about a thousand men could be induced to go: the rest professed to consider it wrong to invade the enemy's country.

XVII. On the afternoon of the same day, 13th, the Americans on the heights were attacked by fresh troops, under General Sheaffe (*shefe*), from Fort George, and nearly all were killed or taken prisoners. General Van Rensselaer, disgusted with the conduct of the militia, soon retired from the service, when the command on the Niagara frontier devolved on General Smyth. Smyth accomplished nothing: after projecting two invasions of Canada, neither of which was carried out, he also resigned.

XVIII. The triumphs of the Americans on the ocean, during 1812, were as decided as their reverses on the land. The first of importance was the capture of the sloop *Alert* by the frigate *Essex*, Captain Porter. The second, of greater importance, was achieved by Captain Isaac Hull,\* nephew of General Hull, on the 19th of August, off the coast of Massa-

---

\* Captain Isaac Hull, afterward Commodore, was born in Derby, Conn., in 1775. During the war with the Barbary States, from 1803 to 1805, he served with distinction in the squadrons of Commodores Preble and Barron, and co-operated with Eaton in the capture of Derne. He died in Philadelphia, in 1843.

XVI. QUESTIONS.—45. Give an account of the repulse and loss sustained by the British. 46. Where was the main body of the American militia at the time stationed? 47. Why did they not cross over to Queenstown?

XVII. 48. Give a further account of the battle of Queenstown. 49. Who succeeded General Van Rensselaer in the command of the forces on the Niagara frontier? 50. Why had Van Rensselaer resigned? 51. What can you state of Smyth and his operations?

chusetts. Hull commanded the American frigate *Constitution*, and Dacres the British frigate *Guerriere* (*gāre-e-āre'*). The action between the two frigates lasted about forty minutes, and resulted in the capture of the *Guerriere*. The captured vessel had been so much injured it was found impossible to bring her into port, and she was consequently burned by the victors.

XIX. In October, the American sloop-of-war *Wasp*, Captain Jones, while cruising off the coast of North Carolina, fell in with the British brig *Frolic*, Captain Whinyates, and after a conflict of three-quarters of an hour, boarded her. A melancholy scene of destruction was presented. The decks were covered with the dead and the wounded. Not twenty of the *Frolic's* crew escaped unhurt. Scarcely had the enemy's vessel been taken possession of, when an English ship of seventy-four guns hove in sight, and captured both vessels.

XX. A second naval victory by the Americans occurred in this same month, October. The frigate *United States*, Commodore Decatur, encountered the British frigate *Macedonia* (*mas-se-do'-ne-a*) west of the Canary (*ka-nā'-re*) Islands, and, after an action of nearly two hours, compelled her to surrender. She was taken to New York.

XXI. A little more than a month later, the *Constitution*, then commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, gained her second victory, in the capture of the frigate *Java* (*jah'-va*). The ac-



COMMODORE BAINBRIDGE.

XVIII. QUESTIONS.—52. What comparison is made between the land reverses and the ocean triumphs? 53. Which was the first important naval victory? 54. The second? 55. When did the action between the *Constitution* and the *Guerriere* take place? 56. Give an account of it.

XIX. 57. Give an account of the action between the *Wasp* and the *Frolic*. 58. What event deprived Captain Jones of the fruits of his victory?

XX. 59. Give an account of the action between the *United States* and *Macedonian*.

1812. tion took place off the coast of Brazil, on the 29th of December, and lasted nearly two hours. Bainbridge,\* finding the captured frigate so much riddled that it was impossible to get her into an American port, destroyed her by fire, and the Constitution then put into San Salvador, where the prisoners were landed on parole.

XXII. In the belief that the navy of the United States would be entirely destroyed or captured by that of England, it had been decided, at the beginning of the war, to lay up our ships to save them. But, happily, that policy was soon departed from. American privateers, too, scoured the ocean, and British commerce suffered in every direction. During the year 1812, more than three hundred vessels, with not less than three thousand prisoners, beside valuable cargoes, were taken by the Americans.

#### EVENTS OF 1813.

I. For the campaign of 1813 three armies were raised. That of the West, near the head of Lake Erie, was commanded by General Harrison; that of the Centre, between Lakes Erie and Ontario, by General Dearborn; and that of the North, near Lake Champlain, by General Hampton.

II. The leading object of the army of the West was to recover Michigan and avenge the disgrace of Hull. A division of the army, composed mostly of Kentuckians, commanded by

---

\* William Bainbridge was born in Princeton, N. J., in 1774. In 1806 he was in command of the frigate Philadelphia when that vessel struck on a rock and was captured in the harbor of Tripoli. He and his crew, of more than three hundred persons, were taken prisoners by the Tripolitans and held in captivity nineteen months. He died in Philadelphia, in 1853.

---

XXI. QUESTIONS.—60. Give an account of the action between the Constitution and the Java. 61. What did Bainbridge do with his prize and prisoners?

XXII. 62. What policy had been decided upon at the beginning of the war, with reference to American ships? 63. Why was that decision made? 64. What is stated of the successes of the Americans on the ocean, during the year 1812?

EVENTS OF 1813.—I. 1. What armies were raised for the campaign of 1813?

II. 2. What was the object of the army of the West? 3. What command did Winchester have? 4. What place did he reach in January? 5. How did his men at first employ themselves there? 6. What did he learn while there? 7. What request did he receive?

General Winchester, reached the rapids of the Maumee on the 10th of January. Here, while constructing huts for the reception of supplies, Winchester learned that Frenchtown, then a small settlement, nearly forty miles distant, was threatened with an attack from a body of British and Indians. He, at the same time, received an urgent request from the inhabitants to come to their assistance.

III. Accordingly, he sent a detachment of five hundred men, under Colonel Lewis, in advance, while he prepared to follow. Lewis, ascertaining that the British and Indians were already in possession of the town, hurried forward, and, on the 18th of January, made a charge upon the enemy, driving them into the woods. On the following day, Winchester arrived. The Americans were, on the 22d, attacked by a force of fifteen hundred British and Indians, commanded by General Proctor. They made a brave defense, but Winchester, who had been made prisoner during the engagement, agreed upon a capitulation, and the Americans surrendered on condition that they should be protected. But Proctor failed to observe the condition: his Indian allies murdered the wounded prisoners who were unable to travel, and then set fire to the houses.

IV. Upon hearing of Winchester's defeat, Harrison took a position on the Maumee River, where he constructed a fortified camp, which, in honor of the governor of Ohio, he called Fort Meigs (*megz*). On the 1st of May, Proctor advanced against this fort, and, with a force of not less than a thousand British and Indians, commenced a siege. Four days after,

---

III. QUESTIONS.—8. How did he act in response to the request? 9. What did Lewis accomplish? 10. What battle took place on the following day? *Ans.*—The battle of Frenchtown. 11. Give an account of it. 12. Give an account of the massacre that followed. 13. How is Frenchtown situated? (See map, p. 214.)

IV. 14. Where did Harrison make a stand, upon hearing of Winchester's misfortune? 15. Describe the Maumee. (See map, p. 192.) 16. Is Fort Meigs above or below Toledo? (See map, p. 214.) 17. How was Fort Meigs threatened? 18. Give an account of the event that took place on the 5th of May. 19. When and why did Proctor abandon the siege?

1813. General Clay\* arrived, with twelve hundred Kentuckians, and successfully attacked the besiegers, compelling them to disperse; but, unfortunately, a large body of his troops, while pursuing the enemy, was surrounded and captured. On the ninth day of the month, Proctor, deserted by his allies, and despairing of success, withdrew, and returned to Fort Malden.

V. In a little more than two months after, Proctor and Tecumseh again threatened Fort Meigs; but, finding it well garrisoned, terminated a brief siege by a sullen withdrawal. Proctor's next movement was against Fort Stephenson, at Lower Sandusky, now Fremont, situated on the Sandusky River. The place was garrisoned by only one hundred and fifty men, under the command of Major Croghan,† a young man not yet twenty-two years old, and they had but one gun, a six-pounder. Proctor's force consisted of more than twelve hundred men, half regulars and half Indians.

VI. A cannonade was directed against the fort until a breach was effected, when the enemy, on the 2d of August, attempted to carry the place by assault; but they were met by a volley of musketry and a discharge from the six-pounder with such terrible effect, that, panic-struck, they fled in confusion, leaving one hundred and fifty of their number killed or wounded.

VII. The naval supremacy on Lake Erie (*ē'-re*) and Lake Ontario (*on-tā'-re-o*), became an object of much importance to the belligerent governments, and, as early as the beginning of October, 1812, preparations were in progress, on both sides, to

---

\* Green Clay was born in Virginia, in 1757. After his success in driving the British and Indians from the siege of Fort Meigs, he was left in command there, and defended the fort when it was a second time threatened. He died in 1826.

† George Croghan was born in Kentucky, in 1791. He was in the battles of Tippecanoe and Fort Meigs (May 5), and served with Taylor in Mexico. His death occurred at New Orleans, in 1849.

---

V. QUESTIONS.—20. What can you state of the second demonstration against Fort Meigs? 21. To what object did Proctor next direct his attention? 22. In what direction from Fort Meigs was Fort Stephenson? (See map, p. 214.) 23. How was Fort Stephenson prepared to resist Proctor?

VI. 24. Give an account of Proctor's efforts against the fort.



secure it. To Commodore Chauncey\* was given the general command of the American naval forces on the two lakes, while to Commodore Perry† was assigned the immediate command on Lake Erie. On the part of the enemy, Sir James Yeo held the general command, and Commodore Barclay the special one on Lake Erie.

VIII. By the first of August, 1813, two squadrons had been fitted out on Lake Erie. One of these, the American, consisted of nine vessels, carrying fifty-four guns; and the other, the British, consisted of six vessels, carrying sixty-three guns. They met, on the 10th of September, near the western extremity of the lake, when a hard-fought battle of four hours' duration took place, resulting in a complete and brilliant victory to the Americans, every vessel of the enemy having surrendered. In dispatching information of his victory to General Harrison, Perry wrote: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

IX. The consequences of the victory were highly important. The Americans completely established their naval supremacy on the lake, Detroit was evacuated by the British, the Indians of Michigan were



COMMODORE PERRY.

\* Isaac Chauncey was born in Connecticut, in 1772. When a young man, he was engaged in the merchant service, and during a voyage, a mortal sickness prevailed, leaving him on board as the only survivor. He navigated the vessel into port, for which he was rewarded by being appointed to the command of her. He served in the war against Tripoli, and during the war of 1812, he rendered important service on Lake Ontario, by his active co-operation with the land forces. His death occurred at Washington, in 1840.

† Oliver Hazard Perry was born at Newport, R. I., in 1785. He died at Port Spain, Island of Trinidad, of yellow fever, contracted while he was engaged on government service, up the Orinoco River, in South America.

VII. QUESTIONS.—25. What is said of the naval supremacy on Lakes Erie and Ontario? 26. What command was given to Chauncey? 27. To Perry? 28. To Yeo? 29. To Barclay?

VIII. 30. How large a fleet did Perry command? 31. Barclay? 32. When did the battle of Lake Erie take place? 33. What produced enthusiasm among the Americans? *Ans.*—A flag floating from the mainmast of Perry's ship, upon which were the dying words of Lawrence: "Don't give up the ship." 34. Give an account of the battle. 35. How did Perry inform Harrison of his victory?

1813. intimidated, and the way to success for the army at Fort Meigs was clearly opened. Harrison saw his opportunity, and was not slow to profit by it.

X. Having been re-enforced by a large body of Kentuckians, under Governor Shelby, Harrison resolved to seek Proctor and give him battle. While, in conformity with his orders, a regiment of horse, one thousand strong, proceeded by land, crossing the river at Detroit, the rest of the army crossed Lake Erie in Perry's fleet, and landed near Fort Malden. But Proctor, on hearing of Barclay's defeat and Harrison's approach, was seized with alarm; and when the fort was reached, it was found deserted, and Proctor and Tecumseh were in full retreat towards the Thames (*temz*) River. The Americans followed in eager pursuit, and, on the 5th of October, overtook them near the Moravian village on the Thames, about eighty miles from Detroit.

XI. The enemy, seeing that a battle could not be avoided, took a favorable position on a narrow strip of land between the river and an extensive swamp. The Americans charged, breaking the line of the British, and soon compelling them to surrender; but the contest with the Indians was more obstinate. At length, Tecumseh fell, mortally wounded, and the savage warriors dispersed in all directions. Proctor was gone: he had fled at the first onset, leaving his carriage, private papers, and even his sword, behind him.

XII. Besides six hundred prisoners taken by Harrison, several cannon and a large quantity of stores and ammunition fell into his hands. By the victory thus achieved, the territory which Hull had surrendered was entirely recovered, the

IX. QUESTIONS.—36. What were the important consequences of the battle?

X. 37. What accession arrived for Harrison's army? 38. What did Harrison resolve upon? 39. How did the two parts of his army proceed? 40. Why did not Proctor remain at Fort Malden? 41. How is Fort Malden situated? (See map, p. 214.) 42. What is said of the flight of Proctor and the pursuit? 43. When was the battle of the Thames fought?

XI. 44. Give an account of it. 45. Where was the battle fought? (See map, p. 214.)

destruction of Tecumseh's Indian Confederacy was completed, and the war on the western frontier was terminated.

XIII. In the spring of 1813, several months before the successes of Perry and Harrison had been achieved, the Southern Indians were visited by Tecumseh and urged to take up arms against the whites. The Creeks yielded, and began to commit depredations upon the settlements of the Americans. In the latter part of August, fifteen hundred of their warriors surprised Fort Mims,\* on the Alabama River, and massacred nearly three hundred men, women, and children.

XIV. This sanguinary and unprovoked attack aroused the whole South, and a large force, under Generals Jackson and Coffee, marched into the country of the Creeks to avenge the deed of horror. Several battles were fought in quick succession, at Talladega, Autossee, Emucfa, and other places, in every one of which the Indians were defeated.

XV At length a thousand warriors, with their women and children, made a final stand at Tohopeka, or,



\* The name of this place was also written *Fort Mimms*. The fort was situated on the east side of the Alabama, about ten miles above its junction with the Tombigbee.

XII. QUESTIONS.—16. What were the fruits of Harrison's victory?

XIII. 47. What had Tecumseh been about in the spring of 1813? 48. What followed? 49. What is said of the massacre at Fort Mims? 50. In what direction from Mobile was Fort Mims? (See map, p. 223.)

XIV. 51. What effect did the massacre have upon the people of the South? 52. What can you say of the battles that were fought? 53. Give the location of the three places named. (See map, p. 223.) 54. What two rivers uniting form the Alabama River? *Ans.*—The Coosa and the Tallapoosa.

as the whites called it, the Horse-Shoe Bend of the 1813. Tallapoosa River, where they had established a camp, skillfully fortified. Here, on the 27th of March, 1814, they were attacked by a force of three thousand men, under Jackson. The doomed Creeks, being hemmed in on all sides by their assailants, fought with the energy of despair, and not till almost six hundred of their number were slain did the battle cease: their defeat was complete.

XVI. While these events were transpiring at the South, others of equal moment were taking place at the North. Towards the latter part of April, 1813, General Dearborn, with seventeen hundred men, embarked on board Chauncey's fleet, at Sackett's Harbor, with the design of going against York, the capital of Upper Canada.

XVII. On the 27th, the fleet anchored off that town, and on the same day the troops effected a landing in the face of a severe fire from British and Indians, commanded by General Sheaffe. Still they pressed forward, led by General Pike,\*



GENERAL PIKE.

and were carrying every thing before them, when the enemy's magazine exploded, mortally wounding Pike, and making sad havoc among his men. After a moment's pause, the Americans continued to advance, and were soon in possession of the town.

XVIII. The capture of York having been attained, Dearborn

\* Zebulon Montgomery Pike was born in New Jersey, in 1779. He made two important expeditions; one in 1805 and 6, to explore the sources of the Mississippi, and the other about a year after, to examine the region west of the Red River.

XV. QUESTIONS.—55. Where did the battle of Tohopeka take place? (See map, p. 223.) 56. Give an account of the battle.

XVI. 57. What movement was made on Lake Ontario towards the latter part of April?

XVII. 58. When did the battle of York take place? 59. Give an account of it. 60. By what name is York now known? *Ans.*—Toronto. 61. How is Toronto situated? (See map, p. 215.)

returned to Sackett's Harbor, whence, after being largely reinforced, he sailed to attack Fort George, situated on the Niagara River, near its mouth. The British made but a short defense, and then retreated to Burlington Heights, at the western extremity of Lake Ontario, pursued by a large force, under Generals Chandler and Winder. On the night of the 6th of June, nine days after the capture of the fort, the British suddenly fell upon the camp of the pursuing Americans, and, though they were repulsed, in the darkness and confusion both Chandler and Winder were made prisoners.

XIX. The British in Canada, on being informed that Chauncey's fleet, carrying a large body of troops, had sailed from Sackett's Harbor, sent a thousand men across the lake in Yeo's fleet, to attack the place. Sir George Prevost, the British commander, effected a landing on the 24th of May. The militia fired a couple of volleys upon the invaders, and then, panic-struck, broke and fled. A small body of regulars acted with more firmness. While the advance of the British was held in check by a galling fire from the regulars, General Brown,\* the American commander, rallied the militia, and led them by a circuitous route, as if he designed to seize the enemy's boats and cut off their retreat. The stratagem succeeded completely, and the British made a rush for their boats, leaving their dead and wounded behind.



GENERAL BROWN.

XX. Dearborn remained at Fort Erie more than a fortnight

\* Jacob Brown was born in Bucks County, Pennsylvania, in 1775. He died in Washington, in 1828.

XVIII. QUESTIONS.—62. Against what place did Dearborn next proceed? 63. Was Fort George above or below Queenstown? (See map, p. 215.) 64. What success did Dearborn meet with against Fort George? 65. What took place afterward?

XIX. 66. How is Sackett's Harbor situated? (See map, p. 62.) 67. What induced the British to attack the place? 68. When did they attack it? 69. Give an account of the battle.



1813. after the misfortune to Chandler and Winder, without doing any thing. Not so the British. They busied themselves in taking possession of the mountain passes there, thus narrowing the limits of Dearborn's position, and cutting off his communications with the country. At length, a detachment of six hundred men was sent to break up a post which the British had established seventeen miles from the fort. After proceeding fifteen miles, the Americans were suddenly surrounded by a body of British and Indians, and compelled to surrender themselves prisoners of war. Dearborn,\* not long after, resigned his command, and was succeeded by General Wilkinson.

XXI. General Armstrong, upon whom President Madison had recently conferred the appointment of Secretary of War, devised a plan for the invasion of Canada, by which the two armies—that of the Centre, under Wilkinson, and that of the North, under Hampton—were to form a junction on the St. Lawrence, and proceed against Montreal.

XXII. In passing down the St. Lawrence, the fleet of boats employed in conveying Wilkinson's army, was harassed by the British whenever an opportunity occurred. Near Williamsburg, a strong detachment was landed to make an advance, disperse a body of the enemy, and cover the descent of the fleet. At Chrysler's (*kris'-lers*) Field, a severe battle ensued on the 11th of November, in which the Americans, though losing about one-fifth of their entire force engaged, maintained their position.

\* Henry Dearborn was born in New Hampshire, in 1751. He was in the battle of Bunker Hill, was with Arnold in the expedition through the wilderness of Maine, and participated in the battle of Quebec, where he was taken prisoner. Being exchanged, he served under Gates in the Northern campaign, and did good service at the battle of Monmouth, in Sullivan's expedition against the Indians, and in the successful operations before Yorktown. He died in Massachusetts, in 1829.

XX. QUESTIONS.—70. What is said of Dearborn's inactivity at Fort Erie? 71. What, of the activity of the British? 72. Give an account of the mishap to the American detachment. 73. Who succeeded Dearborn in the command?

XXI. 74. What office did Armstrong hold? 75. What plan of action did he devise?

XXII. 76. What annoyance did Wilkinson experience while sailing down the St. Lawrence? 77. What did he do when near Williamsburg? 78. How is Williamsburg situated? (See map, p. 62.) 79. When did a battle take place near Williamsburg? 80. By what name is that battle known? 81. Give an account of it.



XXIII. Hampton,\* in the mean time, had entered Canada, encountered the British near St. John's, and been defeated. In consequence of a hostile feeling which existed between him and Wilkinson, he declined to co-operate with that commander, but made his way back to Lake Champlain, and left his army in winter quarters at Plattsburg, under the command of General Izard. Wilkinson went into winter quarters at French Mills, about nine miles east of St. Regis.

XXIV. During 1813, there were many severe battles on the ocean; and though the American seamen were not so uniformly successful as in the preceding year, their gallantry continued to be the theme of admiration. On the 24th of February, the sloop-of-war *Hornet*, Captain Lawrence, when off the mouth of the Demerara River, fell in with a British brig, which, after an action of only fifteen minutes, struck her colors and raised a signal of distress. She proved to be the brig *Peacock*, Captain Peake, and was so riddled that she sunk in a few minutes after the surrender, carrying down with her nine of her own crew and three of the *Hornet's*.

XXV. On his return to the United States, Lawrence was promoted to the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*, then lying in Boston harbor. In the forenoon of June 1st, the British frigate *Shannon*, Captain Broke, appeared off the harbor for the express purpose of meeting the *Chesapeake*. Though the American frigate had imperfect equipments and an ill-assorted crew, while the British ship had a select crew and

\* Wade Hampton was born in South Carolina, in 1755. He took an active part in the Revolutionary War, serving under Marion and Sumter. After he retired from the army, in 1811, he engaged in agricultural pursuits, and was considered the wealthiest farmer in the United States, owning extensive plantations, and about three thousand slaves. He died in South Carolina, in 1835.

XXIII. QUESTIONS.—82. What misfortune had befallen Hampton in the mean time? 83. How is St. John's situated? (See map, p. 231.) 84. What did he neglect to do? 85. Why? 86. Where and in whose charge did he leave his command? 87. How is Plattsburg situated? (See map, p. 149.) 88. Where did Wilkinson go into winter quarters? 89. Where is St. Regis? *Ans.*—On the south side of the St. Lawrence.

XXIV. 90. What is said of the naval successes of the Americans during the year 1813? 91. Give an account of the action between the *Hornet* and *Pellenn*.

XXV. 92. How was Lawrence rewarded for his victory over the *Peacock*? 93. What movement was made by the *Shannon*? 94. In what condition were the two ships for action?

was in the best possible condition, Lawrence still felt impelled to go out and engage her.



LAWRENCE.

XXVI. At about six o'clock in the afternoon the two vessels met, and a terrific contest of fifteen minutes ensued. Lawrence\* was mortally wounded in the early part of the action, and his last injunction as he was borne below was, "Don't give up the ship." The Chesapeake, after having all her superior officers either killed or wounded, was boarded by the enemy and her flag hauled down.

XXVII. The second disaster to the American navy that occurred during the year was the loss of the brig Argus, Lieutenant Allen,† on the 14th of August. After Allen had conveyed the American minister, Mr. Crawford, to France, he proceeded to cruise in the waters about England, and was successful in taking a large number of prizes and capturing property to the amount of two millions of dollars. While in the English Channel he fell in with the sloop-of-war Pelican, and in the action which ensued, and which resulted in the capture of the Argus, he was mortally wounded. He was taken to Plymouth, England, where he died on the day after the action.

XXVIII. Fortune next favored the Americans. On the 5th of September, Lieutenant Burrows, while in command of

\* James Lawrence was born in Burlington, N. J., in 1781. He was one of Decatur's party that boarded and destroyed the frigate Philadelphia in the harbor of Tripoli, in 1804.

† William Henry Allen was born in Rhode Island, in 1784. He was the first Lieutenant of the frigate United States when that vessel captured the Macedonian.

XXVI. QUESTIONS.—95. Give an account of the action.

XXVII. 96. What vessel did Lieutenant Allen command in the summer of 1813? 97. What duty did he perform before making a cruise? 98. What were his successes? 99. When did the Argus and Pelican meet? 100. Give an account of the action between them.

XXVIII. 101. Where did a naval action take place on the 5th of September? 102. Give an account of it. 103. What honors were paid to the dead commanders? 104. Where is Portland? (See map of Maine.)

the brig *Enterprise*, fell in with the British brig *Boxer*, Captain Blyth, off the coast of Maine. An action of forty minutes ensued, resulting in the capture of the *Boxer*. Both commanders were killed in the engagement, and their bodies were buried side by side at Portland, with the honors of war.

XXIX. In 1812, Captain Porter,\* commanding the American frigate *Essex*, in a short cruise captured a number of British merchantmen, and, after an action of only eight minutes, took the sloop-of-war *Alert*. In 1812 and '13, Porter, in command of the same vessel, made a long and remarkable cruise of more than a year, in the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. Besides capturing a great many ships, and making prisoners of more than four hundred men, he did immense service to the American shipping by the protection which he afforded.



COMMODORE PORTER.

XXX. At length, on the 28th of March, 1814, he was attacked in the harbor of Valparaiso (*val-pa-ri'-so*), by two British war vessels that had been expressly dispatched in quest of him, and, after one of the most desperate conflicts of the war, was forced to surrender.

---

\* David Porter was born in Boston, Mass., in 1780. When the frigate *Philadelphia* was captured by the Tripolitans, in 1803, Porter was made captive and held nineteen months. In 1824 he commanded an expedition against the pirates of the West Indies. He subsequently entered the service of Mexico, as commander-in-chief of her naval forces; but, in 1829, returned to the United States. At the time of his death, which occurred at Constantinople, in 1843, he was resident minister of the United States there.

---

XXIX. QUESTIONS.—105. What were Porter's successes in 1812? 106. What, in 1813?

XXX. 107. Where was he attacked by two British war vessels? 108. Where is Valparaiso? (See map of South America.) 109. Give an account of the action.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. What event took place on the 4th of March, 1809?.....	210
2. Give an account of the naval action which occurred in 1811?.....	211
3. What hostile movement among the Indians was begun in 1804?.....	211
4. Give an account of the battle of Tippecanoe.....	211, 212
5. What were the causes of the War of 1812?.....	212
6. When did President Madison issue his war proclamation?.....	212
7. On what expedition was Gen. Hull engaged at the time?.....	213
8. What movement against the British did he first make?.....	213
9. What can you say of the loss of a fort further north?.....	213
10. Give an account of the first battle of Brownstown.....	213, 214
11. Give an account of the second battle of Brownstown. ....	214
12. Give an account of Brock's operations and Hull's surrender...	214
13. What further account can you give of Hull himself?.....	215
14. Give an account of the battle of Queenstown. ....	215, 216
15. Of the action between the Constitution and Guerriere....	216, 217
16. Of the action between the Wasp and the Frolic. . . . .	217
17. Of the action between the United States and Macedonia.....	217
18. Of the action between the Constitution and the Java.....	217, 218
19. State the events preliminary to the battle of Frenchtown. ....	218, 219
20. Give an account of that battle, with the massacre. ....	219
21. Under what circumstances was Fort Meigs constructed?.....	219
22. What can you say of Clay's operations and success?.....	219, 220
23. Give an account of the battle of Fort Stephenson.....	220
24. What hostile preparations were made on the northern lakes?.....	220, 221
25. Give an account of the battle of Lake Erie.....	221
26. What effects did the result of the battle have?.....	221, 222
27. State the events preliminary to the battle of the Thames.....	222
28. Give an account of it, with the effects of the victory.....	222, 223
29. State the events preliminary to the battle of Tohopeka.....	223
30. Give an account of the battle of Tohopeka.....	223, 224
31. Of the expedition from Sackett's Harbor against York.....	224
32. Of the expedition from the same place against Fort George....	225
33. Of the British expedition against Sackett's Harbor.....	225
34. Of the operations of Wilkinson and Hampton.....	226, 227
35. Of the action between the Hornet and Peacock.....	227
36. Of the action between the Chesapeake and Shannon.....	227, 228
37. Of Lieutenant Allen's operations and sad fate.....	228
38. Of the action between the Enterprise and the Boxer.....	228, 229
39. Of Porter's operations and final defeat.....	229

## EVENTS OF 1814, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR.

I. IN the early part of 1813, a proposition from the Russian Emperor was received, in which he offered to mediate between the belligerent powers, England and the United States. It was accepted on the part of the American government, and President Madison appointed three commissioners to proceed to St. Petersburg to negotiate a treaty. It was not, however, accepted on the part of the other belligerents; but towards the close of the year the American government was informed that Great Britain was ready to make a treaty of peace. Accordingly, two persons were added to the commission previously appointed, and, in January, 1814, they sailed for Europe, where they joined their three associates. The belligerent governments however continued to prosecute war measures, and even with more vigor than before.



PART OF THE SOREL RIVER.

II. Towards the close of February, 1814, Wilkinson broke up his winter quarters at French Mills and removed to Plattsburg, and Brown marched to Sackett's Harbor, taking two thousand men, mainly for the protection of the fleet there.

III. Late in the following month, Wilkinson\* advanced as far as Rouse's Point, where he determined to erect a battery, but the British penetrating his

\* James Wilkinson was born in Maryland, in 1757. He served in Canada under Arnold, in 1776, and on the staff of Gates, in 1777. During Washington's administration he was engaged on the Northwestern frontier against the Indians, and commanded one of the divisions of Wayne's army in the battle of the Maumee. He subsequently was governor of the Louisiana territory, and an active agent in exposing the plans of Burr, in 1806. He died in Mexico, in 1825.

EVENTS OF 1814, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR.—QUESTIONS.—I. 1. When did a proposition come from the Emperor of Russia? 2. What was it? 3. What action was taken in relation thereto by the American government? 4. What by the British government? 5. Of what was the American government afterward informed? 6. In accordance therewith, what action was taken by the American government?

II. 7. What movement did Wilkinson make toward the close of the winter? 8. To what place did General Brown march?

design, concentrated a force of two thousand men at 1814. La Colle Mill, three miles below the point. An attack which he made upon the British, on the last day of the month, was unsuccessful, and he returned to Plattsburg. In consequence of this defeat, he was tried by a court-martial, and, though acquitted, was superseded in the command by General Izard.

IV. Brown did not remain long at Sackett's Harbor; but, having been appointed to the command of the army destined to act on the Niagara frontier against Canada, he made haste to carry out the views of the Secretary of War for another invasion of the enemy's territory. Preparations being completed, on the 3d of July a large force, the advance of Brown's command, crossed the Niagara River, and took Fort Erie without a struggle. Pushing forward next day along the bank of the river, the American army reached a plain on the south side of the Chippewa River, in view of the enemy's camp on the other side of that stream.

V. General Brown determined to attack the British in their position; and, apparently, the British commander intended a similar operation against the Americans, for the morning of the 5th beheld both armies deploying into the plain. The battle that ensued was severe, resulting in the defeat of the British, who made good their retreat across the Chippewa. This brilliant victory was owing to the admirable discipline of the American army, no less than to the skill and bravery of General Scott.

VI. The British commander, General Riall, made no at-

III. QUESTIONS.—9. What movement did Wilkinson make from Plattsburg? 10. How did the British anticipate him? 11. How are Rouse's Point and La Colle situated? (See map, p. 124.) 12. When did the battle of La Colle Mill take place? 13. Give an account of it. 14. What was the consequence to Wilkinson?

IV. 15. To what command had Brown been assigned while at Sackett's Harbor? 16. Give an account of the taking of Fort Erie. 17. How was Fort Erie situated? (See map, p. 233.) 18. What movement was made on the 4th of July?

V. 19. What is said of the intention of the two commanders? 20. Give an account of the battle of Chippewa. 21. How is Chippewa situated? (See map, p. 233.) 22. To what was the success of the Americans at Chippewa owing?



tempt to dispute the passage of the Chippewa, but, hurriedly burning the bridge after he had effected a crossing, continued his retreat to Burlington Heights, near the head of Lake Ontario. The American army rested but two days after the battle, then advanced across the Chippewa and took post at Queenstown, intending to make a further advance towards Fort George, which the British then held. Not having the necessary cannon with which to attack the fort, they fell back, after a few days, to the Chippewa.



VII. Here, on the 25th of July, Brown was informed that General Drummond, who had reached Fort George with re-enforcements, had crossed the Niagara to attack Fort Schlosser (*shlos'-ser*), where supplies for the American army were deposited. Believing that a demonstration against the forts at the mouth of the river would induce the British to return, Brown ordered Scott to advance with twelve hundred men.

VIII. A march of but two miles had been accomplished when, about sunset, Scott unexpectedly came upon a British force of two thousand men advantageously posted at Lundy's Lane, in the immediate vicinity of Niagara Falls. The most obstinate bat-

VI. QUESTIONS.—23. What was Riall's movement after the battle? 24. What Brown's?

VII. 25. Where was Brown on the 25th of July? 26. What information did he get there? 27. Where is Fort Schlosser situated? 28. What order did Brown give to Scott? 29. What was his object?

VIII. 30. Where is Lundy's Lane? (See map, p. 233.) 31. Give an account of the battle fought there while Scott was in command.

1814. tle of the war ensued. Scott took the offensive; and though the enemy outnumbered him, he sustained the unequal contest for an hour, when General Brown, with the main body of the army, arrived upon the field. In the mean time, the British force had been largely augmented by re-enforcements under Drummond, who took the command.

IX. It became evident to Brown that a battery, which the British had placed on a commanding height, and which swept all parts of the field, must be captured or the Americans be defeated. Upon asking Colonel Miller\* if he could take it, the fearless soldier replied, "I'll try, sir." At the head of his regiment, Miller steadily advanced up the height, while, at every step, his ranks were thinned by the enemy's fire; but his troops pressed forward, and, in one determined charge, gained possession of the battery, and drove the enemy in confusion down the hill.

X. Three times did the British rally and attempt to regain their lost battery, but without success: they were repulsed with fearful loss at every assault. Finally, at midnight, they withdrew, leaving the Americans in quiet possession of the field, each party losing about eight hundred men in killed and wounded. Brown and Scott having both been severely wounded, the command devolved upon General Ripley, who retired with his forces to Fort Erie, where General Gaines arrived soon afterward, and, being a senior officer, assumed the command.

XI. In a few days, General Drummond advanced against Fort Erie, and with a force of five thousand men, commenced a siege. On the 15th of August, eleven days after, the enemy

---

\* James Miller was born in New Hampshire, in 1776. He took part in the capture of Fort Erie and in the battle of Chippewa. He died in New Hampshire, in 1851.

---

IX. QUESTIONS.—32. What, during the battle, became evident to Brown? 33. What question was asked and reply given? 34. Give an account of Miller's heroic achievement.

X. 35. Give a further account of the battle. 36. What officers were wounded in the battle? 37. Who, after the battle, took the command? 38. Whither did Ripley retire? 39. By whom was he succeeded?

undertook to carry the fort by assault, but were repulsed with the loss of more than a thousand men. Though the wounds which Brown had received at Lundy's Lane were yet unhealed, he repaired to the fort and took the command.

XII. Having ascertained that formidable preparations were being made for pressing the siege, he resolved not to await their completion. Accordingly, at noon, on the 17th of September, a sortie was made with nearly the whole of his disposable force. In the space of an hour, the advanced works of the besiegers, which had cost nearly fifty days' labor to erect, were destroyed, and about seven hundred of their number either fell or were taken prisoners. Drummond, upon being informed soon afterward that Izard was approaching with re-enforcements, retired to Fort George. The Americans, in November, abandoned and destroyed Fort Erie, and, crossing the Niagara, went into winter quarters.

XIII. Izard, when he started from Plattsburg on his march for the relief of Brown, left General Macomb\* (*ma-koom'*) in command of only fifteen hundred men; but, as the enemy began to threaten Plattsburg, this force was augmented by volunteers from Vermont. Sir George Prevost, at the head of fourteen thousand men, a large number of whom were veterans who had served under Wellington, in Europe, marched against Macomb; and the British fleet on Lake Champlain, commanded by Commodore Downie (*down'-e*), sailed to attack the American fleet, under Commodore MacDonough (*mac-don'-o*).

---

\* Alexander Macomb was born in Michigan, in 1782. He died at Washington, in 1841.

XI. QUESTIONS.—40. How was Fort Erie threatened by Drummond? 41. What took place on the 15th of August? 42. Who afterward took command at Fort Erie?

XII. 43. When did Brown make a sortie from the fort? 44. What induced him to make it? 45. What was his success? 46. Why did Drummond afterward retire to Fort George? 47. What did the Americans do in November?

XIII. 48. In what state for defense did Izard leave Plattsburg? 49. How was Macomb's force augmented? 50. What southward movement did Prevost make? 51. What movement was made by Downie?

1814. XIV. Macomb withdrew his forces to the south side of the Saranac River, and prepared to dispute any attempt which the enemy might make to cross, while Prevost took a position on the north side, where he erected batteries. For four days the two armies were on the opposite banks of the Saranac, and all attempts of the British to force a passage were successfully resisted.



COMMODORE MACDONOUGH.

XV. On the 11th of September, the battle of Plattsburg and of Lake Champlain took place. The British commenced the one on the land by opening a heavy cannonade upon the American works, while at the same time their fleet bore down and engaged MacDonough's\* vessels, which were at anchor in the bay of Plattsburg. After an action of two hours and

a quarter between the two fleets, flag after flag of the British struck, and the victory of MacDonough was complete.

XVI. The contest on the land continued throughout the day. The British undertook to cross the Saranac, making the attempt in three columns, but without success. After the defeat of Downie, the fire from their batteries slackened, and at nightfall ceased entirely. They then commenced a hasty retreat, leaving behind their sick and wounded, and a large quantity of military stores. Of the army of fourteen thousand men which Prevost led against Macomb, two hundred and fifty were

\* Thomas MacDonough was born in New Castle Co., Delaware, in 1783. He was one of Decatur's party which boarded and destroyed the frigate Philadelphia in the harbor of Tripoli, in 1804. He died at sea, in 1815.

XIV. QUESTIONS.—52. How did Macomb prepare to meet Prevost? 53. Where did Prevost take a position? 54. What is said of his attempts to cross the Saranac? 55. Into what body of water does the Saranac flow? (See map, p. 149.)

XV. 56. Give an account of the battle of Lake Champlain.

XVI. 57. Give an account of the battle of Plattsburg. 58. What losses were sustained by each party?

killed or wounded, and more than two thousand deserted. The loss of the Americans was one hundred and twenty.

XVII. During the greater part of 1814 the whole Atlantic seaboard was locked up by British cruisers, from which descents were often made upon small towns. About the middle of August, a squadron of the enemy arrived in Chesapeake Bay, bringing a large body of troops, commanded by General Ross. This force, it was evident, was intended to strike a heavy blow at some of the important cities.

XVIII. Ross, with five thousand men, landed at Benedict, situated on the Patuxent River, twenty-five miles from its mouth. His first object was the destruction of an American flotilla, commanded by Commodore Barney, which had harassed and injured the lighter vessels of the enemy's fleet, but which was then lying in the Patuxent. As the British approached, Barney, rather than have his boats fall into their hands, burnt them.

XIX. Ross's next object was the capture of Washington; but, instead of making a direct march, he proceeded by the way of Bladensburg, where he met with some opposition from the militia under General Winder, but the only



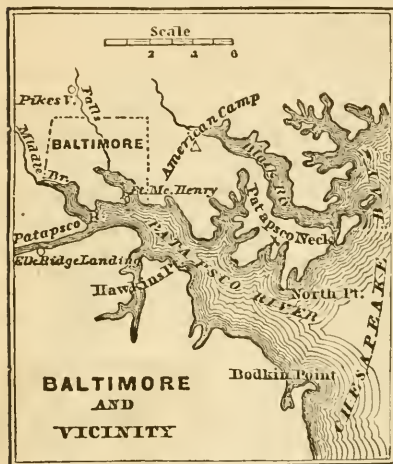
PART OF VIRGINIA AND MARYLAND.

XVII. QUESTIONS.—59. What is said of the operations of British cruisers during the most of 1814? 60. What arrival took place in August? 61. What was the evident intention of the force?

XVIII. 62. Where did Ross land? 63. On which side of the Patuxent is Benedict? (See map, p. 237.) 64. What was Ross's first object? 65. Did he succeed?



1814. check that he received was from a body of seamen and marines, commanded by Barney.\* He reached Washington on the 24th of August, burned the capitol, president's house, and other buildings, and, after effecting this wanton destruction, made a hasty retreat to the shipping, a division of which was still in the Patuxent.



XX. In the mean time, a division of the fleet had ascended the Potomac as far as Alexandria, the people of which, to save their city from bombardment, surrendered their merchandise and shipping to the enemy. The two divisions of the fleet then uniting, it was determined to make an attack on Baltimore.

XXI. On the 12th of September, Ross landed his troops at North Point, fourteen

\* Joshua Barney was born in Baltimore, in 1759. Though he was but a youth at the beginning of the Revolution, he was appointed master's mate in a sloop-of-war, in which vessel he aided in capturing the town of New Providence, on one of the Bahama Islands. He was engaged in several naval enterprises, and was three times made prisoner. His death occurred at Pittsburg, Pa., in 1818.

XIX. QUESTIONS.—66. What was his second object? 67. What route did he take to Washington? 68. On which side of the Potomac is Washington? (See map, p. 237.) 69. In which direction from Bladensburg is Washington? (See same map.) 70. What opposition and check did Ross meet with on his march? 71. When did he reach Washington? 72. What did he effect there? 73. What did he then do?

XX. 74. What had another division of the fleet been doing in the mean time? 75. What did the British then determine upon.

XXI. 76. When did Ross land at North Point. 77. What is the name of the other point at the mouth of the Patapsco? (See map, p. 238.) 78. How far is North Point from Baltimore? 79. What was done by the enemy's vessels on the 12th? 80. How far is Fort McHenry from Baltimore? 81. What befell Ross himself?



miles from Baltimore, while sixteen of the enemy's ships moved up the Patapsco River, to bombard Fort McHenry, commanding the channel, at the distance of about two miles below the city. On his march Ross was met by an advance corps of Americans, and, in a slight skirmish, killed.

XXII. General Brooke, Ross's successor, gave the order to continue the advance, but the progress of the British at one point was disputed, for more than an hour, by a body of militia, commanded by General Stricker. The Americans then fell back in good order, and took a position near the defenses of the city. Brooke resumed the march, but the resolute front which the Americans presented, deterred him from making an attack until he could hear from the fleet.

XXIII. In the mean time, Fort McHenry had been subjected to a heavy bombardment. The firing commenced on the morning of the 13th, and continued till near the following morning, but without making any serious impression. Brooke, therefore, seeing no prospect of success against the city, embarked his troops, and the whole force of the enemy withdrew.

XXIV. During the summer, the authorities of Pensacola, then a Spanish port, allowed the British to take possession of their forts, and fit out an expedition against Fort Bowyer (*bo'-yer*), now Fort Morgan, situated at the entrance to Mobile (*mo-bel'*) Bay.



MOBILE AND VICINITY.

XXII. QUESTIONS.—82. Who succeeded Ross? 83. Give an account of the battle that took place. 84. Why did not Stricker attack the Americans at their position near the defenses of Baltimore?

XXIII. 85. Give an account of the attack upon Fort McHenry. 86. What did Brooke then do?

XXIV. 87. How is Pensacola situated? (See map, p. 223.) 88. Did Pensacola belong to Spain or the United States in 1814? 89. Which of the belligerent powers did the authorities of Pensacola favor during the war? 90. How did that appear? 91. In what direction from Mobile is Fort Morgan? (See map, p. 223.) 92. Give an account of the attack upon Fort Morgan.

1814. fleet, aided by a combined force of Indians and marines; but the enemy were repulsed, losing one of their ships and many men. The other ships effected their escape, returning to Pensacola.

XXV. Florida was then a Spanish province, but it was used by the English, who made Pensacola the rendezvous of their forces, and from that port fitted out expeditions against the United States. The Spaniards made not the least attempt to prevent this abuse of neutral territory; indeed, it is certain they had no disposition to interfere with the operations of the English. Jackson, who, in 1814, was in command at Mobile, placed himself at the head of three thousand men, and marched upon Pensacola. Negotiations failing, he seized the town by force, and compelled the British to leave.

XXVI. Returning to Mobile, he made preparations to meet an anticipated attack upon that place; but learning that the British were about to invade Louisiana for the special purpose of securing possession of New Orleans, he sent the mass of his troops to that city, and reached it himself at the beginning of December. He found the city in no condition for defense, and at once adopted the most energetic measures to oppose the enemy.

XXVII. Towards the middle of December, a British squadron entered Lake Borgne (*born*), the shortest avenue of approach from the Gulf of Mexico to New Orleans, carrying a land force of over twelve thousand men, many of whom were veterans who had served under Wellington. This army was commanded by Sir Edward Pakenham, one of their most distinguished military leaders. On the 14th, Lieutenant Jones, commanding a flotilla of American gunboats, was attacked by

XXV. QUESTIONS.—93. What is said of the use made by the English of Pensacola, and of the disposition of the authorities there towards the United States? 94. State what was done by Jackson.

XXVI. 95. Where did Jackson go after leaving Pensacola? 96. What did he do there? 97. What information did he receive while there? 98. What course did he then pursue?

XXVII. 99. With what force did the British advance against New Orleans? 100. What avenue of approach did they take to that city? 101. Give an account of the action of the 14th of December.

a portion of the British squadron, and, after a sanguinary engagement, was compelled to surrender, thus giving the enemy the control of the route to New Orleans.

XXVIII. The vanguard of the British army landed on the 16th, and marched to a place on the Mississippi, about nine miles from New Orleans, where an encampment was formed on the morning of the 23d. Here the British were attacked by Jackson on the following night. The contest was spirited, and the result advantageous to the Americans, as the enemy's advance was thereby checked, giving Jackson more time to prepare his line of defenses, four miles from the city. On the 28th of December, and again on the first day of the new year, the British attacked the American works, but without success.

XXIX. Pakenham at length determined to make a general assault. Accordingly, on the 8th of January, 1815, the battle of New Orleans, which was the final contest of the war, was fought. The British advanced in the face of a destructive fire from the American batteries: when they were within reach of the muskets and rifles from behind the intrenchments, volley after volley was poured upon them with such terrible effect, that they were thrown into confusion. Pakenham was slain, and his troops fled in dismay, leaving two thousand of their number killed, wounded, and prisoners. The Americans lost only thirteen, seven killed and six wounded.

XXX. A large number of citizens of the United States, belonging to the Federal party,\* had been opposed to the war from its very commencement, and they continued to oppose its prosecution till the close. These persons were mostly resi-

\* The people of the United States were, at that time, divided into two great political parties, calling themselves Democrats and Federalists. The former were in favor of prosecuting the war, while the latter were opposed.

XXVIII. QUESTIONS.—102. Of the landing of the British, their march and encampment. 103. Of the battle on the 23d of December. 104. Of the two following attacks.

XXIX. 105. When did the battle of New Orleans take place? 106. Give an account of it. 107. What losses were sustained by both parties? 108. In what direction from Mobile is New Orleans? (See map, p. 223.)

1814. dents of New England. They regarded the war as unnecessary and impolitic; the losses, too, which they were sustaining in their commerce and fisheries, were not without influence upon them.

XXXI. For the purpose of considering their grievances, and devising means of redress, a convention was held at Hartford, Connecticut, in December, 1814. The friends of President Madison and of the war looked upon this assemblage of delegates, commonly known as the "Hartford Convention," as a treasonable body; but their doings were, to say the least, harmless, their principal act being the adoption of a document which presented a statement of grievances, and recommended several amendments to the Constitution. After three weeks of secret session, the convention adjourned.



HENRY CLAY.\*

XXXII. The joyful tidings of peace at length reached the United States. In February, 1815, an English sloop-of-war arrived from Europe, bearing a treaty of peace which had been agreed upon by British and American commissioners who had assembled at Ghent, a city of Belgium. The document was signed on the 24th of December, fifteen days before the battle of New Orleans. The commissioners

on the part of the United States, who had negotiated it, were

---

\* Henry Clay was born in Hanover Co., Virginia, in 1777. He died at Washington, in 1852, and it was said of him, in a eulogy pronounced by John C. Breckinridge, a political adversary, that, "As a leader in a deliberative body, Mr. Clay had no equal in America."

XXX. QUESTIONS.—109. What is said of the course pursued by certain persons who were opposed to the war? 110. State what is said of their residence, opinions, &c.

XXXI. 111. Give an account of the "Hartford Convention," and its doings.

XXXII. 112. What news reached the United States in February, 1815? 113. At what place did the commissioners meet who negotiated the treaty? 114. Who were the American commissioners? 115. When was the treaty signed at Ghent?

Henry Clay, John Quincy Adams, Jonathan Russell, James A. Bayard, and Albert Gallatin.\*

XXXIII. The two great points of dispute—the encroachments upon American commerce, and the impressment of American seamen—which were the main causes of the war, were left untouched by the treaty. The omission, however, was not important, inasmuch as, by the termination of the European war, all encroachments upon American commerce ceased, and, by the great success of the American navy and privateers, the impressment question was effectually disposed of.

\* Albert Gallatin was born in Geneva, Switzerland, in 1761. In 1780, he arrived in the United States, and at once aided the Americans, with his hands and money, in their military operations in Maine. He was, at one time, a teacher of French in Harvard College, was several times elected to the House of Representatives from Pennsylvania, and he was Secretary of the Treasury under Jefferson and Madison. His death occurred at Astoria, Long Island, N. Y., in 1849.

XXXIII. QUESTIONS.—116. In what respects was the treaty incomplete and unsatisfactory? 117. By what events were these omissions rendered unimportant?

#### PRINCIPAL LAND BATTLES OF THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

\* The asterisk indicates the successful party.

DATES.	BATTLES.	COMMANDERS.		MEN ENGAGED.	
		American.	British.	Amer.	British.
1812.					
Aug. 5,	Brownstown.....	Van Horn ....	Tecumseh* ...	200	600
Aug. 9, {	Magnaga, or 2d of {	Miller*. ....	Tecumseh ....	600	900
Oct. 13, {	Brownstown ...				
1813.	Queenstown .....	Van Rensselaer	Brock*.....	1,200	2,500
Jan. 22,	Frenchtown . . . .	Winchester...	Proctor* ....	800	1,500
April 27,	York.....	Pike* . . . . .	Sheaffe.....	1,700	1,500
May 5,	Fort Meigs . . . .	Clay* . . . . .	Proctor . . . .	1,200	2,000
May 29,	Sackett's Harbor...	Brown* . . . .	Prevost . . . .	1,000	1,000
Aug. 2,	Fort Stephenson...	Croghan*.....	Proctor . . . .	100	1,300
Oct. 5,	Thames . . . . .	Harrison*.....	Proctor . . . .	2,500	2,000
Nov. 11,	Chrysler's Field ...	Boyd . . . . .	Morrison . . . .	1,200	2,000
1814.					
March 30,	La Colle Mill . . . .	Wilkinson . . .	Hancock* ....	4,000	2,000
July 5,	Chippewa . . . . .	Brown* . . . . .	Riall . . . . .	1,900	2,100
July 25,	Lundy's Lane.....	Brown* . . . . .	Drummond . . .	3,500	5,000
Aug. 15,	Fort Erie (assault)..	Gaines* . . . . .	Drummond... ..	2,500	5,000
Aug. 24,	Bladensburg.....	Winder . . . . .	Ross* . . . . .	3,500	5,000
Sept. 11,	Plattsburg.....	Macomb*.....	Prevost . . . . .	3,000	14,000
Sept. 12,	North Point.....	Stricker . . . .	Brooke*.....	2,000	5,000
Sept. 13,	Fort McHenry.....	Armistead*....	Cochrane . . . .	1,000	16 ships.
Sep. 15,	Fort Bowyer.....	Lawrence* . . .	Nicholls.....	120	Mixed
Sept 17,	Fort Erie (sortie) ..	Brown* . . . . .	Drummond.....	2,500	3,500
Dec. 23,	9 miles from N. O..	Jackson.....	Keane.....	2,000	2,500
1815.					
Jan. 8,	New Orleans . . . .	Jackson*.....	Pakenham....	6,000	12,000

## PRINCIPAL NAVAL BATTLES OF THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

\* The asterisk indicates the successful party.

DATES.	WHERE FOUGHT.	VESSELS.	COMMANDERS.
1812.			
Aug. 13,	Off Newfoundland . . . . .	Am. Frig. Essex . . . . .	Porter.*
		Br. Sloop Alert . . . . .	Laugharne.
Aug. 19,	Off Massachusetts . . . . .	Am. Frig. Constitution . . . . .	Hull.*
		Br. Frig. Guerriere . . . . .	Dacres.
Oct. 18,	Off North Carolina . . . . .	Am. Sloop Wasp . . . . .	Jones.*
		Br. Brig Frolic . . . . .	Whinyates.
Oct. 25,	Near Canary Islands . . . . .	Am. Frig. United States . . . . .	Decatur.*
		Br. Frig. Macedonian . . . . .	Carden.
Dec. 29,	Off San Salvador . . . . .	Am. Frig. Constitution . . . . .	Bainbridge.*
		Br. Frig. Java . . . . .	Lambert.
1813.			
Feb. 24,	Off Demarara . . . . .	Am. Sloop Hornet . . . . .	Lawrence.*
		Br. Brig Peacock . . . . .	Peake.
June 1,	Massachusetts Bay . . . . .	Am. Frig. Chesapeake . . . . .	Lawrence.
		Br. Frig. Shannon . . . . .	Broke.*
Aug. 14,	British Channel . . . . .	Am. Brig Argus . . . . .	Allen.
		Br. Sloop Pelican . . . . .	Maples.*
Sept. 5,	Off coast of Maine . . . . .	Am. Brig Enterprise . . . . .	Burrows.*
		Br. Brig Boxer . . . . .	Blyth.
Sept. 10,	Lake Erie . . . . .	Am. 9 ves. 54 guns . . . . .	Perry.*
		Br. 6 ves. 63 guns . . . . .	Barelay.
1814.			
March 23,	Harbor of Valparaiso . . . . .	Am. Frig. Essex . . . . .	Porter.
		Br. Brig Phoebe . . . . .	Hillyar.*
		Br. Sloop Cherub . . . . .	Tucker.
April 29,	Off coast of Florida . . . . .	Am. Sloop Peacock . . . . .	Warrington.*
		Br. Brig Epervier . . . . .	Wales.
June 23,	Near British Channel . . . . .	Am. Sloop Wasp . . . . .	Blakely.*
		Br. Sloop Reindeer . . . . .	Manners.
Sept. 1,	Near Africa . . . . .	Am. Sloop Wasp . . . . .	Blakely.*
		Br. Sloop Avon . . . . .	Arbuthnot.
Sept. 11,	Lake Champlain . . . . .	Am. 14 vessels, 86 guns . . . . .	McDonough.*
		Br. 17 vessels, 95 guns . . . . .	Downie.
Dec. 14,	Lake Borgne . . . . .	Am. 5 gunboats . . . . .	Jones.
		Br. 40 barges . . . . .	Lockyer.*
1815.			
Jan. 15,	Off New Jersey . . . . .	Am. Frig. President . . . . .	Decatur.
		Br. (Squadron) . . . . .	Hayes.*
		Am. Frig. Constitution . . . . .	Stewart.*
Feb. 20,	Off Island of Madeira . . . . .	Br. Ship Cyane . . . . .	Falcon.
		Br. Ship Levant . . . . .	Douglass.
March 23,	Off Brazil . . . . .	Am. Sloop Hornet . . . . .	Biddle.*
		Br. Brig Penguin . . . . .	Dickenson.

## WAR WITH ALGIERS.

XXXIV. During "The War of 1812," the Algerines, believing that the United States were unable to protect their interests in the Mediterranean, resumed their old practice of

XXXIV. QUESTIONS.—118. What is said of the Algerines during "The War of 1812?" 119. Who was sent against them?



piracy, seized several American vessels, and insulted and plundered the consul of the United States. In May, 1815, a naval force, commanded by Decatur, was sent to the Mediterranean.

XXXV. On the 17th of June, Decatur encountered the largest vessel in the Algerine navy, and captured her, after a running fight of twenty-five minutes. Two days after this success he captured another frigate, with more than five hundred men. He then appeared before Algiers, and compelled the Dey to liberate the American prisoners in his hands, and relinquish all future claims to the annual tribute which the United States had paid to Algiers since 1795, for the purpose of securing the American commerce from molestation in the Mediterranean.

XXXVI. Decatur next proceeded to Tunis (*too'-nis*) and Tripoli, and from both powers exacted payment for American vessels which

the English had been allowed to capture in their harbors during the war. They were likewise compelled to make indemnity for other losses which American citizens had sustained at their



XXXV. QUESTIONS.--120. Give the account of Decatur's two successes against the Algerine vessels. 121. What did he further accomplish against Algiers?

XXXVI. 122. To what two places did Decatur next proceed? 123. What did he compel the two powers to do?

hands, and to agree to abstain from further depredations upon the commerce of the United States.

XXXVII. During Madison's administration, two States were added to the Union: Louisiana, in 1812, and Indiana, previously a portion of the Northwest Territory, in 1816. Madison, having served two presidential terms, like Jefferson, followed the example of Washington, and declined a second re-election. He was succeeded by James Monroe, also of Virginia.

XXXVII. QUESTIONS.—124. When were Louisiana and Indiana admitted into the Union? 125. Why was not Madison elected President for a third term? 126. By whom was he succeeded?

### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

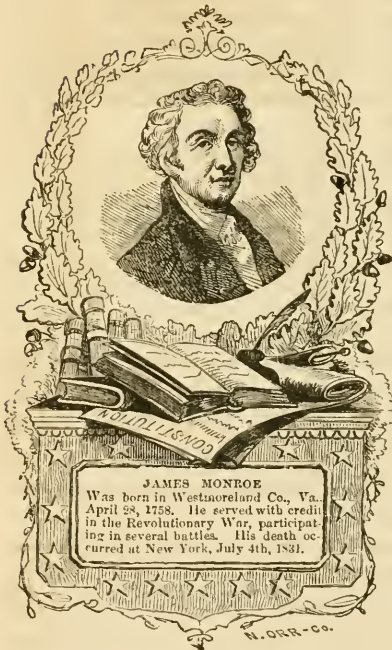
	PAGE
1. What peace proposition was made in 1813? .....	231
2. What further can you say of the proposition?.....	231
3. How came five U. S. commissioners to be chosen?.....	231
4. What movement did Wilkinson make in Feb., 1814?.....	231
5. What movement, at the same time, was made by Brown?....	231 "
6. Give an account of the battle of La Colle Mill.....	231, 232
7. What was the consequence to Wilkinson of his defeat?.....	232
8. What was Brown's object after leaving Sackett's Harbor?....	232
9. When and how did the Americans capture Fort Erie?.....	232
10. What battle was fought July 5, 1814?     Ans. Battle of Chippewa.	
11. What were the preliminary movements of the battle? .....	232
12. Give an account of the battle, with its results.....	232
13. What was Riall's first movement after the battle? .....	232, 233
14. What movements were made by the American army?.....	233
15. What information did Brown receive on the 25th of July?....	233
16. State the preliminaries of the battle of Lundy's Lane.....	233
17. Which battle was the most obstinate of the war?.....	233, 234
18. When did the battle of Lundy's Lane take place?.....	234
19. Who commanded the Americans there before Brown arrived?.	234
20. Who beside Scott distinguished himself in the battle?.....	234
21. State how Miller distinguished himself.....	234
22. What efforts were made by the British to regain the battery?.	234
23. At what time and how did the battle end?.....	234
24. Give an account of Drummond's assault upon Fort Erie....	234, 235

	PAGE
25. Who commanded the Americans on that occasion?.....	234
26. Who took the command again after the battle?.....	235
27. When did Brown make a sortie from Fort Erie?.....	235
28. Why did he make it then instead of at a later day?.....	235
29. Give an account of it, with its result.....	235
30. What movements were afterwards made by both armies?....	235
31. Who commanded at Plattsburg after Izard left?.....	235
32. Who commanded the army that advanced against Plattsburg?	235
33. Of how many men did Prevost's army consist?.....	235
34. Who commanded the American fleet on Lake Champlain? ....	235
35. Who commanded the fleet that sailed against MacDonough?..	235
36. What positions did the two armies occupy before the battle? ..	236
37. Give an account of the action between MacDonough and Downie	236
38. Give an account of the battle between Macomb and Prevost..	236
39. With how many men did Prevost effect his retreat? .....	236, 237
40. What loss did the Americans sustain in the battle?.....	237
41. What did the British cruisers effect during 1814?.....	237
42. What naval accessions did the British have in Aug. of that year?	237
43. How did General Ross commence operations? .....	237
44. Why did Commodore Barney destroy his flotilla?.....	237
45. What was Ross's object after the flotilla was destroyed?.....	237
46. Give an account of what took place at Bladensburg.....	237, 238
47. Give an account of Ross's operations at Washington. ....	238
48. How was Alexandria threatened and finally saved?.....	238
49. What city did the British next determine to attack?.....	238
50. What operations, under Ross, took place on the 12 of Sept.? 238,	239
51. Whom did General Brooke succeed in command?.....	239
52. What operations took place under the command of Brooke?...	239
53. How many of the British ships proceeded against Baltimore?.	239
54. Give an account of the efforts made to reduce the fort.....	239
55. What aid did the people of Pensacola extend to the British?..	239
56. Give an account of the expedition against Mobile.....	239, 240
57. Give an account of Jackson's expedition against Pensacola ...	240
58. Why did Jackson afterwards leave Mobile for New Orleans?..	240
59. How did the British commence operations against New Orleans?	240
60. Give an account of the naval battle in Lake Borgne.....	240, 241
61. Give an account of the battle nine miles from New Orleans..	241
62. Give an account of the battle of New Orleans .....	241
63. Give an account of the Federalists and their convention. ...	241, 242
64. When, where, and by whom was the treaty of peace nego- tiated? .....	242, 243
65. Give an account of Decatur's success against Algiers, &c.,	244, 245, 246

## SECTION VII.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION, IN 1817,  
TO THE CLOSE OF TYLER'S, IN 1845.

### MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.



I. JAMES MONROE, the fifth President of the United States, was inaugurated at Washington, on the 4th of March, 1817; and his administration commenced under very favorable circumstances.\* We were at peace with all foreign powers, our commerce rode every sea unmolested, and the strife at home, between the two great political parties, Democrats and Federalists, had entirely ceased.

II. Towards the close of 1817, the Seminole Indians, joined by some Creeks, commenced de-

predations on the frontier settlements of Georgia and Ala-

\* President Monroe's cabinet consisted of John Quincy Adams, Secretary of State; William H. Crawford, Secretary of the Treasury; John C. Calhoun, Secretary of War; Benjamin W. Crowninshield, Secretary of the Navy; and William Wirt, Attorney-General.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION. I. QUESTIONS.—1. When and where was Monroe inaugurated? 2. How did his administration commence? 3. State the three circumstances.

bama. General Gaines was sent against them, but his force being insufficient, General Jackson was ordered into service. Jackson soon overran the Indian country, and being convinced that the Seminoles had been instigated to hostilities by persons in Florida, he seized the Spanish forts, both at St. Mark's and Pensacola.

III. Two British subjects, Arbuthnot and Ambrister, having fallen into his hands, were tried by a court-martial, on a

charge of having incited the Indians to hostilities, found guilty, and executed. Jackson's invasion of Florida, a territory belonging to a nation at peace with the United States, and his summary proceedings in the prosecution of the war, were condemned by many persons; but they were approved by the President and Congress.

IV. A treaty was made in 1819, by which Florida was ceded to the United States; but it was not till towards the close of 1820 that the King of Spain ratified the treaty, nor till July, 1821, that the government of Spain surrendered possession of the province. Although the Seminoles, a fierce and



II. QUESTIONS.—4. What troubles commenced towards the close of 1817? 5. Who was first sent against the Seminoles? 6. Who was next sent? 7. Of what was Jackson soon convinced? 8. What did he accordingly do? 9. How are St. Mark's and Pensacola situated? (See map, p. 223, also of Florida.)

III. 10. State the cases of Arbuthnot and Ambrister. 11. What acts of Jackson were much condemned?





warlike Indian race, occupied the best lands in the territory, immigration set in, and a considerable population soon established themselves in the country.

V. The Mississippi Territory, which embraced the present States of Alabama and Mississippi, was divided in 1817, and the western portion admitted into the Union as the State of Mississippi. Illinois (*il-lin-oi*), which up to 1800 had been a part of the Northwest Territory, and from that time to 1809, had formed, with Indiana,

the Indiana Territory, and subsequently by itself the Illinois Territory, was admitted into the Union as a State in 1818. Alabama was admitted in 1819. In 1820, Maine, which had, up to that time, been a district of Massachusetts, was organized as a State, and admitted into the Union.

VI. The most important event of Monroe's administration, was the controversy preceding the admission of Missouri (*mis-soo'-rē*) into the Union, by which, for the first time, the

IV. QUESTIONS.—12. State the facts connected with the acquisition of Florida. 13. What is said of the Seminoles and their possessions? 14. Of immigration to Florida?

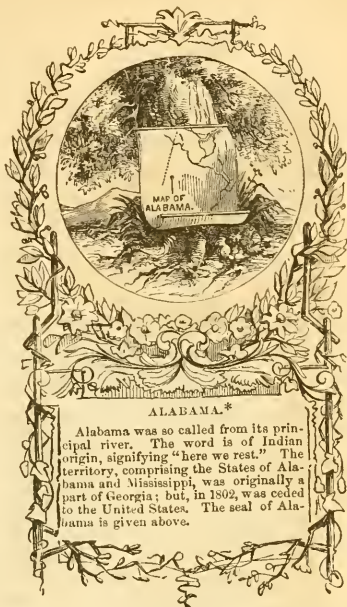
V. 15. When was Mississippi admitted into the Union? 16. What can you state of the previous history of Mississippi? 17. When was Illinois admitted into the Union? 18. What can you state of the previous history of Illinois? 19. When was Maine admitted? 20. What can you state of the previous history of Maine?

VI. 21. What was the most important event of Monroe's administration? 22. How were the States arrayed on the slavery question?



country was divided upon the slavery question; the States of the North opposing the admission of Missouri as a slave State, while those of the South favored such admission.

VII. In Congress, the debate was long and acrimonious. At length a bill, known as the "Missouri Compromise," was passed, by which it was declared that slavery was prohibited forever in all territory north of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes north latitude. Under this compromise, Missouri was admitted into the Union in 1821, and the slavery agitation subsided for a time.



VIII. Another important event of Monroe's administration was the recognition of the Spanish American republics, which had declared and maintained their independence for several years. In 1823, the year following the recognition, President Monroe declared in his annual message, that, "as a principle, the American continents, by the free and independent position

\* The territory now known as Alabama was originally a part of Georgia. In 1798, all the region comprising the present States of Alabama and Mississippi was organized as the territory of Mississippi. In 1817, its western portion became the State of Mississippi, while the other part continued to be the territory of Alabama until its admission as a State.

VII. QUESTIONS.—23. What is said of the debate in Congress? 24. What bill was passed? 25. What was the important declaration of the bill? 26. What is said of the admission of Missouri?

VIII. 27. What other important event took place during the administration of Monroe? 28. Recite the whole of the "Monroe Doctrine." 29. When and under what circumstances was that "doctrine" put forth?



SEAL OF MAINE.\*

was the President's tour, in 1817, through the eastern and other States, for the purpose of making a personal examination of military posts. The second was the visit of Lafayette to this country. The distinguished visitor arrived in the summer of 1824; and his tour, which was extended through all of the twenty-four States, was everywhere signal-

which they have assumed and maintained, are henceforth not to be considered as subject for future colonization by any European power;" a declaration which has since been famous as the "Monroe Doctrine."

IX. During Monroe's administration, two events occurred which are worthy of notice. The first was the President's tour, in 1817, through the eastern and other States, for the purpose of making a personal examination of military posts. The second was the visit of Lafayette to this country. The distinguished visitor arrived in the summer of 1824; and his tour, which was extended through all of the twenty-four States, was everywhere signal-



SEAL OF MISSOURI†

X. Monroe, having served two presidential terms, declined, in imitation of his predecessors, Washington, Jefferson, and Madison, being a candidate for a third term, and was succeeded by John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts.

\* Authors are not agreed with regard to the derivation of the name given to this State. The prevailing opinion is that Maine was so called in compliment to Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I. of England, who, it was supposed, owned the province of Maine, in France. The Coat of Arms of the State of Maine is delineated on the seal (given above), and contains the motto of the State, *Dirigo*, signifying I direct.

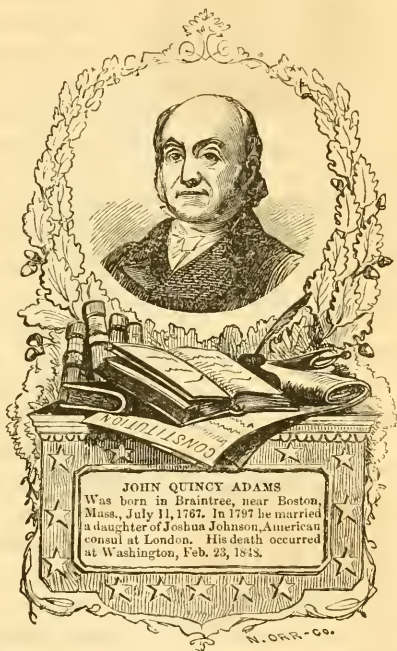
† This State takes its name from the great river which passes through it. The word Missouri, signifying Mud River, was applied to the river by the Indians, because of the turbid character of that stream. The motto of Missouri (shown on the seal of the State above) is: *Salus populi suprema lex*—The welfare of the people is the first great law.

IX. QUESTIONS.—30. What account can you give of Monroe's tour in 1817? 31. What of Lafayette's visit to the United States in 1824?

X. 32. Why was not Monroe elected President for a third term? 33. By whom was he succeeded?

## JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

I. FOUR candidates were put in nomination to succeed President Monroe, and the consequence was that none of them had a majority of the electoral votes. The election then went to the House of Representatives, for the second time, Jefferson having been thus elected, in 1801; and John Quincy Adams was chosen the sixth President of the United States. His inauguration took place at Washington, on the 4th of March, 1825.\*



II. On the fiftieth anniversary of American Independence, July the 4th, 1826, occurred the death of the two venerable ex-presidents, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. As this remarkable coinci-

\* The cabinet of President John Quincy Adams was constituted as follows: Henry Clay, Secretary of State; Richard Rush, Secretary of the Treasury; James Barbour, Secretary of War; Samuel L. Southard, Secretary of the Navy; and William Wirt, Attorney-General.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. How many candidates were put in nomination to succeed Monroe? 2. What was the consequence? 3. Where did the election then go? 4. Who was elected? 5. When did his inauguration take place?

II. 6. What remarkable coincidence occurred during the administration of John Quincy Adams? 7. When did it occur? 8. State the parallels in their lives.

dence took place more than a year after the commencement of the tenth presidential term, John Adams lived to see his son President. When it is recollected that Adams and Jefferson were members of the committee that framed the Declaration of Independence; that both signed the important document; that both had been foreign ministers, vice-presidents, and presidents of the United States; and that each had lived to a venerable age, the coincidence of their deaths is indeed remarkable.

III. The administration of John Quincy Adams was one of wisdom and peace; and under it the nation made rapid increase in population and wealth. Towards its close the presidential contest for the succession was carried on with great animation and virulence, and resulted in the election of Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee.

## JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. The inauguration of Jackson took place at Washington, on the 4th of March, 1829,\* and the new president at once commenced a series of vigorous measures which he carried out for eight years. The practice of removing office-holders, and appointing the political friends of the President, was begun by him.

II. In his first annual message to Congress, President Jackson took strong ground against the renewal of the charter of the United States Bank, arguing that "such an institution is not authorized by the constitution." Notwithstanding this opposition,

---

\* President Jackson's cabinet consisted of Martin Van Buren, Secretary of State; Samuel D. Ingham, Secretary of the Treasury; John H. Eaton, Secretary of War; John Branch, Secretary of the Navy; John McPherson Berrien, Attorney-General; and William T. Barry, Postmaster-General. The Postmaster-General was, for the first time, made a member of the cabinet. In 1831, in consequence of a personal quarrel, changes were made in the cabinet. Edward Livingston was Secretary of State; Louis McLane, Secretary of the Treasury; Lewis Cass, Secretary of War; Levi Woodbury, Secretary of the Navy; and Roger B. Taney, Attorney-General. Other changes afterward took place.

---

III. QUESTIONS.—9. What is said of the administration of John Quincy Adams? 10. Of the contest for the presidential succession? 11. What was the result of the contest?

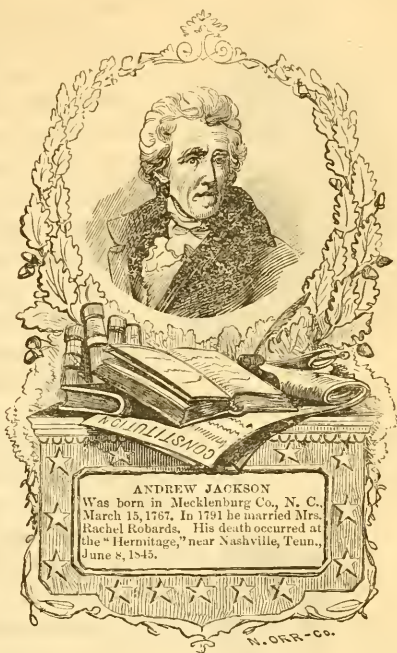
JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. 1. When was Jackson inaugurated? 2. How did he commence and continue to govern? 3. What practice did he begin?

Congress, in 1832, passed a bill to re-charter the bank, but Jackson vetoed it; and as it subsequently failed to receive sufficient votes to secure its passage over the veto, the original charter expired by limitation in 1836, and the bank then ceased to be a national institution.

III. In 1832, the Northwest frontier suffered from Indian hostilities; but after several skirmishes, most of the savages were driven west of the Mississippi River. Black Hawk, their most

noted leader, and from whom the contest became generally known as *The Black Hawk War*, was taken prisoner. After a detention of some months, during which he was conducted through Washington and other cities, for the purpose of convincing him that resistance against the power of the whites was useless, he was allowed to rejoin his people.

IV. A tariff bill, which had been passed by Congress during the administration of John Quincy Adams, had been



II. QUESTIONS.—4. What stand did Jackson take with reference to the United States Bank? 5. What was his main objection? 6. What action did Congress take? 7. How came it that the bank ceased to be a national institution?

III. 8. Give an account of *The Black Hawk War*. 9. How was Black Hawk treated after the war?

IV. 10. What is said of a tariff bill, passed before Jackson was President? 11. How was the dissatisfaction increased?





BLACK HAWK.

exceedingly distasteful to the cotton-growing States; and when, in 1832, an act was passed imposing additional duties on foreign goods, the dissatisfaction was greatly increased, especially in South Carolina.

V. A convention, held in that State, declared the tariff acts unconstitutional, and, therefore, null and void. It also declared that duties should not be paid, and proclaimed that any attempts on the part of the general government to enforce the collection of duties would produce the

withdrawal of South Carolina from the Union. One of the chief leaders of the nullifiers, as those persons in South Carolina who

sustained the declarations of the convention were called, was John C. Calhoun,\* who had recently resigned the vice-presidency of the United States. Another leader, of not much less distinction, was Robert Y. Hayne, who, when a United States Senator, in 1830, was the first to declare and defend in Congress the doctrine of nullification, and to whom Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, then replied in one of the most remarkable



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

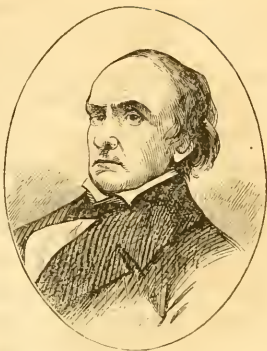
\* John C. Calhoun was born in the district of Abbeville, S. C., in 1782. He was for six years a representative in Congress; for a number of years was a United States Senator; was Secretary of War in Monroe's cabinet; and was twice elected Vice-President of the United States. In 1845, while Secretary of State in Tyler's cabinet, he was "the author of the annexation of Texas." He died at Washington, in 1850.

V. QUESTIONS.—12. What was declared by a South Carolina Convention? 13. What else did it declare? 14. Who was the great leader of the nullifiers? 15. What high position had Calhoun resigned? 16. Who was another leader of the nullifiers? 17. What did Hayne do in 1830? 18. Who replied to him? 19. What is said of that reply?



speeches ever delivered in Congress. Although Hayne was the first to declare this doctrine in Congress, Calhoun, in a paper known as the "South Carolina Exposition," was its author.

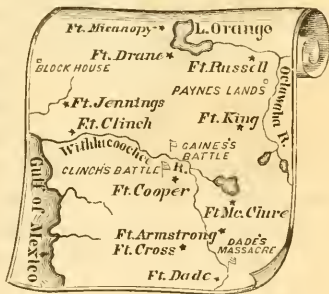
VI. In this crisis, President Jackson acted with that promptness and energy which were so characteristic of the man. By his direction an army, under General Scott, was ordered to Charleston; and he issued a proclamation against the nullifiers and their doctrine, which met with a cordial response from every friend of the Union. A "compromise bill," offered by Mr. Clay and passed by Congress, was accepted by Calhoun and his friends, and thus the danger which threatened the Union was averted.



DANIEL WEBSTER.\*

### THE SEMINOLE WAR.

VII. Towards the close of 1835, the Seminole Indians, influenced by Micanopy, their head sachem, and by Osceola (*os-c-o'-la*), the most noted of their chiefs, and a man of great cunning and courage, commenced hostilities against the settlements of the whites in Florida. This outbreak of the Seminoles had its origin



PART OF FLORIDA.

\* Daniel Webster was born at Salisbury, N. H., in 1782. A large portion of his life was passed at Washington, either as a member of Congress or the cabinet. In 1842, while Secretary of State in Tyler's cabinet, he negotiated with Lord Ashburton a treaty settling the differences between the United States and Great Britain in relation to the northeastern boundary, differences which had disturbed the relations of the two countries for more than sixty years. Webster died at Marshfield, Mass., in 1852.

VI. QUESTIONS.—20. How did Jackson act in this crisis? 21. What was done by his direction? 22. What proclamation did he issue? 23. How was the danger to the Union averted?

in an attempt to remove them from Florida to lands west of the Mississippi, in accordance with the terms of a treaty which had been made with some of the chiefs, but which a majority of the tribe did not consider binding.

VIII. In consequence of the offensive conduct of Osceola in opposition to the fulfilment of the treaty, the government agent, General Thompson, put him in irons, and kept him a prisoner for six days at Fort King. By feigning penitence and making promises, Osceola obtained his liberty; but, instead of doing as he had agreed, he placed himself at the head of a war party of Indians and fugitive slaves, and commenced the work of slaughter and devastation.



OSCEOLA.

IX. On the 28th of December, 1835, he approached a house in which Thompson and some friends were dining, and, making a sudden attack, killed five of the number, including Thompson, and carried off their scalps, in revenge for the imprisonment which he had suffered. On the very day of Thompson's death, "Dade's massacre" occurred. Major Dade, with a

detachment of one hundred and ten soldiers, while marching from Tampa Bay to join General Clinch, at Fort Drane, was suddenly attacked; and that young commander and the whole of his detachment, except four men, were massacred.

---

VII. QUESTIONS.—24. What troubles broke out in 1835? 25. Why did the Seminoles so act? 26. What was the character of Osceola?

VIII. 27. Why was Osceola put in irons and imprisoned? 28. In what direction was Fort King from Fort Dade? (See map, p. 257.) 29. How long was Osceola kept at Fort King? 30. How did he obtain his liberty? 31. What did he do instead of performing his promises?

IX. 32. How did he have revenge for his treatment at Fort King? 33. Give an account of Dade's massacre. 34. In what direction was Dade marching when he was attacked? (See map, p. 257.)

X. On the 30th of December, two days after, Osceola encountered an American force of six hundred men under General Clinch, at the crossing of the Withlacoochee River, but, after a hard-fought action of upward of an hour, was compelled to retreat. In February and March, 1836, at the head of a force of more than a thousand Indians, he fought several actions against the troops under General Gaines, in the most important of which, occurring on the 29th of February, near the scene of Clinch's battle-ground, one American was killed, and more than thirty, including Gaines, were wounded.

XI. In May, 1836, a large number of the Creeks joined the Seminoles, and in Georgia and Alabama, as well as Florida, committed great devastations, compelling thousands of whites to flee for their lives. General Scott, who had been appointed to the command in the South, prosecuted the war with vigor, but he was soon superseded by General Jesup. The Creeks were speedily reduced, and transported beyond the Mississippi.

XII. In October, 1836, Governor Call, of Georgia, took command of the forces in Florida. A detachment of more than five hundred of his men



X. QUESTIONS.—35. Give an account of the battle of Withlacoochee. 36. Of the battles in February and March of 1836.

XI. 37. What took place in May, 1836? 38. Who was then sent against the Indians? 39. Who was next sent? 40. How was the war ended as respects the Creeks?

encountered the Indians at a place a short distance from the scene of Dade's massacre; and although the enemy dispersed after the action, yet neither in this nor in other battles could the Americans claim a decided victory.

XIII. For upwards of a year did Osceola\* conduct the struggle against superior forces, with energy and skill; but, in

October, 1837, he appeared in Jessup's camp, near St. Augustine, with a flag of truce, for the purpose of holding a conference. Suspecting a repetition of treachery, and desiring to prevent further bloodshed, Jessup disregarded the flag and seized the chief, who was taken to Fort Moultrie, and there kept in confinement till his death, which occurred on the last day of January, 1838.

XIV. The capture of Osceola did not end the war with the Seminoles. They amused Jessup for

a while with overtures, but he, finding the Indians not sincere, directed Colonel Taylor (afterward General Taylor, and Pres-



\* Osceola was born in Florida. His father was an Indian trader, an Englishman named Powell, and his mother was the daughter of an Indian chief.

XII. QUESTIONS.—41. Who took command of the forces in Florida towards the latter part of 1836? 42. What is said of the battles fought by Call's forces?

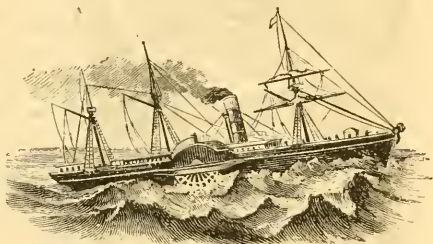
XIII. 43. How long did Osceola conduct the struggle? 44. In what manner did he conduct it? 45. What mistake did he make? 46. Why did Jessup seize Osceola? 47. What further can you state of Osceola?

ident of the United States) to proceed against them. With about a thousand men Taylor accordingly marched, and on the 25th of December, 1837, encountered the Indians in strong force on the northern side of Lake Okeechobee, and defeated them in one of the most desperate and hotly contested battles in the annals of our warfare with the red men.

XV. Though the Seminoles continued their hostilities through the administration of Jackson, as well as that of his immediate successor, they never again rallied in large force. A treaty was made with them in 1839, but it was not till 1842 that peace was finally secured.

## VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. JACKSON was succeeded in the presidency by Martin Van Buren, of New York. Van Buren's administration was continued during one term, or four years, extending from the 4th of March, 1837,† the day of inauguration, to the 4th of March, 1841.



OCEAN STEAMER.\*

\* The first regular passages across the Atlantic by steamships were made in 1833, by the *Sirius* and *Great Western*.

† President Van Buren's cabinet was constituted as follows: John Forsyth, Secretary of State; Levi Woodbury, Secretary of the Treasury; Joel R. Poinsett, Secretary of War; Mahlon Dickerson, Secretary of the Navy; Benjamin F. Butler, Attorney-General; and Amos Kendall, Postmaster-General. All of these, except Poinsett, had held their respective offices in Jackson's cabinet at the close of his last term. In 1838, Dickerson and Butler resigned, and James K. Paulding was appointed in the place of the former, and Felix Grundy in that of the latter. Grundy was succeeded in 1840, by Henry D. Gilpin, and Kendall by John M. Niles.

XIV. QUESTIONS.—48. Did the capture of Osceola end the war or not? 49. Whom did Jessup order to go against the Seminoles? 50. Give an account of the battle of Okeechobee.

XV. 51. What is said of the subsequent part of the Seminole war?

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. 1. Who was Jackson's successor in the presidency? 2. When was Van Buren inaugurated?



II. Soon after his inauguration, a revolution in monetary affairs took place, producing great distress in all branches of business throughout the country. Commerce and manufactures were prostrated, and the crash was finally consummated by the suspension of specie payments by all the banks. In this crisis, the President called an extraordinary session of

Congress, but little was accomplished by it for the general relief.

III. In the latter part of 1837 an insurrectionary movement commenced in Canada, having for its object the overthrow of the British rule there, and the establishment of an independent government. The movement enlisted the sympathy of Americans, particularly of those living along the borders in New York, and it engaged their active co-operation. A pro-



clamation, issued by the President, forbidding interference in the affairs of Canada, together with the decided measures taken

II. QUESTIONS.—3. What took place soon after his inauguration? 4. How were commerce, manufactures, and the banks affected? 5. What did the President do in the crisis?

III. 6. What insurrection at the North, beyond the limits of the United States, broke out in 1837? 7. What was its object? 8. What proclamation did the President issue? 9. Why did he find it necessary to issue it?

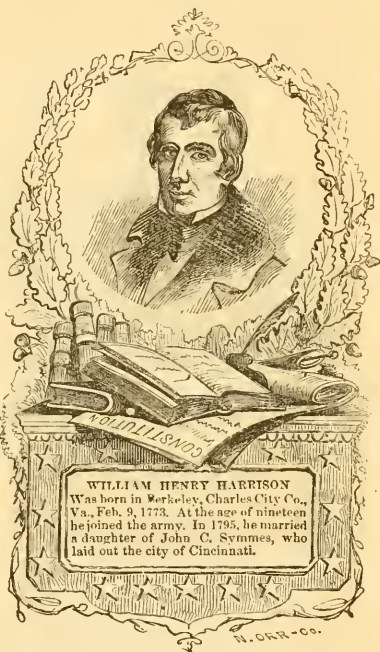


by the British authorities, had the effect intended, and the attempt at insurrection was suppressed.

## HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. VAN BUREN'S successor in office was William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, the hero of Tippecanoe and the Thames. The inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1841. His cabinet was judiciously composed,\* and the people anticipated for him a successful administration; but within a month, and after a brief illness of only eight days, he died: the sad event occurring on the 4th of April.

II. By virtue of a provision of the Constitution, John Tyler, of Virginia, then Vice-President, became President; his inauguration taking place on the 6th of April, 1841. Thus, for the first time in the history of the United States, the administration devolved on the Vice-President.

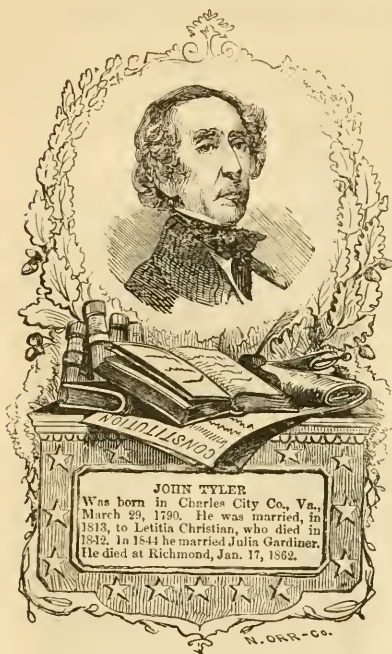


\* President Harrison's cabinet was constituted as follows: Daniel Webster, Secretary of State; Thomas Ewing, Secretary of the Treasury; John Bell, Secretary of War; George E. Badger, Secretary of the Navy; Francis Granger, Postmaster-General; and J. J. Crittenden, Attorney-General.

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. Who succeeded Van Buren in the presidency? 2. When was Harrison inaugurated? 3. What is said of his cabinet? 4. Of the anticipations of the people? 5. What was the length of his administration? 6. How was it brought to a close?

II. 7. Who was his successor? 8. By what right did Tyler become President? 9. What is noted as peculiar in the accession of Tyler to the presidency?

## TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION.\*



I. IN 1842 serious difficulties occurred in Rhode Island, growing out of a movement which was stigmatized by its opponents as the *Dorr Rebellion*. The government of Rhode Island, at that time, was based upon a charter granted by Charles II., in 1663, and consequently no change had taken place in her fundamental law during a period of almost one hundred and eighty years. The movement in 1842 had its origin in a determination among the citizens to

substitute a liberal constitution in place of the old charter.

II. The people soon became divided into two parties, those who favored the movement being called the suffrage party, and those who were opposed, the charter party; and so vio-

\* President Tyler retained the cabinet officers of his predecessor until September, 1841, when all but Webster resigned. His cabinet was then constituted as follows: Daniel Webster, Secretary of State; Walter Forward, Secretary of the Treasury; John C. Spencer, Secretary of War; Abel P. Upshur, Secretary of the Navy; Charles A. Wickliffe, Postmaster-General; and Hugh S. Legaré, Attorney-General. In May, 1843, Webster resigned, and Legaré was appointed acting secretary in his place. In the following month Legaré died, and thereupon Upshur was transferred to the State Department, and Thomas W. Gilmer was appointed Secretary of the Navy. On the 28th of February, 1844, both Upshur and Gilmer were killed by the bursting of a gun on board the United States war steamer Princeton, while on an excursion on the Potomac. A large party, including the President and many ladies, were on board at the time. John C. Calhoun was then made Secretary of State, and John Y. Mason, Secretary of the Navy.

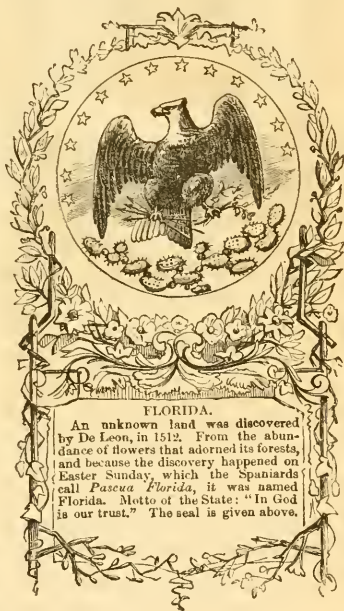
TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. When did the "*Dorr Rebellion*" occur? 2. What was the object on the part of those engaged in it?

lent did the controversy grow that both parties at length appealed to arms. The Governor of the State, at the head of a large military force, marched against a body of the suffrage party, who had appeared in arms at Providence. Upon his approach they dispersed. They again assembled at another place, but, upon being approached, again dispersed without resistance; and this ended the affair. A constitution, the one now in force, was soon afterward adopted.

III. Thomas W. Dorr, the leader of the suffrage party in the insurrection, was afterward arrested, tried, convicted of high treason, and sentenced to imprisonment for life. He was, however, pardoned in 1847; and, at a later period, his civil rights were restored to him, and the record of his sentence was expunged.

## ANNEXATION OF TEXAS.

IV. A proposition for the admission of Texas into the Union caused excited discussion throughout the whole country during the closing months of Tyler's administration. Texas had been a province of Mexico, but in consequence of the arbitrary policy pur-



II. QUESTIONS.—3. What division of parties soon took place? 4. What is stated as evidence of the violence of the controversy? 5. Give an account of the "Rebellion."

III. 6. What account can you give of Thomas W. Dorr?



Union. He was succeeded in the presidency by James K. Polk, of Tennessee.

sued by that government towards her inhabitants, the most of whom were from the United States, they declared their independence, and by force of arms sustained the declaration.

V. A bill for the admission of Texas, under certain conditions, was passed by Congress three days before the expiration of Tyler's term of office, and at once was signed by him. Tyler's last important official act was the signing of the bill admitting Florida and Iowa into the

IV. QUESTIONS.—7. What important proposition was made in relation to Texas? 8. What did the proposition cause? 9. What can you state of the previous history of Texas?

V. 10. What progress did the proposition for the admission of Texas make during Tyler's administration? 11. When were Florida and Iowa admitted into the Union? 12. Who succeeded Tyler in the presidency?

#### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. In what condition were the United States, in 1817?.....	248
2. What Indian troubles commenced in 1817?.....	248
3. What did Jackson accomplish against the Indians?.....	249
4. When was Missouri admitted into the Union?.....	251
5. What controversy preceded the admission of Missouri?..	250, 251
6. When and by whom was the "Monroe Doctrine" enunciated?..	251

	PAGE
7. What interesting events occurred in 1817 and 1824?.....	252
8. How was John Quincy Adams elected to the Presidency?.....	253
9. When did the ex-Presidents, Adams and Jefferson, die?.....	253
10. Give an account of Jackson's Bank controversy.....	254, 255
11. Give an account of the Indian war which broke out in 1832...	255
12. How did the "nullification troubles" in S. C. commence?	255, 256
13. What action was taken by a convention in that State?...	256
14. What can you state of J. C. Calhoun and Robert Y. Hayne?	256, 257
15. What anti-nullification measures did Jackson adopt?.....	257
16. What can you state of "Clay's Compromise Bill?" .....	257
17. What Indian troubles commenced in the year 1835?.....	257
18. What was the cause of the Seminole War? .....	257, 258
19. What was done to Osceola because of his offensive conduct?..	258
20. By what means did he obtain his liberty?.....	258
21. State the circumstances of Thompson's massacre.....	258
22. Give an account of the other event happening the same day...	258
23. Give an account of the battle which happened Dec. 30.....	259
24. What events took place in February and March, 1836?.....	259
25. State what was done by the Indians in May of the same year..	259
26. State what you can of Scott's and Jessup's part in the war...	259
27. Who afterward took command against the Indians?.....	259
28. What can you say of a battle fought by a body of his men?	259, 260
29. Under what circumstances was Jessup at last captured?.....	260
30. What can you state of his subsequent history?.....	260
31. What was the last great battle of the war?.....	261
32. When and where did it occur?.....	261
33. What can you say of the battle and its result?.....	261
34. What further account can you give of the war?.....	261
35. What event took place on the 4th of March, 1837?.....	261
36. What can you say of the revolution in monetary affairs?.....	262
37. Give an account of the Canadian insurrection.....	262, 263
38. What event took place on the 4th of March, 1841?.....	263
39. Give an account of Harrison subsequent to his inauguration...	263
40. Who succeeded Harrison in the Presidency?.....	263
41. What troubles occurred in Rhode Island in 1842?.....	264
42. How did the troubles originate?.....	264
43. Give an account of the trouble.....	264, 265
44. What proceedings were afterward taken against Dorr?.....	265
45. What was afterward done in relation to the proceedings?.....	265
46. What can you state of the early history of Texas?.....	265, 266
47. What can you say of the bill for the admission of Texas?.....	266





(Questions to be answered from the above map.)

How is San Antonio de Bexar situated? Vera Cruz? Alvarado? Matamoras? Jalapa? Puebla? Saltillo? Leavenworth? San Francisco? Into what body of water does the Rio Grande flow? In what direction is Santa Fe from Leavenworth? Saltillo from Matamoras? Victoria from Saltillo? City of Mexico from Jalapa?

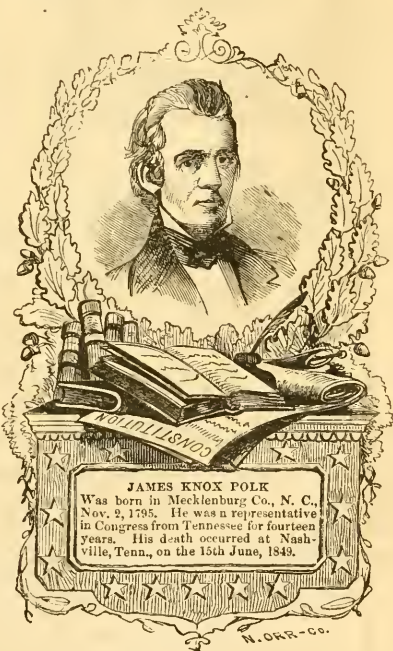


## SECTION VIII.

FROM THE BEGINNING OF POLK'S ADMINISTRATION, IN 1845,  
TO THE CLOSE OF BUCHANAN'S, IN 1861.

## POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. POLK's inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1845.\* His administration continued during only one term, or four years, ending on the 4th of March, 1849; but it was an eventful one. At the beginning of it, he found the country involved in disputes with Mexico, in consequence of the passage of the bill for the admission of Texas. On the 4th of July, 1845, the legislature of Texas approved this bill, and, by the act of approval, Texas was ad-



\* President Polk's cabinet was constituted as follows: James Buchanan, Secretary of State; Robert J. Walker, Secretary of the Treasury; William L. Marcy, Secretary of War; George Bancroft, Secretary of the Navy; Cave Johnson, Postmaster-General, and John Y. Mason, Attorney-General.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. QUESTIONS. 1. When was Polk inaugurated? 2. When did his term of office begin and end? 3. In what disputes were the United States a party at the beginning of his administration? 4. When and by what act was the annexation of Texas consummated?



mitted into the Union, making the whole number of States twenty-eight.

## WAR WITH MEXICO.

II. The annexation of Texas led to a war with Mexico; for, notwithstanding the independence of Texas had been acknowledged by the United States, England, France, and other governments, Mexico still claimed it as a part of her own territory, and considered the act of annexation as sufficient cause of war.

III. The Mexican minister at Washington having protested against the measure of annexation, and returned home, and his government having assumed a belligerent attitude, General Taylor, who was then in command of a camp in the western part of Louisiana, was directed to hold his army in readiness to protect the Texan territory. By the advice of the Texan authorities, he was induced to concentrate his troops at Corpus Christi\*

\* Corpus Christi is a Latin term, signifying *the body of Christ*.

† Texas has no motto.

II. QUESTIONS.—5. What did the annexation of Texas lead to? 6. By what governments had the independence of Texas been acknowledged? 7. What claim did Mexico still maintain? 8. What then was the cause of the war between Mexico and the United States?

III. 9. What course did the Mexican minister pursue? 10. What, his government? 11. Where was Taylor at the time? 12. What direction did he receive? 13. Where did he afterwards concentrate his troops? 14. Into what body of water does the Nueces flow? (See map, p. 271.) 15. Why did Taylor go to Corpus Christi?

(*kor'-pus kris'-te*), situated on the western bank of the Nueces (*noo-ā'-thes*) River, near its mouth, where, in November, his forces amounted to about four thousand men.

#### EVENTS OF 1846.

IV. The United States, by the annexation of Texas, claimed the Rio Grande (*re'-o grahn'-dā*) as their boundary, while the Mexicans maintained that the western limits of Texas never extended beyond the Nueces. In consequence of these conflicting claims, the country between the two rivers, in time, acquired the appellation of the "disputed territory;" and when, early in 1846, President Polk ordered Taylor to proceed with his forces to the Rio Grande, across this territory, the advance was treated by the Mexicans as the actual commencement of hostilities.



V. On his route from Corpus Christi to the Rio Grande, Taylor established a dépôt at Point Isabel (*iz-ā-bel'*), about twenty-one miles northeast of Matamoras (*mat-a-mō'-ras*). On reaching the Rio Grande he took a position opposite Matamoras, and erected a fortress, which was afterward named Fort

IV. QUESTIONS.—16. What two boundary claims were maintained? 17. What region was known as the "disputed territory?" 18. What movement did Polk order Taylor to make? 19. How did the Mexicans regard the movement?

V. 20. Where is Point Isabel? (See map, p. 271.) 21. What use did Taylor make of the place? 22. Where was Fort Brown erected? 23. By whom was it erected? 24. Why was it called Fort Brown? 25. Give an account of the disaster to Thornton.

1846. Brown, in honor of its brave defender. Learning that the Mexicans were assembling troops at a point higher up the river, Taylor sent Captain Thornton, with a party of sixty-three dragoons, to reconnoiter. On the 26th of April, this little band was attacked, and, after a loss of sixteen men, was compelled to surrender.

VI. Thus was shed the first blood in the war. The news of this affair produced the wildest excitement throughout the United States; and a war-spirit, unknown before to exist, was at once aroused. The President sent a message to Congress, announcing that Mexico had "invaded our territory, and shed the blood of our fellow-citizens on our own soil;" and Congress, adopting the spirit of the message, declared that "war existed by the act of Mexico."

VII. The Mexicans, in large force, having crossed the Rio Grande for the purpose, as Taylor thought, of moving against Point Isabel, he marched to the relief of that place, leaving a small garrison for the defense of Fort Brown. Having placed the dépôt in a better condition to resist an attack, he set out on his return to the fort.

VIII. On the 8th of May, the Mexican army, numbering full six thousand men, commanded by General Arista (*ah-rees'-tah*), was discovered upon a beautiful prairie, called Palo Alto\* (*pah'-lo ahl'-to*), drawn up in battle array, prepared to dispute his progress. Although the Americans numbered not more than two thousand three hundred men, they pressed forward to the attack; and from noon till twilight, a hot contest was maintained. The enemy then were driven from their position, and the victorious Americans encamped upon the

---

\* Palo Alto, a Spanish term, signifying "tall timber."

VI. QUESTIONS.—26. What effect did the news of it have in the United States? 27. What is said of the President's message? 28. Of the action of Congress?

VII. 29. Why did Taylor march to the relief of Point Isabel? 30. Did he remain at the Point or not? 31. In what direction did he then march?

VIII. 32. When did the battle of Palo Alto take place? 33. Give an account of it. 34. What loss was sustained by each party?

battle-field. The loss of the Mexicans was about six hundred; that of the victors, was only nine killed and forty-four wounded, but among the mortally wounded was the brave Major Ringgold, who died four days after.

IX. On the following day, May the 9th, Taylor resumed his march, and, towards evening, encountered the enemy under Arista, within three miles of Fort Brown, posted in and near a ravine called Resaca de la Palma\* (*râ-sah'-kah dâ lah pahl'-mah*). The action was commenced on both sides by the artillery, but the Mexican guns, well aimed and rapidly discharged, were holding the Americans in check, when Captain May was ordered to silence them. At the head of his dragoons, May rushed forward with great fury, killed or dispersed the gunners, and captured General La Vega (*lah vâ'-gah*). The charge being supported by the infantry, a general engagement ensued; and, after a most obstinate resistance, the Mexicans gave way, their retreat becoming a perfect rout. Their loss, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was at least one thousand, while the killed and wounded of the victors did not much exceed a hundred.

X. During the greater part of Taylor's absence from Fort Brown, a period of nearly eight days, it had been subjected to a bombardment from the Mexican batteries in Matamoras. The garrison made a successful defense, though their heroic commander, Major Brown, was mortally wounded by the bursting of a shell. On the 18th of May, Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took possession of Matamoras without opposition; but, owing to the difficulties experienced in getting re-enforcements and supplies, it was not till the end of more than three

---

\* Resaca de la Palma, a Spanish term, signifying "a ravine of palm-trees."

IX. QUESTIONS.—35. When did Taylor next meet the enemy? 36. What battle ensued? 37. Give an account of it. 38. What loss was sustained by each party?

X. 39. How long had Taylor been absent from Fort Brown? 40. What had occurred there during his absence? 41. What is said of the defense made? 42. What is said of the taking of Matamoras? 43. How is Matamoras situated? (See map, p. 271.) 44. How long did Taylor remain at Matamoras? 45. Why did he not advance sooner?



1846. months that he found himself strong enough to make a further advance.

XI. He then directed his march against Monterey (*mon-tā-rā'*), an inland city of Mexico, strong in its natural defenses, and, besides, well garrisoned by about ten thousand regular troops, under General Ampudia (*am-poo'-de-ah*). After garrisoning several towns on his route, he reached Monterey on the 9th of September, with a force of less than seven thousand men. On the 19th he commenced operations; and, after a series of assaults, continued through three days, in which Generals Worth and Quitman rendered brilliant service, Ampudia capitulated on the 24th. An armistice of eight weeks was agreed upon, or the truce was to continue till the expiration of that period, unless instructions to renew hostilities should be received in the mean time from either of the respective governments.

XII. Before the eight weeks had expired, Taylor received orders from Washington, directing him to renew offensive operations. Accordingly, one division of his army, under General Worth, occupied Saltillo (*sahl-teel'-yo*), while, at a little later period, another division, under General Patterson, took possession of Victoria, with the intention of going against Tampico (*tam-pe'-co*), but ascertained, before proceeding, that the place had already surrendered to Commodore Conner, commanding the "Home Squadron" in the Gulf of Mexico.

XIII. In the mean time, General Wool, with an army of about three thousand men, had set out from San Antonio de

XI. QUESTIONS.—46. Against what place did he next proceed? 47. In what direction from Matamoras is Monterey? (See map, p. 271.) 48. What is said of its defenses and the garrison then there? 49. When did he capture Monterey? 50. Give an account of the efforts which resulted in the capture. 51. What is said of the armistice?

XII. 52. Why did Taylor renew offensive operations? 53. What was done by General Worth? 54. What, by General Patterson? 55. What, by Commodore Conner? 56. In what direction is Saltillo from Monterey? (See map, p. 271.) 57. Victoria from Monterey? (See map, p. 268.) 58. Tampico from Monterey? (See same map.)



Bexar (*san an-to'-ne-o dā bā-har'*), a town in Texas, with the design of penetrating the province of Chihuahua (*che-wah'-wah*). After crossing the Rio Grande, and learning that Monterey was in the possession of the Americans, influenced by the advice of Taylor, he abandoned the design against Chihuahua, and joined General Worth at Saltillo.

XIV. In June, 1846, an expedition under General Kearny set out from Leavenworth (*lev'-en-wurth*), on the Missouri River, to conquer New Mexico and California. Kearny accomplished the march of nine hundred miles to Santa Fe (*san'-tah fū*), the capital of New Mexico, and took possession of the country without opposition. After organizing a new government for the place, he proceeded westward, but soon met a messenger who informed him that California was already in possession of the Americans. All the troops with him, except a hundred, then returned to Santa Fe; and, with the small force remaining, he completed his journey across the continent.

XV. With less than a thousand men, being the main body of Kearny's invading army, Colonel Doniphan, starting from Santa Fe, marched more than a thousand miles through Mexico, and arrived at Saltillo. During this brilliant achievement he fought and was victorious in two battles, one, that of Bracito\* (*brah-the'-to*), on the 25th of December, 1846, and the other, of Sacramento (*sah-crah-mane'-to*), on the 28th of Feb-

---

\* Bracito, a Spanish word, signifying "Little Arm." It was so called because of the *little arm* or bend in the river where the battle was fought.

---

XIII. QUESTIONS.—59. How is San Antonio de Bexar situated? (See map, p. 268.) 60. By what name is the place often called? *Ans.*—San Antonio. 61. Where is Chihuahua? (See same map.) 62. What march did General Wool make? 63. Why did he not continue to Chihuahua? 64. What did he do instead?

XIV. 65. What expedition set out in June? 66. In what direction is New Mexico from Leavenworth? (See map, p. 268.) 67. What was Leavenworth then called? *Ans.*—Fort Leavenworth. 68. What did Kearny accomplish? 69. How is Santa Fe situated? (See map, p. 268.) 70. Give an account of Kearny's subsequent movements.

XV. 71. What march did Doniphan make? 72. What two successes did he achieve? 73. How are Bracito and Sacramento situated? (See map, p. 268.)

1846. ruary, 1847. While these events—the successes of Taylor, Doniphan, and others—were transpiring in Texas and the eastern part of Mexico, the Pacific coast had also become the scene of important occurrences.

XVI. Before the breaking out of the war, John C. Fremont,\* who had been brevetted captain for valuable services rendered the Government in western explorations, was sent to make a survey of the then unknown regions lying between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean, as well as to discover, if possible, a new and shorter route than the one already known from the western base of the mountains to the mouth of the Columbia River. After a series of perilous adventures among the mountains, and encounters with hostile Indians, he made his way into California, then a department of Mexico, to recruit his men, secure supplies, and obtain from the Mexican authorities permission to winter in the country.



JOHN C. FREMONT.

XVII. The permission was granted, but in a few days it was revoked, the order of revocation requiring him to leave the country at once, accompanied by a threat of destruction in case of non-compliance. His men being in an exhausted condition and not yet furnished with supplies, and consequently in no condition to repass the mountains at that time, he refused to go. Learning that General Castro, the governor of the province, was mustering a force to come against him, he took

\* Fremont was born in Savannah, Georgia, in 1813. He conducted five exploring expeditions, the first to the Rocky Mountains, and the others as far as California.

XVI. QUESTIONS.—74. On what expedition had Fremont been sent? 75. What trials did he meet with? 76. Why did he enter California?

XVII. 77. Was the permission granted or not? 78. What fickleness did the authorities of California betray? 79. Why did Fremont refuse to go? 80. Of what movement did he soon hear? 81. What defensive course did he then adopt? 82. What did Castro do instead of attacking Fremont?

a position on a mountain peak, thirty miles east of Monterey, where, in March, 1846, he built a rude fort, hoisted the United States flag, and determined to defend himself. Castro gathered a force of not less than five hundred men in the vicinity of the Americans, but spent several days in doing little more than making idle threats.

XVIII. At length Fremont, tired of inaction, and convinced that he could not obtain the needed supplies, withdrew with his party, and, taking a northern route, passed through the valley of the Sacramento, and slowly pursued his journey into Oregon. Here, on the 9th of May, he was overtaken by a messenger with dispatches from Washington, directing him to protect the interests of the United States in California. Retracing his steps, he found Castro already marching against the American settlements on the Sacramento. The settlers flocked to Fremont's standard with such alacrity and in such large numbers that he soon found himself able to confront the Mexican general. Several skirmishes took place, in which the enemy were defeated, and finally compelled to retreat towards the southern part of the province.

XIX. On the 5th of July, 1846, California was declared to be independent, and free from all Mexican rule. A few days later, Commodore Sloat, who commanded the United States squadron on the Pacific coast, having previously received information that hostilities had commenced on the Rio Grande, took possession of Monterey. Towards the latter part of the month, Commodore Stockton arrived at Monterey, took command of the squadron, and, with Fremont's co-operation, soon gained possession of the whole of California.

---

XVIII. QUESTIONS.—83. What did Fremont do in consequence of the inaction of Castro? 84. Why did he retrace his steps from Oregon? 85. What did he find as regards a movement of Castro? 86. How did the settlers act? 87. What successes did Fremont have?

XIX. 88. What took place on the 5th of July? 89. What was done by Commodore Sloat? 90. Is the Monterey on the Pacific north or south of San Francisco? (See map, p. 263.) 91. What did Commodore Stockton accomplish?

## EVENTS OF 1847.

I. In the mean time, it had been decided by the authorities at Washington that, in order to "conquer a peace," the central part of the Mexican Republic would have to be penetrated, and the capital itself menaced. Accordingly, a plan of invasion was arranged by which Vera Cruz, the most important Mexican city on the Gulf of Mexico, was to be captured; and then an army, under General Scott, was to march through Mexico against the capital. This plan not only deprived Taylor of a large portion of his best troops, but it gave to Scott the chief command of the American forces in Mexico, he being the senior officer.

II. Taylor's last engagement in Mexico was the battle of Buena Vista (*bwā'-nah vees'-tah*), fought on the 23d of February, 1847, nearly five months after his preceding one, that of Monterrey. Learning, towards the latter part of February, that Santa Anna (*san'-tah an'-nah*), the ablest of the Mexican generals, with an army of not less than twenty thousand men, was moving to attack his little force of less than five thousand, he took a position at Buena Vista, a mountain pass nine miles in advance of Saltillo, and awaited the approach of the enemy. On the morning of the 23d, the Mexicans appeared, and began the attack. The battle continued until sunset; and, although the Mexicans fought with resolution, and more than once seemed on the eve of victory, their immense superiority in numbers and heroic fighting were of no avail; they were signally defeated, losing, in killed and wounded, about two thousand. The loss of the Americans was between seven and eight hundred. Santa Anna made good his retreat with his

---

EVENTS OF 1847.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What, in the mean time, had been decided at Washington? 2. What plan of invasion was accordingly arranged? 3. How did this operate as regards Taylor's troops and command?

II. 4. Which was Taylor's last battle in Mexico? 5. When did it occur? 6. Give an account of it. 7. What loss did the Mexicans sustain? 8. What, the Americans? 9. What was the effect of the victory along the Rio Grande frontier?

disheartened followers, and, during the rest of the war, the Americans were left in quiet possession of the frontier of the Rio Grande and the valley of that river.

### SCOTT'S CAMPAIGN IN MEXICO.

III. Scott's campaign was commenced by an attack on Vera Cruz, which was defended by the strong fortress of San Juan de Ulloa (*san whahn dā ool-yo'-ah*), standing upon the island of the same name, about half a mile from the shore. On the 9th of March, 1847, he effected the landing of his entire army, consisting of twelve thousand troops, without the



least casualty; and the city was at once invested from shore to shore. After a delay of several days, for the purpose of completing preparations, and also to induce, if possible, the Mexican commander to surrender, the Americans opened a tremendous fire from their land batteries, as well as from their fleet, under Commodore Conner. The bombardment was continued for five days; and so destructive to life and property was it, that, on the 27th, the city and fortress were compelled to surrender.

IV. The march towards the interior was commenced on the 8th of April, the army taking the national road by the way of Jalapa (*hal-lah'-pah*). At Cerro Gordo (*thār'-ro gor'-do*),

III. QUESTIONS.—10. How did Scott begin his campaign? 11. How is Vera Cruz situated? (See map, p. 279.) 12. How was it defended? 13. When did Scott effect a landing? 14. Give an account of the operations that followed.

1847. a mountain pass, about fifty miles from Vera Cruz. Santa Anna was strongly fortified, prepared to resist the advance of the Americans. Scott had with him only about eight thousand men—those who were not sick and wounded having been left to garrison Vera Cruz and its fort—while Santa Anna had an army of nearly double the numerical strength of Scott's.

V. On the morning of the 18th, a daring assault was made upon the works of the enemy; and, before noon, the whole were in the possession of the Americans. Besides losing the most of their artillery and munitions of war, the Mexicans had one thousand of their number killed or wounded, and three thousand made prisoners. On the following day, April 19th, the Americans entered Jalapa: farther on in their march they took without opposition the strong castle of Perote (*pā-ro'-tā*), and, on the 15th of May, they entered the ancient and populous city of Puebla (*poo-ā'-blah*).

VI. The American army had been so reduced by sickness, death, and other causes, that Scott deemed it advisable to rest at Puebla for re-enforcements. After a halt of nearly three months, during which Santa Anna had time to create a new army and to fortify the capital, he resumed his march, passing through a beautiful region without the least resistance, and reaching the town of Ayotla (*ah-yot'-lah*), fifteen miles from the city of Mexico.

VII. Finding that the direct route by the national road was strongly fortified, and being anxious to spare the lives of

IV. QUESTIONS.—15. When did Scott march from Vera Cruz? 16. What road did he take? 17. How is Jalapa situated? (See map, p. 279.) 18. Where were the Mexicans posted to dispute Scott's advance? 19. What is said of the strength of the respective armies?

V. 20. Give an account of the battle of Cerro Gordo. 21. Give an account of the further advance of the Americans, and their three captures. 22. In what direction from Vera Cruz is Perote? (See map, p. 279.) 23. In what direction from Vera Cruz is Puebla? (See same map.)

VI. 24. At what place did Scott make a long rest? 25. Why did he remain there so long? 26. What advantage did this give to the Mexicans? 27. What is said of his further march?



his men, Scott\* turned southward, and, passing around Lake Chalco, encamped at San Augustin (*san aw-jus-teen'*), about ten miles from the capital. Thence the approaches to the city were guarded by batteries at Contreras (*con-trā'-ras*) and San Antonio, and by the strong forts of Churubusco (*choo-roo-boos'-co*) and Chapultepec (*chah-pool-tā-p k'*).

VIII. In a night march, the Americans advanced upon Contreras. At sunrise, on the 20th of August, they commenced the attack, and, in less than twenty minutes, the Mexican batteries were carried and the victory was complete. The garrison of San Antonio, being somewhat unsupported by the loss of Contreras, made but a slight resistance, and then retreated before the pursuing Americans, commanded by General Worth. On the same day, the 20th, a grand movement upon Churubusco was next directed, to which the victory already achieved opened the way. After an obstinate and bloody conflict, the Mexicans, who were commanded by Santa Anna, though numbering at least twenty-five thousand, were driven from the fort and from every part of the battlefield. Some retreated to Chapultepec, the fortress nearest the capital, and others fled to the city itself.



GENERAL SCOTT.

IX. On the day after these two battles, and while Scott was at an advanced position within three miles of the city, Santa Anna asked for an armistice, for the purpose, it was stated, of negotiating a peace. The request was granted, and

---

\* Winfield Scott was born in Petersburg, Virginia, in 1786.

VII. QUESTIONS.—28. Why did Scott turn southward from Ayotla? 29. Where did he encamp? 30. In what direction is San Augustin from the city of Mexico? (See map, p. 279.) 31. How were the approaches from San Augustin to the city of Mexico guarded?

VIII. 32. Give an account of the battle of Contreras. 33. Of Churnbusco.

1847. for several days efforts were made to bring the war to a close, but without success. The Mexican commander not only refused to agree to the terms proposed by the Americans; but, while offering others, more becoming a conqueror, he actually violated the armistice by strengthening his defenses.



SANTA ANNA.

X. Scott, losing all confidence in the integrity of his foe, declared the truce at an end, and ordered General Worth to storm the Molino del Rey (*mo-le'-no dāle rā*), an outer defense of Chapultepec. Accordingly, on the 8th of September, the attack was made; and, after a hard-fought battle, in which Worth\* lost nearly a fourth of his men, the Mexicans were driven from their position. Chapultepec itself, a strongly fortified castle, situated on

a lofty hill, was yet to be taken before the capital could be reached.

XI. Several batteries were erected to bear upon the place, and, on the 12th of September, a heavy fire was commenced, which made several breaches through the stone wall defenses. On the next day, the 13th, the battle of Chapultepec was fought. The Americans, in two columns, the one headed by

---

\* William Jenkins Worth was born in Hudson, Columbia Co., N. Y., in 1794. In the war of 1812 he performed an honorable part, being twice promoted, once for gallant conduct in the battle of Chippewa, and again for important service in the battle of Lundy's Lane. His distinguished services, in 1842, against the Florida Indians, were also rewarded by promotion. He was with Taylor in Mexico, and for his achievements in the battle of Monterey he was brevetted a major-general. Afterward he joined Scott's army. His death occurred in Texas, in 1849.

---

IX. QUESTIONS.—34. What request did Santa Anna make? 35. Where was Scott at the time? 36. How did Scott treat the request? 37. What followed for several days? 38. What perfidy was Santa Anna guilty of?

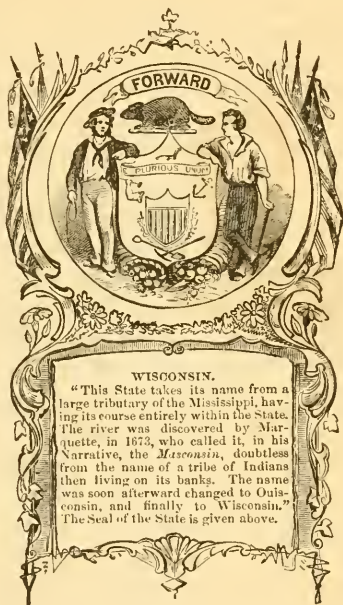
X. 39. What order did Scott give to Worth? 40. When was the battle of Molino del Rey fought? 41. Give an account of it. 42. What yet remained to be done?

XI. 43. How was Chapultepec menaced on the 12th of September? 44. Give an account of the next day's battle.

General Pillow, and the other by General Quitman, advanced to the assault, and in the most gallant style carried the out-works and then the castle, though at the expense of many lives.

XII. Quitman pursued the flying Mexicans; and at night his division rested within the gates of the city, while Worth's division, which had advanced by a circuitous route, halted in the suburbs. During the night, Santa Anna, with most of his army and the principal officers of government, fled from the city. On the following morning, September 14th, the American army passed into the city, and running up the United States flag on the national palace, took formal possession of the Mexican capital amid the greatest enthusiasm.

XIII. The Mexicans, taking advantage of the weakness of the garrison which Scott had left at Puebla, laid siege to the place; and, after Santa Anna's\* flight from the capital, he



\* Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna was born in Jalapa, Mexico, in 1798.

XII. QUESTIONS.—45. What is said of Quitman's and Worth's advance? 46. State what took place on the following morning.

XIII. 47. To what place in the mean time had the Mexicans laid siege? 48. What circumstance had induced them to commence the siege? 49. By whom were they joined during the siege? 50. Why did Santa Anna afterward leave the besiegers? 51. Give an account of the battle that followed.

joined the besiegers with some thousands of his fugitive troops. Learning that General Lane, with a body of recruits, was on his march from Vera Cruz to re-enforce Scott, Santa Anna left Puebla to intercept him. At Huamantla (*whah-mant'-lah*) the encounter took place, and though the Mexicans were vastly superior in numbers to the Americans, the result was, as usual, a total defeat to them.

XIV. On the 2d of February, 1848, a treaty of peace was signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo (*gwah-dah-loo'-pā e-dahl'-go*), a small town about four miles from the capital, and Mexico was soon after evacuated by the American armies. By the treaty, all the territory north of the Rio Grande, together with the whole of New Mexico and California, was relinquished to the United States. On the part of the United States, it was agreed that \$15,000,000 should be paid for the territory, and that debts due from Mexico to American citizens, to the amount of \$3,000,000, should be assumed. After the treaty had been ratified by both governments, peace was proclaimed by President Polk, on the 4th of July, 1848.

XIV. QUESTIONS.—52. When was a treaty of peace signed? 53. At what place? 54. What territory did the United States acquire by the treaty? 55. What amount of money was paid by the United States? 56. When did President Polk issue a proclamation of peace?

#### PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE WAR WITH MEXICO.

(The Americans were successful in every battle.)

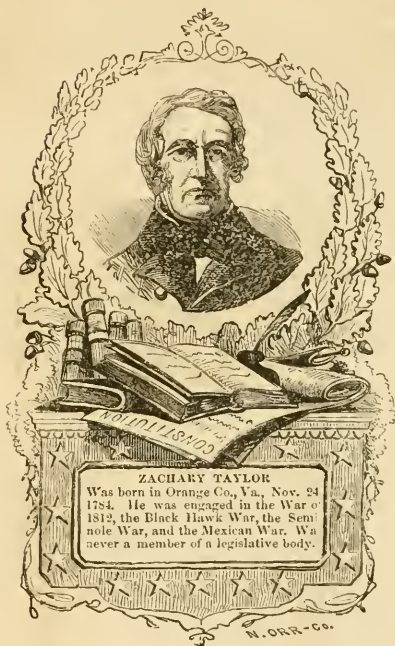
DATES.	BATTLES.	COMMANDERS.		FORCES ENGAGED.	
		AMERICAN.	MEXICAN.	AMER.	MEX.
1846.					
May 8.	Palo Alto.....	Taylor....	Arista.....	2,300	6,000
May 9.	Resaca de la Palma.	Taylor....	Arista.....	2,200	5,000
Sept. 24.	Monterey.....	Taylor....	Ampudia....	6,600	10,000
Dec. 25.	Bracito.....	Doniphan.	Ponce de Leon.	500	1,200
1847.					
Feb. 23.	Buena Vista.....	Taylor....	Santa Anna....	4,700	17,000
Feb. 28.	Sacramento.....	Doniphan.	Trias.....	900	4,000
March 27.	Vera Cruz.....	Scott.....	Morales.....	12,000	6,000
April 18.	Cerro Gordo.....	Scott.....	Santa Anna....	8,500	12,000
Aug. 20.	Contreras.....	Scott.....	Valencia.....	4,000	7,000
	Churubusco.....	Scott.....	Santa Anna....	8,000	25,000
Sept. 8.	Molino del Rey....	Worth....	Alvarez.....	3,500	14,000
Sept. 13.	Chapultepec.....	Scott.....	Bravo.....	7,200	25,000
Oct. 9.	Huamantla.....	Lane.....	Santa Anna....	500	1,000

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. What event took place on the 4th of March, 1845 ?.....	269
2. By what process did Texas become a State of the Union ?	266, 269
3. What was the consequence of the annexation of Texas ? ....	270
4. Why did Mexico consider the annexation a cause of war ?....	270
5. What powers had acknowledged the independence of Texas ?.	270
6. Why did Taylor take his army from Louisiana to Texas ?	270, 271
7. What conflicting boundary claims grew out of the annexation ?	271
8. Why did Taylor advance to the Rio Grande ?.....	271
9. How was the advance of Taylor treated by the Mexicans ?.....	271
10. Where did Taylor establish a dépôt ?.....	271
11. Where did he take a position and erect a fortress ?.....	271
12. What misfortune occurred on the 26th of April, 1846 ?.....	272
13. How did the news of the affair affect the people of the U.S. ?..	272
14. What effect did it have upon the President and Congress ?....	272
15. What movements led to the battle of Palo Alto ?.....	272
16. Give an account of the battle, with its results... ..	272, 273
17. Give the preliminaries of the battle of Resaca de la Palma.....	273
18. Give an account of the battle, with its results.....	273
19. What took place at Fort Brown during Taylor's absence ?....	273
20. When did Taylor enter and leave Matamoras ?.....	273, 274
21. Give the preliminaries of the battle of Monterey.....	274
22. Give an account of the battle, with its result.....	274
23. By whom were Saltillo, Victoria, and Tampico taken ?.....	274
24. What can you state of Gen. Wool's march ?....	274, 275
25. Give an account of Gen. Kearny's expedition.....	275
26. Of Doniphan's expedition and two battles.....	275, 276
27. Of Fremont and his expedition to California.....	276
28. What was done by Fremont in March, 1846 ?.....	276, 277
29. Give an account of Fremont's further operations.....	277
30. What was done in July, 1846, and by Com. Stockton ?.....	277
31. Give an account of the battle of Buena Vista, with its results..	278
32. Give an account of the taking of Vera Cruz.....	279
33. Give an account of the battle of Cerro Gordo.....	279, 280
34. Of Scott's progress from Cerro Gordo to San Augustin....	280, 281
35. Of the battles of Contreras and Churubusco.....	281
36. What efforts were made to negotiate a peace ?.....	281, 282
37. Give an account of the battle of the Molino del Rey.....	282
38. Of Santa Anna's flight and the taking of the city of Mexico....	283
39. Of the siege of Puebla and battle of Huamantla.....	283, 284
40. Of the treaty of peace, with its principal provisions.....	284



## TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION.



**ZACHARY TAYLOR**  
Was born in Orange Co., Va., Nov. 24  
1784. He was engaged in the War of  
1812, the Black Hawk War, the Semi-  
nole War, and the Mexican War. Was  
never a member of a legislative body.

I. POLK's successor in the presidency was General Zachary Taylor, the hero who had achieved such brilliant victories in the war with Mexico. His inauguration took place at Washington, on the 5th of March, 1849,\* the 4th being Sunday. One of the earliest and most difficult of the questions which commanded the attention of his administration, grew out of the acquisition of California and New Mexico.

II. In February, 1848, gold began to

be found in California in large quantities. When the news of the discovery reached the Atlantic States, and spread throughout the other States, a wonderful excitement was at once created, and in a very short time thousands of emigrants were

\* President Taylor's cabinet consisted of John M. Clayton, Secretary of State; William M. Meredith, Secretary of the Treasury; George W. Crawford, Secretary of War; William B. Preston, Secretary of the Navy; Thomas Ewing, Secretary of the Interior; Jacob Collamer, Postmaster-General; and Reverdy Johnson, Attorney-General. The department of the Interior had been created by Congress on the 3d of March, two days before Taylor's inauguration.

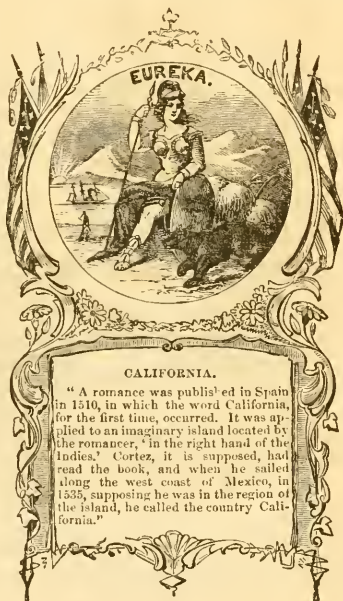
TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. Who succeeded Polk in the Presidency? 2. When was Taylor inaugurated?

11. 3. When was an important discovery made in California? 4. What was it? 5. What was the consequence?



on their way to the land of gold. The rush thither was truly marvelous; not only did people go from the United States, but they likewise flocked from Europe, Asia, South America, and even the isles of the sea.

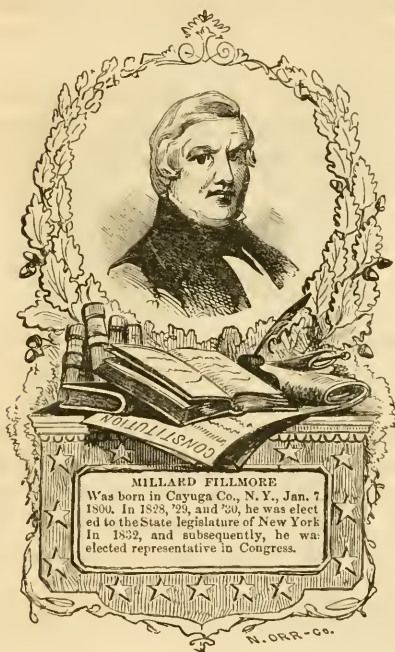
III. So rapidly did the territory become populated, that in September, 1849, there was a sufficient number of settlers there to constitute a State; and a constitution was then adopted, preparatory to petitioning Congress for admission into the Union. An article of the Constitution, by which slavery was excluded from California, became a cause for a violent dispute, not only in Congress, but in the legislatures of the several States, and among the people throughout the Union. While Congress was in session, engaged in angry debate, President Taylor, after an administration of only one year, four months, and four days, died on the 9th of May, 1850, at the presidential mansion.



III. QUESTIONS.—6. What did the people of California do in September, 1849? 7. What became a cause for a violent dispute in Congress and elsewhere? 8. What calamity befell the nation while Congress was in session?

## FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. By the death of Taylor, the Vice-President of the United States, Millard Fillmore, became President, taking the oath of office on the 10th of May, 1850.\*



II. The question in relation to the admission of California had been greatly complicated in Congress, by the application of New Mexico for admission into the Union, and by a claim on the part of Texas to a large portion of New Mexico. For the purpose of making "an amicable arrangement of all questions in controversy between the Free and the Slave States growing out of the subject of slavery," Henry Clay made a proposition, known as the "Omnibus Bill,"

or the "Compromise Act of 1850."

\* President Fillmore's cabinet was constituted as follows: Daniel Webster, Secretary of State; Thomas Corwin, Secretary of the Treasury; Charles M. Conrad, Secretary of War; Alexander H. H. Stuart, Secretary of the Interior; William A. Graham, Secretary of the Navy; Nathan K. Hall, Postmaster-General; and John J. Crittenden, Attorney-General.

FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. Who succeeded Taylor?

II. 2. How had the question of California's admission been complicated? 3. What was the object of the "Omnibus Bill?" 4. Who offered that bill? 5. By what other name is it also known?

III. Although Mr. Clay's proposition did not pass Congress in the shape offered, the result aimed at was attained, after Taylor's death, by separate bills. These provided for the admission of California as a free State; territorial governments for New Mexico and Utah, leaving the admission or exclusion of slavery to be decided by the people of the respective territories; the settlement of the claim made by Texas; the abolition of the slave-trade in the District of Columbia; and the surrender of fugitives from labor, this last bill being known as the "Fugitive Slave Law."

IV. Fillmore remained President during the unexpired part of the term for which Taylor was elected, a period of nearly two years and eight months, when he was succeeded by Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire.

## PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. PIERCE was President for only one term, or four years, extending from the 4th of March, 1853,\* the day of his inauguration, to the 4th of March, 1857.

II. His administration had scarcely commenced when the controversy was renewed between the slaveholding and non-slaveholding sections of the Union, the one being in favor of, and the other opposed to, the extension of slavery into the Territories of the United States. This fresh outbreak

---

\* President Pierce's cabinet was as follows: Willism L. Marcy, Secretary of State; James Guthrie, Secretary of the Treasury; Jefferson Davis, Secretary of War; James C. Dobbin, Secretary of the Navy; Robert McClelland, Secretary of the Interior; James Campbell, Postmaster-General; and Caleb Cushing, Attorney-General.

---

III. QUESTIONS.—6. In what shape did Mr. Clay's bill afterward appear? 7. What did the separate bills provide for? 8. What was the object of the "Fugitive Slave Law?"

IV. 9. For how long a time was Fillmore President? 10. By whom was he succeeded?

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. 1. When was Pierce inaugurated? 2. How long was he President?

II. 3. What controversy was renewed at the beginning of his administration? 4. What were the slaveholding States in favor of? 5. What the non-slaveholding? 6. How did this fresh outbreak begin?



had its origin mainly with Congress, in the introduction there of what is known as the "Kansas - Nebraska Bill."

III. By the "Missouri Compromise Bill," passed in 1820, it was provided that, in consideration of the admission of Missouri as a Slave State, slavery should forever be prohibited in all the remaining territories of the United States north of latitude thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes, the southern boundary of that

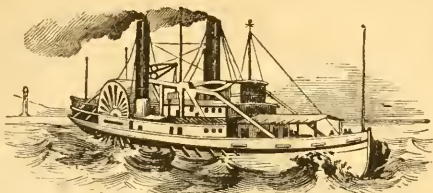
State. By the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill," which Congress passed in 1854, this prohibition was repealed, and the two territories of Kansas and Nebraska were duly organized.

IV. No sooner had the bill passed than emigrants from both sections of the Union began to pour into Kansas, those from the North being determined to make it a free State, while those from the South were equally resolved the other way. And with such undue zeal was the strife carried on, that frequent collisions took place, in which blood was sometimes shed.

III. QUESTIONS.—7. When was the "Missouri Compromise Bill" passed? 8. What was its important provision? 9. When was the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill" passed? 10. What was its important provision?

IV. 11. What began to be done as soon as the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill" was passed? 12. What were the people of the North determined upon? 13. What those of the South?

V. The Kansas controversy, in Congress and everywhere else throughout the Union, as well as the strife in the Territory, contin-



RIVER STEAMER.

ued all through Pierce's administration, and into and nearly to the close of his successor's. In the course of the debate in Congress, Mr. Sumner, of Massachusetts, made a speech, partly directed against South Carolina and some of her representatives. For this he was afterward assaulted by a representative from that State, while writing at his desk in the Senate-chamber, and so seriously injured that he was not able to resume his legislative duties until two years after.

## BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. JAMES BUCHANAN of Pennsylvania, Pierce's successor in the presidency, was inaugurated at Washington on the 4th of March, 1857.\* His administration continued one term, ending on the 4th of March, 1861.

II. The slavery question continued to be the prominent topic of discussion in Congress and throughout the country during the four years of his administration, and, even in the last one, the Kansas strife seemed very little nearer a conclusion than it had been at any previous time. As his term of office drew towards its close, no less than four candidates were nominated to succeed him.

---

\* President Buchanan's cabinet was constituted as follows: Lewis Cass, Secretary of State; Howell Cobb, Secretary of the Treasury; John B. Floyd, Secretary of War; Isaac Toucey, Secretary of the Navy; Jacob Thompson, Secretary of the Interior; Aaron V. Brown, Postmaster-General; and Jeremiah S. Black, Attorney-General.

V. QUESTIONS.—14. How long did the Kansas controversy continue? 15. What affair took place in the course of the debate in Congress?

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.—I. 1. Who succeeded Pierce in the presidency? 2. When was Buchanan inaugurated?

II. 3. What is said of the slavery question? 4. Of the Kansas strife? 5. Of presidential successors?





III. The Democratic party was divided between Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky. The Republican party, opposed to the further extension of slavery, nominated Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois; while the American party presented for its candidate John C. Bell, of Tennessee. After an exciting canvass, in which the slavery question was the all-absorbing one, the election resulted in the success of the Republican nominee.

IV. When it became known that Lincoln would be the next President, public meetings were held in Charleston and elsewhere in South Carolina, at which resolutions were adopted in favor of the secession of the State from the Union. In pursuance of a special act of the South Carolina legislature, delegates were elected to assemble in convention at Columbia on the 17th of December, 1860. They accordingly met, but, in consequence of the prevalence of small-pox in that city, an adjournment to Charleston took place, where, on

III. QUESTIONS.—6. How was the Democratic party divided? 7. Who were the other candidates? 8. To what was the Republican party opposed? 9. What was the result of the election?

IV. 10. When Lincoln's success became known, how did the people of South Carolina act? 11. What convention was held in the State? 12. What was done by the convention?



the 20th of December, an ordinance of secession was unanimously passed.

V. In the mean time a great deal of interest was felt respecting the forts in Charleston harbor, only one of which — Fort Moultrie — was garrisoned. Threats had been uttered and demonstrations made which rendered it probable that they would be seized by the South Carolinians. Towards the close of December, as the danger of an attack upon Fort Moultrie became more imminent, the commander, Major Anderson,\* convinced that his position there would not be tenable if attacked by well-organized and disciplined troops, on the 26th of December, 1860, withdrew the garrison, which consisted of only about eighty men, and established himself at Fort Sumter.

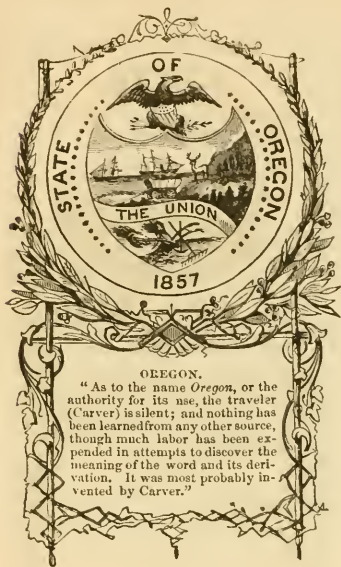


VI. The excitement in Charleston, produced by this act of removal, was intense; and it spread with lightning speed over the whole State. The authorities of South Carolina at once

\* Major Robert Anderson was born near Louisville, Ky., in 1805. In 1825, he was graduated at West Point. He was in the Seminole War, and with Scott's army in the Mexican War. At the battle of the Molino del Rey he was severely wounded. In May, 1861, he was made brigadier-general in the U. S. army.

V. QUESTIONS.—13. What interest was felt in the mean time? 14. What was the ground of concern respecting the forts? 15. Who commanded Fort Moultrie? 16. How many men did Anderson have with him? 17. What movement did he make? 18. Why did he make the movement?

VI. 19. How did Anderson's removal influence the people of Charleston and the other parts of the State? 20. What buildings did the State authorities seize? 21. What disposition did they make of troops? 22. What was done with a view to a Southern Confederacy?



MAJOR ANDERSON.

seized the United States custom-house, post-office, and arsenal, at Charleston, and sent troops to occupy Castle Pinckney and Fort Moultrie, in the harbor of that city; and, at the close of the month, the State sent Commissioners to the other Slave States, with a view to the formation of a Southern Confederacy.

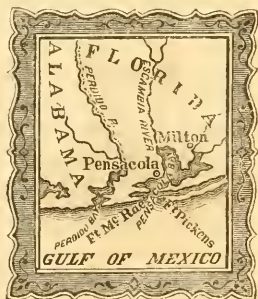
VII. On the 10th of January, 1861, the steamer *Star* of the West, which had been dispatched from New York with supplies and re-enforcements for Fort Sumter, arrived off Charleston, and was fired upon and driven back to sea by batteries erected to command the entrance of the harbor. The *Star* of the West thereupon returned to New York. During this month, January, five States, viz.: Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, and Louisiana, following the lead of South Carolina, passed secession ordinances, and, on the 1st

VII. QUESTIONS.—23. Give the account connected with the *Star* of the West.  
24. How many States, in January, 1861, followed the lead of South Carolina? 25. When did Texas secede?

of February, Texas did the same.

VIII. Nearly all the forts, arsenals, navy-yards, and custom-houses within these States, and which belonged to the United States, were seized by the secessionists. Fort Sumter, still held by Major Anderson, and Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, which had been saved by the decided action of its commander, Lieutenant Slemmer, were the only important forts which remained in the possession of the general government on the 1st of February. The posts at the southern extremity of Florida also remained in the hands of the government.

IX. In the mean time, upon the recommendation of the legislature of Virginia, delegates had been appointed by twenty-one States to a so-called "Peace Conference," to decide upon a plan "for a settlement of all difficulties and the preservation of the Union." The convention assembled at Washing-



PENSACOLA AND VICINITY.

VIII. QUESTIONS.—26. What is said of the seizure of forts, arsenals, &c.? 27. Of Forts Sumter and Pickens? 28. How is Fort Sumter situated? (See map, p. 129.) 29. How is Fort Pickens situated? (See map, p. 295.) 30. What southern posts remained in the hands of the government?

ton, on the 4th of February, and was organized by the unanimous election of ex-President Tyler as chairman. After a session of three weeks it adjourned; and the result of its labors, a series of proposed amendments to the Constitution, was laid before Congress, but without meeting the approval of that body.



FORT SUMTER.

X. On the very day upon which the "Peace Congress" assembled, February 4th, a congress, composed of delegates from six of the Southern States, met at Montgomery, Ala.; and, four days after, organized a Confederacy, by the adoption of a "Provincial Constitution," calling it the "Confederate States of America." This constitution was superseded, in little more than a month, by one intended to be permanent. On the 9th of February, Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was elected President of the Confederacy by the Montgomery Congress, and, on the 18th, he was duly inaugurated.

XI. In this distracted and sad condition were the affairs of the country upon the retirement of Buchanan from the presidency, and the assumption of the office by Lincoln.

---

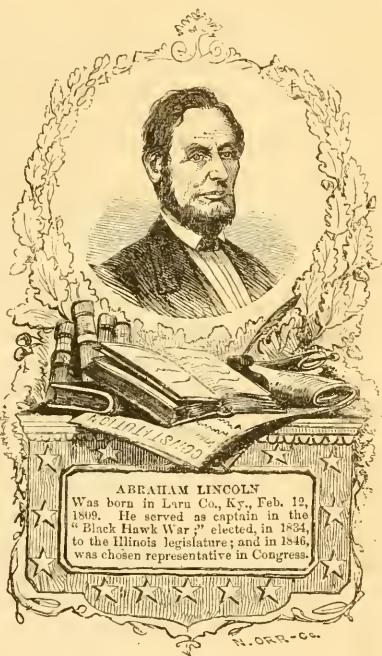
IX. QUESTIONS.—31. When and where did the "Peace Convention" meet? 32. How many States were represented there? 33. Upon whose recommendation had the delegates been chosen? 34. Who was chosen president of the convention? 35. Give a further account of the convention and its doings.

X. 36. Where did a second convention meet on the 4th of February? 37. What States were represented in that convention? 38. What was done by the convention? 39. What was done on the 9th and 18th of February?

## SECTION IX.

## LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.

I. ON the 11th of February, 1861, Lincoln left his home at Springfield, Illinois, for Washington. On his way he made brief stops at various cities, and was everywhere received with great enthusiasm. It had been arranged that his route from Harrisburgh should be through Baltimore, but, in consequence of the excited state of feeling existing between the political clubs of the last-named city, and desiring to prevent an anticipated outrage, he made a night journey, arriving



in Washington at an early hour on the morning of the 22d of February. His inauguration took place on the 4th of March, "amid a greater display of military force than had ever before been witnessed on such an occasion."\*

\* President Lincoln's cabinet was constituted as follows: William H. Seward, Secretary of State; Salmon P. Chase, Secretary of the Treasury; Simon Cameron, Secretary of War; Gideon Welles, Secretary of the Navy; Caleb B. Smith, Secretary of the Interior; Edward Bates, Attorney-General; and Montgomery Blair, Postmaster-General.



## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

### OF IMPORTANT EVENTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

- 1492. America discovered by Christopher Columbus, . . . . . Oct. 4.
- 1497. Labrador discovered by John and Sebastian Cabot, . . . July 3.
- 1498. Coast of North America explored by Sebastian Cabot.  
Continent of South America discovered by Columbus, Aug. 10.
- 1499. South America visited by Amerigo Vespucci.
- 1512. Florida discovered by Juan Ponce de Leon, . . . . . April 6.
- 1513. The Pacific Ocean discovered by Vasco Nuñez de Balboa, Sept. 29.
- 1520. Carolina visited by Lucas Vasquez de Aylo
- 1521. Mexico conquered by Fernando Cortez.
- 1524. Coast of North America explored by John Verrazani.
- 1528. The conquest of Florida undertaken by Pamphilo de  
Narvaez.
- 1534. The St. Lawrence River discovered by James Cartier, June.
- 1539. Ferdinand de Soto undertook to conquer Florida.
- 1541. The Mississippi River discovered by De Soto.
- 1562. Colony of Huguenots settled at Port Royal entrance.
- 1564. Colony of Huguenots settled in Florida.
- 1565. St. Augustine, Florida, founded by the Spaniards, . . . . . Sept. 18.  
Huguenot colony in Florida destroyed by the Spaniards, Oct. 1.
- 1583. Newfoundland taken possession of by Sir H. Gilbert..
- 1584. Amidas and Barlow explored the coast of North Caro-  
lina.
- 1585. First attempt to form a settlement at Roanoke.
- 1587. Second attempt to form a settlement at Roanoke.
- 1602. Cape Cod discovered by Bartholomew Gosnold, . . . . . May 24.
- 1605. Port Royal, in Nova Scotia, settled by the French.
- 1606. London and Plymouth Companies received charters, . . April 20.
- 1607. Jamestown settled by the London Company, . . . . . May 23.  
The Plymouth Company began a settlement on the  
Kennebec River, . . . . . Aug. 21.
- 1608. Quebec settled by the French, under Champlain, . . . . . July 3.
- 1609. Virginia received its second charter, . . . . . June 2.  
The Hudson River discovered by Henry Hudson, . . . Sept. 21.
- 1610. "The Starving Time" in Virginia.
- 1612. Virginia received its third charter, . . . . . March 22.
- 1613. Pocahontas married to Rolfe, . . . . . April.



- 
1613. French settlements in Maine and Nova Scotia destroyed  
by Samuel Argall.
1614. The coast of New England explored by John Smith.  
New York settled by the Dutch.
1616. The culture of tobacco commenced in Virginia.
1620. Commencement of Negro slavery in the English colonies, Aug.  
Charter granted to "The Council of Plymouth," ..... Nov. 3.  
Massachusetts settled at Plymouth, ..... Dec. 21.
1621. Treaty with Massasoit made, ..... April 1.
1622. First Indian massacre in Virginia, ..... April 1.
1623. New Hampshire settled at Little Harbor and Dover...
1633. Connecticut settled at Windsor, ..... Oct.
1634. Maryland settled at St. Mary's, ..... April 6.
1636. Rhode Island settled at Providence.  
Harvard College founded.
1637. The Pequod War.
1638. Delaware settled near Wilmington, ..... April.
1641. New Hampshire settlements united to Massachusetts.
1643. Union of New England colonies formed, ..... May 29.
1644. Second Indian massacre in Virginia, ..... April.
1645. Clayborne's Rebellion in Maryland.
1650. North Carolina settled on the Chowan River.
1651. The "Navigation Act" passed by Parliament.
1652. The Maine settlements united to Massachusetts.
1655. Civil War in Maryland.  
New Sweden conquered by the Dutch, ..... Oct.
1663. Carolina granted to Clarendon and others.
1664. New York became an English Province, ..... Sept. 8.  
New Jersey settled at Elizabethtown.
1670. South Carolina settled on the Ashley River.
1673. Virginia granted to Culpepper and Arlington.
1675. King Philip's war commenced, by an attack upon Swan-  
zey, ..... July 4.
1676. Bacon's Rebellion.
1680. Charleston founded.  
New Hampshire made a Royal Province, ..... Sept. 28.
1682. Pennsylvania settled.  
Delaware granted by the Duke of York to William Penn, Aug. 31.
1686. Andros arrived at Boston as governor of New England, Dec. 30.
1689. King William's War commenced. Attack upon Dover, July 7.
1690. Schenectady, burned by the French and Indians, ..... Feb. 8.  
Port Royal taken by the English under Phipps, ..... May.

1692. "Salem Witchcraft" delusion prevailed.
1697. King William's War terminated by the "Treaty of Ryswick," ..... Sept. 20.
1702. Queen Anne's War commenced.
1710. Port Royal, Nova Scotia, captured by the English,... Oct. 13.
1713. Queen Anne's War terminated by the "Treaty of Utrecht," ..... April 11.
1729. North and South Carolina became separate provinces, July.
1732. Washington born in Westmoreland county, Virginia,. Feb. 22.
1733. Georgia settled at Savannah, ..... Feb. 12.
1741. "The Negro Plot" in New York.
1744. King George's War commenced in America.
1745. Louisburg captured by the English, ..... June 28.
1748. King George's War terminated by the "Treaty of Aix la Chapelle," ..... Oct. 18.
1753. Washington sent with a letter from Dinwiddie, ..... Oct. 31.
1754. Washington delivered St. Pierre's reply to Dinwiddie,. Dec. 11.
- The battle of the Great Meadows, ..... May 28.
- Congress of Commissioners met at Albany ..... June.
- The battle of Fort Necessity, ..... July 4.
1755. French expelled from Nova Scotia by Monckton, .... June.
- Braddock's defeat at the battle of Monongahela, ..... July 9.
- The British defeat by Dieskau near Lake George, ..... Sept. 8.
- Dieskau defeated by the British at Lake George, ..... Sept. 8.
1756. Great Britain declared war against France, .... May 17.
- France declared war against Great Britain, ..... June 9.
- The French, under Montcalm, captured Oswego, .... Aug. 14.
- Indians defeated at Kittaning, ..... Sept. 8.
1757. Fort William Henry surrendered to Montcalm, ..... Aug. 9.
- The massacre at Fort William Henry, ..... Aug. 10.
1758. Lord Howe killed in a skirmish near Ticonderoga, ... July 6.
- Abercrombie repulsed by Montcalm at Ticonderoga, ... July 8.
- Louisburg taken by Amherst and Wolfe, ..... July 26.
- Fort Frontenac surrendered to the English, ..... Aug. 27.
- Grant defeated by Amherst near Fort Duquesne ..... Sept. 21.
1759. Ticonderoga and Crown Point abandoned by the French.
- Niagara surrendered to the English, under Johnson, ... July 25.
- Battle of Montmorency, ..... July 31.
- Battle of the Plains of Abraham, ..... Sept. 13.
- Quebec surrendered to the English, ..... Sept. 18.
1760. The French, under De Levi, attempted the recovery of Quebec (battle three miles above the city), ..... April 28.

1760. Montreal and the rest of Canada surrendered to the English, ..... Sept. 8.
1763. The peace of Paris between Great Britain and France, Feb. 10.  
Florida ceded to Great Britain by Spain, ..... Feb. 10.
1765. The Stamp Act passed by Parliament, ..... March 8.  
A colonial Congress met at New York, ..... Oct. 7.
1766. The Stamp Act repealed by Parliament, ..... March 18.
1767. A bill imposing duties on glass, paper, etc., passed, ... June 29.
1768. A body of British troops arrived at Boston, ..... Sept. 27.
1770. "The Boston Massacre," ..... March 5.  
All duties, except on tea, repealed by Parliament, .... April 12.
1773. The cargoes of tea at Boston thrown overboard, ..... Dec. 16.
1774. "Boston Port Bill" passed by Parliament, ..... March.  
"The First Continental Congress" met at Philadelphia, Sept. 5.
1775. The battle of Lexington, ..... April 19.  
Ticonderoga, New York, captured by Allen and Arnold, May 10.  
Crown Point, New York, captured by the Americans, .. May 12.  
Washington elected commander-in-chief, ..... June 15.  
The battle of Bunker Hill, ..... June 17.  
Washington took command of the army, ..... July 12.  
Montreal surrendered to Montgomery, ..... Nov. 13.  
Battle of Quebec, ..... Dec. 31.
1776. Norfolk, Virginia, destroyed by Lord Dunmore, ..... Jan. 1.  
Boston evacuated by the British troops, ..... March 1.  
The battle of Fort Moultrie, South Carolina, ..... June 28.  
The Declaration of Independence, ..... July 4.  
The battle of Long Island, New York, ..... Aug. 27.  
The city of New York abandoned by the Americans, ... Sept. 15.  
The battle of White Plains, New York, ..... Oct. 28.  
The battle of Fort Washington, New York, ..... Nov. 16.  
Fort Lee, New Jersey, taken by the British, ..... Nov. 18.  
Gen. Lee surprised and taken prisoner, ..... Dec. 13.  
The battle of Trenton, New Jersey, ..... Dec. 26.
1777. The battle of Princeton, New Jersey, ..... Jan. 3.  
Tryon's first expedition against Connecticut, ..... April.  
Meigs's expedition against the British at Sagg Harbor, May 23.  
Invasion of New York by Burgoyne, ..... June.  
Ticonderoga abandoned by the Americans, ..... July 5.  
The battle of Hubbardtown, Vermont, ..... July 7.  
Gen. Prescott captured by Colonel Barton, ..... July 10.  
Murder of Miss Jane McCrea, near Fort Edward, .... July 27.  
Fort Schuyler, New York, besieged by St. Leger, .... Aug.

- 
1777. The battle of Oriskany, near Fort Schuyler,..... Aug 6.  
 The battle of Fort Schuyler,..... Aug. 6.  
 The battle of Bennington, Vermont,..... Aug. 16.  
 The battle of Brandywine, Pennsylvania,..... Sept. 11.  
 The battle of Bemis Heights, or first of Stillwater,... Sept. 19.  
 The battle of Paoli, Pennsylvania,..... Sept. 20.  
 Philadelphia entered by the British,..... Sept. 26.  
 The battle of Germantown, Pennsylvania,..... Oct. 4.  
 Forts Clinton and Montgomery taken by the British,.. Oct. 6.  
 The battle of Saratoga, second of Stillwater,..... Oct. 7.  
 The surrender of Burgoyne,..... Oct. 17.  
 The British repulsed at Fort Mercer, New Jersey,... Oct. 22.  
 The British repulsed at Fort Mifflin, Pennsylvania,... Oct. 22.  
 Articles of Confederation adopted by Congress,..... Nov. 15.  
 Fort Mifflin abandoned by the Americans,..... Nov. 16.  
 Washington encamped at Valley Forge, Pennsylvania, Dec. 11.
1778. American Independence acknowledged by France,... Feb. 6.  
 Treaty of Alliance with France,..... Feb. 6.  
 British commissioners sent to America.  
 Philadelphia evacuated by the British,..... June 18.  
 The battle of Monmouth, New Jersey,..... June 28.  
 The battle of Wyoming, Pennsylvania, and massacre, July 3.  
 The French fleet under D'Estaing arrived,..... July 11.  
 The battle of Rhode Island,..... Aug. 29.  
 Grey's ravaging expedition to the eastward,..... Sept.  
 Ferguson's expedition against Egg Harbor,..... Oct.  
 The massacre at Cherry Valley, New York,..... Nov. 11, 12  
 The battle of Savannah, Georgia,..... Dec. 29.
1779. Sunbury, Georgia, captured by the British,..... Jan. 9.  
 The battle of Kettle Creek, Georgia,..... Feb. 14.  
 The battle of Brier Creek, Georgia,..... March 3.  
 Tyron's second expedition against Connecticut, ..... March.  
 Stony Point, New York, captured by the British,..... May 31.  
 Verplanck's Point, New York, captured by the British, June 1.  
 War declared against Great Britain by Spain, ..... June 26.  
 The battle of Stono Ferry, South Carolina..... June 20.  
 Tryon's third expedition against Connecticut..... July.  
 The battle of Stony Point, New York, ..... July 15.  
 British Garrison at Paulus Hook surprised by Lee,.. July 19.  
 The battle of the Penobscot, Maine,..... Aug. 13.  
 Sullivan's expedition against the Indians.  
 "The battle of the Chemung," New York,..... Aug. 29.

1779. Savannah besieged by the French and Americans,.... Sept. Oct.  
 Jones's naval battle off the coast of England,..... Sept. 23.  
 D'Estaing and Lincoln repulsed at Savannah,..... Oct. 9.
1780. Charleston besieged by the British, ..... Ap. May.  
 The battle of Monk's Corner, South Carolina,..... April 14.  
 Charleston surrendered to the British,..... May 12.  
 The battle of Waxhaw, South Carolina,..... May 29.  
 The battle of Springfield, New Jersey,..... June 23.  
 French fleet arrived at Newport, Rhode Island,..... July 10.  
 The battle of Rocky Mount, South Carolina,..... July 30.  
 The battle of Hanging Rock, South Carolina,..... Aug. 6.  
 The battle of Sanders Creek, South Carolina,..... Aug. 16.  
 The battle of Fishing Creek, South Carolina,..... Aug. 18.  
 Arnold's treason.  
 André executed as a spy at Tappan, New York,..... Oct. 2.  
 The battle of King's Mountain, South Carolina,..... Oct. 7.  
 The battle of Fishdam Ford, South Carolina,..... Nov. 12.  
 The battle of Blackstocks, South Carolina,..... Nov. 20.
1781. Revolt of the Pennsylvania troops, ..... Jan. 1.  
 The battle of the Cowpens, South Carolina,..... Jan. 17.  
 The revolt of New Jersey troops,..... Jan. 18.  
 Arnold's depredation in Virginia, ..... Jan.  
 Cornwallis's pursuit of Morgan and Greene, ..... Jan. Feb.  
 Articles of Confederation ratified by the States.  
 The battle of Guilford Court-House, North Carolina,.. March 15.  
 The battle of Hobkirk's Hill, South Carolina,..... April 25.  
 Siege of Ninety-Six by General Greene..... May, Jun.  
 The battle of Ninety-Six, South Carolina,..... June 18.  
 Colonel Hayne executed by the British at Charleston, July 31.  
 Arnold's expedition against Connecticut, ..... Sept.  
 The battle of Fort Griswold, Connecticut, ..... Sept. 6.  
 The battle of Eutaw Springs, South Carolina,..... Sept. 8.  
 The siege of Yorktown, Virginia, ..... Oct.  
 The surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown,..... Oct. 19.
1782. Preliminary articles of peace signed at Paris,..... Nov. 30.  
 Cessation of hostilities proclaimed in the American  
 army, ..... April 19.  
 Savannah, Georgia, evacuated by the British,..... July 11.  
 Definitive treaty of peace signed at Paris,..... Sept. 3.  
 American army disbanded by orders of Congress,... Nov. 3.  
 New York evacuated by the British, ..... Nov. 25.  
 Charleston, South Carolina, evacuated by the British, Dec. 14.

- 
1783. Washington resigns his commission,..... Dec. 23.
1787. Shays's Rebellion in Massachusetts.  
 Constitution of the United States agreed on by the  
 convention of delegates at Philadelphia,..... Sept. 17.
1789. The first Congress under the Constitution met at New  
 York,..... March 4.  
 Washington inaugurated President of the United States, April 30.
1790. Harmar defeated by the Indians in Indiana,..... Oct. 17, 22
1791. United States Bank established at Philadelphia.  
 Vermont admitted into the Union,..... Feb. 18.  
 St. Clair defeated by the Indians in Ohio,..... Nov. 4.
1792. Kentucky admitted into the Union!
1793. The difficulties with France.
1794. Wayne defeated the Indians on the Maumee,..... Aug. 20.  
 "Whisky Insurrection" in Pennsylvania.
1795. "Jay's Treaty" with Great Britain ratified,..... June 24.  
 Treaties with the Western Indians, Spain, and Algiers,
1796. Tennessee admitted into the Union,..... June.
1797. John Adams inaugurated President of the United  
 States,..... March 4
1799. The death of Washington,..... Dec. 14.
1800. The seat of government removed to Washington.  
 Treaty of peace conducted with France,..... Sept. 30.
1801. Thomas Jefferson inaugurated President,..... March 4.  
 War declared against the United States by Tripoli,..... June 10.
1802. Ohio admitted into the Union.
1803. Louisiana purchased of France,..... April 30.  
 Commodore Preble sent against Tripoli.
1804. The frigate Philadelphia destroyed by Decatur,..... Feb. 3.  
 The duel between Hamilton and Burr,..... July 11.
1805. Derne, a Tripolitan city, captured by Eaton,..... April 27.  
 Treaty of peace concluded with Tripoli,..... June 3.
1806. British blockade from the Elbe to Brest declared,..... May 16.  
 Bonaparte issued his "Berlin Decree,"..... Nov. 21.  
 American frigate Chesapeake attacked by the Leopard, . June 22.
1807. British "Orders in Council" prohibited coast trade  
 with France,..... Jan. 7.  
 British armed vessels ordered to leave the United States, July.  
 British "Orders in Council" prohibited all trade with  
 France and her allies,..... Nov. 11.  
 Aaron Burr tried for treason, and acquitted,..... Sept.  
 Bonaparte issued his "Milan Decree,"..... Dec. 17.



1807. Embargo on American ships laid by Congress, . . . . . Dec. 22.
1809. Commerce with Great Britain and France interdicted  
by Congress, . . . . . March 1.  
James Madison inaugurated President, . . . . . March 4.
1811. Action between the President and Little Belt, . . . . . May 16.  
Battle of Tippecanoe, Indiana, . . . . . Nov. 7.
1812. Louisiana admitted into the Union.  
War against Great Britain proclaimed by the United  
States, . . . . . June 19.  
Invasion of Canada by Gen. Hull, . . . . . July 12.  
Surrender of Fort Mackinaw, Michigan, . . . . . July 17.  
The first battle of Brownstown, Michigan, . . . . . Aug. 5.  
The second battle of Brownstown, . . . . . Aug. 9.  
Surrender of Detroit, Michigan, by Gen. Hull, . . . . . Aug. 16.  
British sloop Alert taken by the Essex, . . . . . Aug. 13.  
British frigate Guerriere taken by the Constitution, . . Aug. 19.  
The battle of Queenstown, Canada, . . . . . Oct. 13.  
British brig Frolic taken by the Wasp, . . . . . Oct. 18.  
British frigate Macedonian taken by the United States, . Oct. 25.  
British frigate Java taken by the Constitution, . . . . . Dec. 29.
1813. The battle of Frenchtown, Michigan, . . . . . Jan. 22.  
British brig Peacock taken by the Hornet, . . . . . Feb. 24.  
Madison commenced a second presidential term, . . . . March 4.  
The battle of York, Canada, . . . . . April 27.  
Fort Meigs, on the Maumee, besieged by Proctor, . . . May 1.  
The battle of Fort Meigs, Ohio, . . . . . May 5.  
Fort George, Canada, taken by the Americans, . . . . . May 27.  
The battle of Sackett's Harbor, New York, . . . . . May 29.  
American frigate Chesapeake taken by the Shannon, . . June 1.  
The battle of Fort Stephenson, Ohio, . . . . . Aug. 2.  
American brig Argus taken by the Pelican, . . . . . Aug. 14.  
Creek War commenced by the massacre at Fort Mims, . Aug. 30.  
British brig Boxer taken by the Enterprise, . . . . . Sept. 5.  
Perry's victory on Lake Erie, . . . . . Sept. 10.  
The battle of the Thames, Canada, . . . . . Oct. 5.  
The battle of Chrysler's Field, Canada, . . . . . Nov. 11.
1814. The battle of Tohopeka, the last of the Creek War, . . March 27.  
American frigate Essex taken by the British war ves-  
sels Phoebe and Cherub, . . . . . March 28.  
The battle of La Colle Mill, Canada, . . . . . March 30.  
British brig Epervier taken by the Peacock, . . . . . April 29.  
British sloop Reindeer taken by the Am. sloop Wasp . . . June 28.

- 
- |       |  |           |
|-------|--|-----------|
| 1814. | Fort Erie captured by the Americans, . . . . .                         | July 3.   |
|       | The battle of Chippewa, Canada, . . . . .                              | July 5.   |
|       | The battle of Lundy's Lane, or Bridgewater, Canada, . . . . .          | July 25.  |
|       | The first battle of Fort Erie, Canada, . . . . .                       | Aug. 15.  |
|       | The battle of Bladensburg, Maryland, . . . . .                         | Aug. 24.  |
|       | The city of Washington taken by the British, . . . . .                 | Aug. 24.  |
|       | British sloop Avon taken by the Am. sloop Wasp, . . . . .              | Sept. 1.  |
|       | McDonough's victory on Lake Champlain, . . . . .                       | Sept. 11. |
|       | The battle of Plattsburg, New York, . . . . .                          | Sept. 11. |
|       | The battle of North Point, Maryland, . . . . .                         | Sept. 12. |
|       | The battle of Fort McHenry, Maryland, . . . . .                        | Sept. 13. |
|       | The battle of Fort Bowyer, Alabama, . . . . .                          | Sept. 15. |
|       | The second battle of Fort Erie, Canada, . . . . .                      | Sept. 17. |
|       | The British driven from Pensacola by Gen. Jackson, . . . . .           | Nov. 7.   |
|       | The battle on Lake Borgne, Louisiana, . . . . .                        | Dec. 14.  |
|       | Hartford Convention, . . . . .   | Dec.      |
|       | The battle nine miles from New Orleans, . . . . .                      | Dec. 23.  |
|       | Treaty of peace between the United States and Great Britain, . . . . . | Dec. 24.  |
| 1815. | The battle of New Orleans, . . . . .                                   | Jan. 8.   |
|       | The U. S. frigate President captured by a British squadron, . . . . .  | Jan. 15.  |
|       | The Cyane and Levant taken by the Constitution, . . . . .              | Feb. 20.  |
|       | The British brig Penguin taken by the Hornet, . . . . .                | March 23. |
|       | War with Algiers declared by Congress, . . . . .                       | March.    |
|       | Commodore Decatur sent against Algiers, . . . . .                      | May.      |
| 1816. | Bank of United States rechartered for twenty years, . . . . .          | April 10. |
|       | Indiana admitted into the Union, . . . . .                             | Dec.      |
| 1817. | James Monroe inaugurated President, . . . . .                          | March 4.  |
|       | Mississippi admitted into the Union, . . . . .                         | Dec.      |
|       | The Seminoles and Creeks commenced depredations.                       |           |
| 1818. | General Jackson went against the hostile Indians, . . . . .            | March.    |
|       | Arbuthnot and Ambrister executed, . . . . .                            | April 30. |
|       | Pensacola seized by General Jackson, . . . . .                         | May 24.   |
|       | Illinois admitted into the Union, . . . . .                            | Aug.      |
| 1819. | Alabama admitted into the Union, . . . . .                             | Dec.      |
| 1820. | Maine admitted into the Union, . . . . .                               | March.    |
|       | Florida ceded to the United States by Spain, . . . . .                 | Oct.      |
| 1821. | Missouri admitted into the Union, . . . . .                            | Aug.      |
| 1824. | Lafayette visited the United States, . . . . .                         | Aug.      |
| 1825. | John Quincy Adams inaugurated President, . . . . .                     | March 4.  |
| 1826. | Death of the two ex-presidents, Adams and Jefferson, . . . . .         | July 4.   |

1829. Andrew Jackson inaugurated President,..... March 4.
1831. Death of Ex-president Monroe,..... July 4.
1832. "The Black Hawk War."  
"Nullification" in South Carolina.
1833. Removal of the Government funds from the U. S. Bank, Oct.
1835. War with the Seminoles commenced.  
Gen. Thompson and friends massacred by the Seminoles, Dec. 28.  
Major Dade and party massacred by the Seminoles,... Dec. 28.
1836. Arkansas admitted into the Union,..... Sept.
1837. Michigan admitted into the Union,..... Jan.  
Martin Van Buren inaugurated President,..... March 4.  
The battle of Okechobee, Florida, ..... Dec. 25.
1838. "The Canadian Rebellion."
1841. William Henry Harrison inaugurated President,..... March 4.  
Death of William Henry Harrison, ..... April 4.  
John Tyler inaugurated President, ..... April 6.
1842. The war with the Seminoles terminated.  
The "Dorr Rebellion" in Rhode Island.
1845. Joint resolutions for the annexation of Texas signed by  
President Tyler,..... March 1.  
James K. Polk inaugurated President,..... March 4.  
Florida admitted into the Union, ..... March 3.  
Texas admitted into the Union, ..... July.
1846. Thornton's party captured by the Mexicans, Texas,... April 26.  
Fort Brown bombarded by the Mexicans, ..... May.  
The battle of Palo Alto, Texas, ..... May 8.  
The battle of Resaca de la Palma, Texas, ..... May 9.  
Congress declared "war existed by the act of Mexico," May 11.  
Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took Matamoras,.. May 18.  
Monterey, Mexico, surrendered to Gen. Taylor, ..... Sept. 24.  
The battle of Bracito, Mexico,..... Dec. 25.  
Iowa admitted into the Union,..... Dec. 28.
1847. The battle of Buena Vista, Mexico,..... Feb. 23.  
The battle of Sacramento, Mexico,..... Feb. 28.  
The surrender of Vera Cruz to General Scott, ..... March 27.  
The battle of Cerro Gordo, Mexico, ..... April 18.  
The battle of Contreras and Churubusco, Mexico, .... Aug. 20.  
The battle of Molino del Rey, Mexico,..... Sept. 8.  
The battle of Chapultepec, Mexico,..... Sept. 13.  
City of Mexico entered by the Americans under Scott, Sept. 14.  
The battle of Huamantla, Mexico,..... Oct. 9.
1848. Treaty of peace signed at Guadalupe, Hidalgo,..... Feb. 2.

- 
1848. Wisconsin admitted into the Union,..... May 29.
1849. Zachary Taylor inaugurated President, ..... March 5.
1850. The death of Zachary Taylor,..... July 9.  
 Millard Fillmore inaugurated president,..... July 10.  
 California admitted into the Union,..... Sept. 9.
1853. Franklin Pierce inaugurated President,..... March 4.
1857. James Buchanan inaugurated President,..... March 4.
1858. Minnesota admitted into the Union,..... May 11.
1859. Oregon admitted into the Union,..... Feb. 14.
1860. South Carolina "seceded" from the Union,..... Dec. 24.  
 Major Anderson withdrew his command from Fort  
 Moultrie to Fort Sumter, ..... Dec. 26.
1861. Kansas admitted into the Union.  
 The steamer *Star of the West*, off Charleston, fired into, Jan. 9.  
 A convention of delegates from the "Seceded States"  
 met at Montgomery, Alabama, to organize a "Con-  
 federate Government,"..... Feb. 4.  
 The Montgomery Convention adopted a Provisional  
 Government, ..... Feb. 8.  
 Jefferson Davis inaugurated President of the "Confed-  
 erate States of America," ..... Feb. 18.  
 Abraham Lincoln inaugurated President of the United  
 States,..... March 4.  
 Bombardment of Fort Sumter, ..... Ap. 12, 13.  
 President Lincoln issued a proclamation calling for  
 75,000 volunteers,..... April 15.

## PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

NO.	PRESIDENTS.	OF WHAT STATE.	INAUGURATED.	VICE-PRESIDENTS.
1.	George Washington.	Virginia .....	April 30, 1789	John Adams.
2.	John Adams.....	Massachusetts	March 4, 1797 ..	Thomas Jefferson.
3.	Thomas Jefferson...	Virginia.....	March 4, 1801	Aaron Burr.
4.	James Madison.....	Virginia .....	March 4, 1809	George Clinton.
5.	James Monroe.....	Virginia.....	March 4, 1817...	George Clinton
6.	John Q. Adams.....	Massachusetts	March 4, 1825 ..	Elbridge Gerry.
7.	Andrew Jackson ....	Tennessee ...	March 4, 1829	Daniel D. Tompkins.
8.	Martin Van Buren...	New York....	March 4, 1837	John C. Calhoun.
9.	William H. Harrison.	Ohio .....	March 4, 1841 ..	John C. Calhoun.
10.	John Tyler.....	Virginia.....	April 6, 1841...	Martin Van Buren.
11.	James K. Polk.....	Tennessee ...	March 4, 1845...	Richard M. Johnson.
12.	Zachary Taylor.....	Louisiana....	March 5, 1849...	John Tyler.
13.	Millard Fillmore....	New York....	July 10, 1850...	George M. Dallas.
14.	Franklin Pierce....	N. Hampshire	March 4, 1853...	Millard Fillmore.
15.	James Buchanan....	Pennsylvania.	March 4, 1857...	William R. King.
16.	Abraham Lincoln...	Illinois.....	March 4, 1861...	Jno. C. Breckinridge.
				Hannibal Hamlin.

*(Questions to be answered from the above Table, and in connection with the preceding one.)*

- When was Washington inaugurated President of the United States?
- How many years did he serve?
- Who, during the same period, was Vice-President?
- What States were admitted into the Union while Washington was President?
- Who succeeded Washington in the presidency?
- When was John Adams inaugurated?
- How many years did he serve?
- Who, during the same period, was Vice-President?
- Were any States admitted into the Union while John Adams was President?
- Who succeeded John Adams in the presidency?
- When was Jefferson inaugurated?
- How many years did Jefferson serve?
- Who was the Vice-President during his first term of office?
- Who, during the second?
- What State was admitted into the Union while he was President?
- By whom was he succeeded?
- When was James Madison inaugurated?
- For how many years was he President?
- Who were the Vice-Presidents during that period?
- Name the two States that were admitted into the Union during his presidency?
- Who was his successor in office?
- When was Monroe inaugurated?
- How many years was Monroe President?
- Who, during the same period, was Vice-President?
- Name the five States that were admitted into the Union during Monroe's presidency?
- Who succeeded Monroe in the presidency?
- When was John Quincy Adams inaugurated?
- Did he serve four or eight years?
- Who was Vice-President during that time?
- Were any States admitted into the Union while John Quincy Adams was President?
- Who succeeded him in the presidency?
- When was Jackson inaugurated?
- Was he President four or eight years?
- What two States were admitted during Jackson's administration?
- What two during Tyler's?
- What two during Polk's?
- Which one during Fillmore's?
- Were any admitted during Pierce's?
- What three were admitted during Buchanan's?
- What was the length of Jackson's administration?
- Of Van Buren's?
- Harrison's?
- Tyler's?
- Polk's?
- Taylor's?
- Fillmore's?
- Pierce's?
- Buchanan's?
- Who were Vice-Presidents during Jackson's administration?
- Who was during Harrison's?
- Tyler's?
- Polk's?
- Taylor's?
- Fillmore's?
- Pierce's?
- Buchanan's?
- Lincoln's?

## SETTLEMENT AND ADMISSION OF THE STATES.

STATES.	SETTLED.			ADMITTED.
	When.	Where.	By Whom.	
Virginia .....	1607	Jamestown .....	English ...	The Thirteen Original States. *
New York .....	1614	New York .....	Dutch .....	
Massachusetts ...	1620	Plymouth .....	English ...	
New Hampshire ...	1623	Little Harbor ...	English ...	
Connecticut .....	1633	Windsor .....	English ...	
Maryland .....	1634	St. Mary's .....	English ...	
Rhode Island ....	1636	Providence .....	English ...	
Delaware .....	1638	Wilmington ....	Swedes ...	
North Carolina ...	1650	Chowan River ..	English ...	
New Jersey .....	1664	Elizabeth .....	Dutch .....	
South Carolina ...	1670	Ashley River ...	English ...	
Pennsylvania ....	1682	Philadelphia ....	English ...	
Georgia .....	1733	Savannah .....	English ...	
Vermont .....	1724	Fort Dunmer ...	English ...	1791
Kentucky .....	1775	Boonesboro .....	English ...	1792
Tennessee .....	1757	Fort Loudon ...	English ...	1796
Ohio .....	1788	Marietta .....	English ...	1802
Louisiana .....	1699	Iberville .....	French ....	1812
Indiana .....	1730	Vincennes .....	French ....	1816
Mississippi . . . .	1716	Natchez .....	French ....	1817
Illinois .....	1720	Kaskaskia .....	French ....	1818
Alabama .....	1711	Mobile .....	French ....	1819
Maine .....	1625	Bristol .....	French ....	1820
Missouri .....	1764	St. Louis .....	French ....	1821
Arkansas .....	1685	Arkansas Post ..	French ....	1836
Michigan .....	1670	Detroit .....	French ....	1837
Florida .....	1565	St. Augustine ...	Spaniards .	1845
Texas .....	1692	S. A. De Bexar ..	Spaniards .	1845
Iowa .....	1833	Burlington .....	English ...	1846
Wisconsin .....	1669	Green Bay .....	French ....	1848
California .....	1769	San Diego .....	Spaniards .	1850
Minnesota .....	1846	St. Paul .....	Americans .	1858
Oregon .....	1811	Astoria .....	Americans .	1859
Kansas .....			Americans .	1861
West Virginia ...				1863

(Questions to be answered from the above Table.)

When and where was Virginia settled? New York? Massachusetts? New Hampshire? Connecticut? Maryland? Rhode Island? Delaware? North Carolina? New Jersey? South Carolina? Pennsylvania? Georgia? When was Vermont admitted into the Union? Kentucky? Tennessee? Ohio? Louisiana? Indiana? Which five States were admitted during the five succeeding years? When were Arkansas and Michigan admitted? Florida and Texas? Iowa? Wisconsin? California? Minnesota? Oregon? Kansas? West Virginia?



## GENERAL REVIEW QUESTIONS.

(One of these questions, in most cases, is sufficient for a lesson; and then the pupil had better answer it in writing, in the form of a composition.)

	PAGE
1. Name in order the principal events from 1492 to 1524.....	293
2. Give an account of Columbus and his discoveries .....	11, 12, 13
3. Of the Cabots and their American discoveries .....	13, 14
4. Of Amerigo Vespucci and his two voyages to South America..	13
5. Of Ponce de Leon and his two voyages to Florida .....	14, 15
6. Of Balboa and his discovery of the Pacific.....	15
7. Of De Ayllon and his two expeditions to Carolina .....	15, 16
8. Of Cortez and his conquest of Mexico.....	16, 17
9. Of Narvaez and his expedition to Florida.....	17
10. Of De Soto and his expedition for conquest and wealth.....	17, 18
11. Of Verrazani and his North American explorations.....	18
12. Name in order the principal events from 1524 to 1583 .....	298
13. Give an account of Cartier and his two voyages to America...	18
14. Of the Huguenots and their settlements in America.....	19, 20
15. Of the two attempts made by Gilbert to settle in America..	20, 21
16. Name in order the principal events from 1583 to 1608 .....	298
17. Give an account of Raleigh and his attempts at settlement..	21, 22
18. Of Gosnold, his voyage in 1602, and efforts in Virginia...22, 27, 28	
19. Of the origin of the London and Plymouth Companies.....	23, 24
20. Name in order the principal events from 1608 to 1616....	298, 299
21. Give the history of Jamestown to the end of Ratcliffe's rule	25, 27, 28
22. Give the further history to the close of Smith's rule.	28, 30, 31, 32
23. Till the commencement of the Revolution... 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37	
24. Name in order the principal events from 1616 to 1637.....	299
25. Give an account of Captain John Smith. 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 37, 38	
26. Of the Pilgrims and their settlement in New England. 38, 39, 40, 41	
27. Of New Hampshire till the beginning of the Revolution....	43, 44
28. Of Connecticut till the beginning of the Revolution. 45, 46, 47, 48, 49	
29. Of Roger Williams, and Rhode Island till the Revolution. 49, 42, 50	
30. Name in order the principal events from 1637 to 1663.....	299
31. Give an account of the "Union of the New England Colonies."	52
32. Of the persecution of the Quakers in Massachusetts.....	52, 53
33. Of King Philip's War 53, 54, 55—34. King William's War 56, 57, 58	
35. Of Queen Anne's War. 58, 59—36. Of King George's War, 59, 65	
37. Of Henry Hudson, his voyage and discoveries .....	60
38. Give the history of New York under the Dutch governors	61, 62, 63
39. Its subsequent history till the Revolution.....	63, 64, 65
40. Name in order the principal events from 1663 to 1682 .....	299

	PAGE
41. Give the colonial history of New Jersey.....	66, 67, 68
42. Name the events in the colonial history of Maryland..	70, 71, 72, 73
43. In the colonial history of Pennsylvania.....	73, 74, 75, 76, 77
44. Name in order the principal events from 1682 to 1710....	299, 300
45. In the colonial history of North and South Carolina..	78, 79, 80, 81
46. In the colonial history of Georgia.....	81, 82, 83
47. Name in order the principal events from 1710 to 1753.....	300
48. Of 1754, p. 300.—49. Of 1755, p. 300.—50. Of 1756.....	300
51. Of 1757, 300.—52. Of 1758.—53. Of 1759.....	300
54. Give an account of Gen. Wolfe.....	100, 104, 105, 106
55. Give an account of Gen. Montcalm.....	106, 95, 96, 97, 101, 106
56. Give the causes of the Revolution..	110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116
57. Name in order the principal events from 1760 to 1775.....	301
58. Name in order the principal events of 1775.....	301
59. Of 1776, 301.—60. Of 1777, 301, 302.—61. Of 1778.....	302
62. Of 1779, 302, 303.—63. Of 1780, 303—64. Of 1781.....	303
65. Of 1782, 303.—66. Of 1783.....	304
67. Give an account of Gen. Joseph Warren.....	121
68. Of Gen. Schuyler.....	123, 146, 148, 149
69. Of Gen. Montgomery.....	124, 100, 123
70. Of Gen. Putnam.....	131, 120, 132, 133
71. Of Gen. Charles Lee.....	134, 128, 135, 138, 139, 155, 156
72. Of Gen. Gates.....	151, 149, 150, 165, 166, 167, 175
73. Of Gen. Sullivan, 135, 157, 158, 162.—74. Gen. Lincoln, 159, 160, 164	
75. Sir Henry Clinton, 119, 121, 128, 130, 131, 140, 150, 151, 155, 156,	
158, 163, 164, 165, 168, 170, 174, 182, 187.	
76. Gen. Howe....	119, 120, 127, 130, 131, 132, 133, 139, 140, 142, 155
77. Cornwallis, 128, 134, 136, 137, 140, 165, 166, 167, 176, 177, 178,	
179, 182, 185.	
78. Arnold, 172, 119, 123, 124, 125, 148, 150, 169, 170, 171, 183, 175, 184	
79. Gen. Lafayette.....	175, 138, 141, 157, 175, 252
80. Gen. Greene.....	178, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181
81. Gen. Morgan.....	177, 124, 125, 176, 177
82. Gen. Marion, 168, 165, 180.—83. Gen. Sumter...	180, 165, 168, 180
84. Name the battles of 1775.—85. Of 1776.—86. Of 1777.....	191
87. Of 1778.—88. Of 1779.—89. Of 1780.—90. Of 1781.....	191
91. Name the events of Washington's administration, 194, 195, 196,	
197, 198, 199, 200.	
92. Of John Adams's administration.....	200, 201, 202
93. Of Jefferson's administration.....	203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208
94. Name in order the principal events from 1782 to 1787....	303, 304

	PAGE
95. From 1787 to 1792, 304.—96. From 1792 to 1799.....	304
97. From 1799 to 1805, 304.—98. From 1805 to 1809.....	304, 305
99. From 1809 to 1812.....	305
100. Name in order the principal events of 1812.....	305
101. Of 1813, 305.—102. Of 1814, 305, 306.—103. Of 1815.....	306
104. Name in order the principal events from 1815 to 1818.....	306
105. From 1818 to 1826, 306.—106. From 1826 to 1836.....	307
107. Give an account of Gen. Wayne.....	160, 142, 161, 197, 198
108. Of Gen. St. Clair.....	145, 146, 197
109. Of Dr. Benjamin Franklin.....	129, 90, 137, 186
110. Name the battles of 1812.—111. Of 1813.—112. Of 1814...	243
113. Give an account of the war with Algiers.....	244, 245, 246
114. Give an account of Henry Clay.....	242, 243, 257, 288, 289
115. Of John C. Calhoun.....	256, 257, 298
116. Name the events of Monroe's administration	248, 249, 250, 251, 252
117. Give an account of Lafayette.....	175, 138, 141, 252
118. Name the events of John Quincy Adams's administration	253, 254
119. Of Jackson's administration	254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261
120. Account of Jackson....	255, 223, 224, 240, 241, 249, 254, 256, 257
121. Of Van Buren and his administration.....	262, 254, 261
122. Of Harrison and his administration.....	263, 211, 218, 219, 220
123. Of Tyler and his administration.....	264, 265, 266
124. Name in order the principal events from 1836 to 1845.....	307
125. Name in order the principal events of 1845.....	307
126. Of 1846, 307.—127. Of 1847.....	307
128. Give the names with the dates of the battles of 1846.....	284
129. Give the names with the dates of the battles of 1847.....	285
130. Give an account of Gen. Taylor.....	286, 260, 270, 271, 287
131. Of Fillmore and his administration.....	288, 289
132. Of Pierce and his administration.....	289, 290, 291
133. Of Buchanan and his administration	292, 269, 291, 293, 294, 295, 296
134. Of President Lincoln.....	297
135. Name in order the principal events from 1847 to 1860.....	308
136. Name the presidents in the order of their succession.....	309
137. Name, in order of settlement, the thirteen original States....	310
138. State when and where each was settled.....	310
139. Name the events connected with the early history of Boston	42,
	55, 114, 115, 119, 120, 127.
140. New York.—141.—Baltimore.—142. Philadelphia.	
143. Charleston.—144. Savannah.—145. Albany.	
146. Give an account of Gen. Washington.....	194, 88, 89, 90, &c.



# THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

---

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,  
IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED, JULY 4TH, 1776.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident:—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government,

and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world :—

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained ; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature ; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected ; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise ; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States ; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners ; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.



He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers, to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws ; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation :

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us :

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States :

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world :

For imposing taxes on us without our consent :

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury :

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offenses :

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies :

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments :

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must therefore acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war—in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Su-

preme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members :

JOHN HANCOCK.

*New Hampshire.*  
Josiah Bartlett,  
William Whipple,  
Matthew Thornton.

*Massachusetts Bay.*  
Samuel Adams,  
John Adams,  
Robert Treat Paine,  
Elbridge Gerry.

*Rhode Island.*  
Stephen Hopkins,  
William Ellery.

*Connecticut.*  
Roger Sherman,  
Samuel Huntington,  
William Williams,  
Oliver Wolcott.

*New York.*  
William Floyd,  
Philip Livingston,  
Francis Lewis,  
Lewis Morris.

*New Jersey.*  
Richard Stockton,  
John Witherspoon,  
Francis Hopkinson,  
John Hart,  
Abraham Clark.

*Pennsylvania.*  
Robert Morris,  
Benjamin Rush,  
Benjamin Franklin,  
John Morton,  
George Clymer,  
James Smith,  
George Taylor,  
James Wilson,  
George Ross.

*Delaware.*  
Caesar Rodney,  
George Read,  
Thomas M'Kean.

*Maryland.*  
Samuel Chase,  
William Paca,  
Thomas Stone.

Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

*Virginia.*  
George Wythe,  
Richard Henry Lee,  
Thomas Jefferson,  
Benjamin Harrison,  
Thomas Nelson, jun.,  
Francis Lightfoot Lee,  
Carter Braxton.

*North Carolina.*  
William Hooper,  
Joseph Hewes,  
John Penn.

*South Carolina.*  
Edward Rutledge,  
Thomas Heyward, jun.,  
Thomas Lynch, jun.,  
Arthur Middleton.

*Georgia.*  
Button Gwinnett,  
Lyman Hall,  
George Walton.



UNITED STATES.

The device of the Seal of the United States was adopted June 20, 1782, as follows: "Arms—Paleways of thirteen pieces, argent and gules; a chief azure; the escutcheon on the breast of the American eagle displayed proper, holding in his dexter talon an olive-branch, and in his sinister a bundle of thirteen arrows, all proper, and in his beak a scroll, inscribed with this motto, "*E pluribus Unum*." For the *Crest*—over the head of the eagle, . . . a glory, on breaking through a cloud, proper, and surrounding thirteen stars, forming a constellation, argent, on an azure field."

## ORIGIN OF THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

I. WHEN the Revolutionary struggle commenced, there were three forms of Colonial government in force among the colonies, namely: the Provincial or Royal, the Proprietary, and the Charter.

II. The Provincial or Royal government was that which was under the control of a governor, who, appointed by the king, administered affairs according to instructions from his royal master. The colonies of this class were New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia.

---

ORIGIN OF THE CONSTITUTION.—I. QUESTIONS.—1. What forms of government existed among the colonies previous to the Revolution?

II. 2. What was the Provincial or Royal government? 3. Which of the colonies were Provincial or Royal?

III. The Proprietary government was that which was under the control of one or more proprietors, who derived their authority by grant and privileges conferred by the king. Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Maryland, were subject to the proprietary rule.

IV. The Charter government was that wherein certain political rights were secured to the people by royal charter. Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut, were charter governments.

V. In July, 1775—a year before the Declaration of Independence—Dr. Franklin submitted to Congress a sketch of Articles of Confederation between the colonies. By this plan it was proposed to establish a Confederation, and continue it until a reconciliation with Great Britain should take place; or, in the failure of that event, to make it perpetual. It appears, however, that Franklin's plan was never discussed.

VI. On the 11th of June, 1776,—the very day on which the Committee to prepare the Declaration of Independence was chosen—Congress resolved that a committee should be appointed to prepare and digest a form of Confederation, to be entered into by the colonies.

VII. On the 12th of July following, this committee, consisting of one from each State, reported a draft of Articles of Confederation, which was considered and debated from time to time, until the 15th of November, 1777, when, with some amendments, it was adopted.

VIII. These Articles of Confederation were ratified in 1778 by all the States except Delaware and Maryland, and by

---

III. QUESTIONS.—4. What was the Proprietary government? 5. Which of the colonies were subject to the Proprietary rule?

IV. 6. What was the Charter Government? 7. Which of the colonies were provided with charters?

V. 8. When was a sketch of Articles of Confederation first submitted to Congress? 9. By whom was it submitted? 10. What was proposed by Dr. Franklin's plan?

VI. 11. When was the Committee to prepare the Declaration of Independence appointed? 12. What resolution was passed by Congress on that day?

VII. 13. Of how many persons did the committee consist? 14. When did they submit their report? 15. What was done with the report?

Delaware, in 1779; but, in consequence of the delay on the part of Maryland, they did not go into effect until the 1st of March, 1781, the day on which they were signed by the delegates from that State.

IX. It was soon found that the Articles of Confederation were not adequate to the wants of the Government. They were deficient as regards the regulation of commerce, the settling of controversies between the States, and the making of treaties with foreign nations; and especially deficient in not conferring the necessary power upon Congress to liquidate the debts incurred during the war.

X. Consequently, a convention of delegates from all the States, except Rhode Island, met at Philadelphia, in May, 1787, for the purpose of revising the Articles of Confederation; but it was thought best by a majority of the delegates to adopt an entirely new form of government, instead of making any attempts to amend the defective one then in existence. Accordingly, after four months' deliberation, the present Constitution,—except some changes which were made in after years,—was adopted by the Convention on the 17th of September, 1787.

XI. The new Constitution was submitted to the people, who, in the newspapers, legislative halls, and elsewhere, discussed it with earnestness and thoroughness. It met with considerable opposition, but, by the 4th of March, 1789, when it went into operation, it had been adopted by all the States, with the exception of North Carolina and Rhode Island.\*

---

\* Delaware adopted it on the 7th of December, 1787; Pennsylvania, on the 12th of December; New Jersey, on the 18th of December; Georgia, on the 2d of January, 1788; Connecticut, on the 9th of January; Massachusetts, on the 6th of February; Maryland, on the 28th of April; South Carolina, on the 23d of May; New Hampshire, on the 21st of June; Virginia, on the 26th of June; New York, on the 26th of July; North Carolina, on the 21st of November, 1789; and Rhode Island, on the 29th of May, 1790.

VIII. QUESTIONS.—16. When did the States ratify the Articles of Confederation? 17. When did the Articles of Confederation go into effect?

IX. 18. What was soon ascertained with reference to the Articles of Confederation? 19. In what respects were they deficient?

X. 20. What convention was held in May, 1787? 21. What was done by the convention?

XI. 22. To whom was the Constitution submitted? 23. Where was it discussed? 24. When did it go into operation? 25. Which of the States had adopted it at that time?



# THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

---

## PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I.

### THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

#### SECTION I.

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

---

PREAMBLE.—26. What is the introductory part of the Constitution called? 27. What is the object of the preamble? *Ans.*—To state the purposes of the Constitution. 28. How many and what purposes are stated in the preamble? 29. By whom was the Constitution ordained and established? 30. Recite the preamble. 31. How many and what departments of government are established under the Constitution? *Ans.*—Three: the legislative, the judicial, and the executive. 32. What is the legislative department? *Ans.*—The power that enacts the laws. 33. What is the executive department? *Ans.*—The power that enforces the laws. 34. What is the judicial department? *Ans.*—The power that interprets the laws.

## ARTICLE I.

### THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

SEC. I.—35. Of what does Article first of the Constitution treat? 36. In whom is the legislative power vested? 37. Of how many and what branches does Congress consist?

## SECTION II.

*1st. Clause.* The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

*2d Clause.* No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

*3d Clause.* Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not

---

SEC. II.—*1st Clause.*—33. By whom are the representatives chosen? 39. How often are they chosen? 40. What qualifications are requisite for electors or representatives? 41. What is an elector? *Ans.*—One who has the right to vote in choosing an officer. *2d Clause.*—42. How old must a person be before he can be a representative? 43. How long must he have been a citizen of the United States? 44. What is the requisite in regard to his habitation? 45. Now name the three qualifications requisite for a representative. *3d Clause.*—46. How are representatives and direct taxes apportioned among the States? 47. How are the respective numbers of the representative population of the several States to be determined? 48. What provision is made in regard to Indians? 49. What is meant by "all other persons?" *Ans.*—Slaves. 50. When was the first census or enumeration to be made? 51. How often thereafter is the census to be made? 52. How many inhabitants at least are required for one representative? 53. If a State should not have that number, what is the law? 54. Was the first representation in Congress based upon the actual population of the several States? 55. Which State at first sent the greatest number of representatives? 56. Which two States sent the smallest number? 57. Of how many members did the first House of Representatives consist? 58. Of how many does the present House consist? *Ans.*—

exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

*4th Clause.* When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

*5th Clause.* The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

### SECTION III.

*1st Clause.* The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

*2d Clause.* Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as

---

*4th Clause.—59.* How are vacancies in the representation of a State to be filled? *5th Clause.—60.* By whom is the speaker of the House of Representatives chosen? *61.* By whom are the other officers of the House chosen? *62.* What sole power has the House? *63.* What is meant by impeachment? *Ans.*—An impeachment is an accusation against a public officer, charging him with misconduct in the discharge of his official duties.

*SEC. III.—1st Clause.—64.* Of whom is the Senate composed? *65.* By whom are the senators chosen? *66.* For how long a period are they chosen? *67.* How does the mode of electing a senator differ from that of a representative? *Ans.*—A senator of the United States is chosen by the legislature of his State; a representative is chosen by the people. *68.* How do their terms of office differ? *Ans.*—A senator is chosen for six years; a representative for only two. *69.* How many votes is each senator entitled to? *70.* Have the large States any more senators than the small ones? *2d Clause.—71.* Into how many classes were the senators at first divided? *72.* In what order were their seats of office vacated? *73.* What proportion of the Senate is elected every second year? *74.* How often is one-third elected? *75.* When may the executive of a State fill a vacancy in the Senate? *76.* For how long a time does a senator so appointed hold his office? *77.* How is the vacancy then filled? *78.* Now state how vacancies in the Senate are filled.

equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

*3d Clause.* No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

*4th Clause.* The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

*5th Clause.* The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

*6th Clause.* The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall all be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

---

*3d Clause.*—79. How old must a person be before he can be a senator? 80. How long must he have been a citizen of the United States? 81. What is required of him in regard to residence? 82. Now name the three requisites for a senator. 83. How do they differ from those of a representative? (See page 12.) *4th Clause.*—84. Who is president of the Senate? 85. When only is he entitled to vote? *5th Clause.*—86. What officers are chosen by the Senate? 87. What is meant by a "president *pro tempore*?" *Ans.*—A "president *pro tempore*" is one chosen only for the time being. 88. When does the Senate choose a "president *pro tempore*?" *6th Clause.*—89. What sole power has the Senate? 90. What sole power has the House? (See page 13.) 91. Under what solemnity does the Senate sit for the trial of impeachment? 92. When does the chief-justice preside in the Senate? 93. Who presides when the president of the United States is tried? 94. What proportion of the Senate is necessary to a conviction?

*7th Clause.* Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

#### SECTION IV.

*1st Clause.* The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

*2d Clause.* The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

#### SECTION V.

*1st Clause.* Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

*2d Clause.* Each house may determine the rules of its pro-

*7th Clause.*—95. How far may judgment extend in cases of impeachment? 96. To what is the convicted party further liable?

SEC. IV.—*1st Clause.*—97. What is prescribed by each State legislature in regard to elections for senators and representatives? 98. What power has Congress over such regulations? *2d Clause.*—99. How often does Congress assemble? 100. On what day is it prescribed that the meeting shall take place? 101. May a different day be appointed? 102. How?

SEC. V.—*1st Clause.* 103. Of what is each house constituted the judge? 104. What proportion constitutes a quorum? 105. What is meant by a quorum? *Ans.*—By a quorum is meant a sufficient number to do business. 106. What power do a smaller number possess, as regards adjourning? 107. What else may they do, as regards absentees? *2d Clause.*—108. What power has each house, over the rules of its proceedings? 109. What power does each house possess for enforcing its rules?

ceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

*3d Clause.* Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

*4th Clause.* Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

#### SECTION VI.

*1st Clause.* The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

---

*3d Clause.*—110. What is required of each house, in respect to keeping a journal? 111. How is publicity given to the proceedings of Congress? 112. What part of its journal may either house withhold from publication? 113. When shall the yeas and nays be entered on the journal? *4th Clause.*—114. For what length of time may either house adjourn without the consent of the other? 115. How is each house restricted, as regards the place to which it may adjourn?

SEC. VI.—*1st Clause.*—116. Are members of Congress compensated for their services? 117. How is the compensation determined? 118. Are members of Congress paid by their States, respectively, or by the general government? *Ans.*—The senators and representatives in Congress are not compensated for their services by the individual States, but by the general government, out of the treasury of the United States. 119. What personal privileges are members of Congress entitled to? 120. What are the three exceptions to the general privilege that the Constitution allows to Congressmen? 121. In what does treason consist? (See page 32.) 122. What is felony? *Ans.*—A felony is understood to mean a crime punishable with death. 123. What is meant by a breach of the peace? *Ans.*—“A breach of the peace is a violation of the public order.” 124. For what are members of Congress not to be questioned?



*2d Clause.* No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

## SECTION VII.

*1st Clause.* All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

*2d Clause.* Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall like-

---

*2d Clause.*—125. To what offices cannot members of Congress be elected? 126. Suppose that a person holds an office under the United States, what then?

SEC. VII.—*1st Clause.*—127. In which branch of Congress must all bills for raising revenue originate? 128. What power has the Senate over such bills? *2d Clause.*—129. After a bill has passed both houses of Congress, what must be done with it? 130. What must the president do with the bill? 131. What is the president's act of objecting to a bill called? *Ans.*—The president's act of returning a bill with his objections, is called a veto. 132. Why was the veto power given to the president? *Ans.*—The veto power was given to the president to enable him to protect the executive department of the government against the encroachments of the legislature; also with a view to greater security against the enactment of improper laws. 133. When the president vetoes a bill, what is the duty of the house to which it is sent? 134. When is the bill sent to the other house? 135. What accompanies the bill to the other house? 136. Then what does that other house do with the bill? 137. If two-thirds approve of the bill, what then? 138. Now state how a bill may become a law, notwithstanding the veto of the president. 139. When the two houses reconsider a vetoed bill, how do they determine the votes? 140. What record of names is imperative? 141. State how a bill may become a law, even though the president has neither signed nor vetoed it. 142. In what case does a bill fail to become a law, though it has passed both houses of Congress, and is not vetoed?

wise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

*3d Clause.* Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

#### SECTION VIII.

The Congress shall have power

*1st Clause.* To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, im-

*3d Clause.*—143. What is necessary to be done with orders, resolutions, and votes, requiring the concurrence of both houses before they can take effect? 144. What is the object of the provision? *Ans.*—If it were not for the provision, Congress might pass laws, calling the n orders or resolutions, and thus evade the president's veto. 145. When the president vetoes an order, resolution, or vote, what course does it take? 146. In what case, requiring the concurrent action of both houses, has the president no veto power?

SEC. VIII.—*1st Clause.*—147. What power has Congress in regard to taxes, duties, imposts, and excises? 148. What are taxes? *Ans.*—Contributions of money exacted by government from individuals, for public purposes. 149. How many kinds of taxes are there? *Ans.*—Two kinds; direct and indirect. 150. What are direct taxes? *Ans.*—Those laid directly on the person or property of individuals. 151. What are indirect taxes? *Ans.*—Those laid on the importation, exportation, and consumption of goods. 152. What are duties? *Ans.*—Taxes on the importation and exportation of goods. 153. What are imposts? *Ans.*—Taxes on goods imported. 154. What are excises? *Ans.*—Taxes on goods produced or manufactured in the country.

posts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States ;

*2d Clause.* To borrow money on the credit of the United States ;

*3d Clause.* To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes ;

*4th Clause.* To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies, throughout United States ;

*5th Clause.* To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and to fix the standard of weights and measures ;

*6th Clause.* To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States ;

*7th Clause.* To establish post-offices and post-roads ;

*8th Clause.* To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries ;

*9th Clause.* To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court ;

*2d Clause.*—155. What power has Congress in regard to borrowing money? *3d Clause.*—156. What, in regard to regulating commerce? *4th Clause.*—157. What, in regard to a rule of naturalization? 158. What is meant by naturalization? *Ans.*—The act by which a foreigner becomes a citizen of the United States. 159. How long must a person reside in the United States before he can be naturalized? *Ans.*—Five years at least. 160. What power has Congress in regard to bankruptcies? 161. What is meant by bankruptcies? *Ans.*—A person is a bankrupt when he is unable to pay his just debts. *5th Clause.*—162. What power has Congress in regard to coining money? 163. What, in regard to the value of money? 164. What, in regard to foreign coins? 165. What, in regard to weights and measures? *6th Clause.*—166. What power has Congress in regard to counterfeiting? *7th Clause.*—167. What, in regard to post-offices and post-roads? *8th Clause.*—168. In what way may Congress promote the progress of science and arts? 169. For how long a time is the author of a book entitled to the exclusive right of publishing it? *Ans.*—Twenty-eight years. 170. What is the right called? *Ans.*—A copyright. 171. May a copyright be renewed? *Ans.*—At the expiration of the twenty-eight years, the copyright may be renewed for the further period of fourteen years. 172. For how long a time is the inventor of a machine entitled to the exclusive right of manufacturing it? *Ans.*—Fourteen years. 173. What is the right called? *Ans.*—A patent right. 174. Can a patent right be extended? *Ans.*—The commissioner of patents is authorized, at the end of the fourteen years, to extend the patent right for the further period of seven years.

*10th Clause.* To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;

*11th Clause.* To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

*12th Clause.* To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

*13th Clause.* To provide and maintain a navy;

*14th Clause.* To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

*15th Clause.* To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions;

*16th Clause.* To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

*17th Clause.* To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases

*9th Clause.*—175. What power has Congress in regard to judicial tribunals? *10th Clause.*—176. What, in regard to piracies, felonies, etc.? *177.* What is piracy? *Ans.*—Robbery on the high seas. *178.* What is meant by the term "high seas?" *An.*—The "high seas" are all the waters of the ocean beyond the boundaries of low-water-mark. *11th Clause.*—179. What power has Congress in regard to declaring war? *180.* What, in regard to "letters of marque and reprisal?" *181.* What are "letters of marque and reprisal?" *Ans.*—Commissions granted by the government to individuals, authorizing them to seize the persons and property of the citizens or subjects of a nation that refuses to make satisfaction for some injury which it has committed. *182.* What power has Congress in regard to rules concerning captures? *12th Clause.*—183. What power has Congress in regard to armies? *184.* In what way is such power restricted? *13th Clause.*—185. What power has Congress in regard to a navy? *14th Clause.*—186. What power, in regard to the government of the land and naval forces? *15th Clause.*—187. What power, in regard to calling forth the militia, etc.? *16th Clause.*—188. What power, in regard to organizing armies, and disciplining the militia? *189.* What, in regard to governing the militia? *190.* What reservations are secured to the respective States? *17th Clause.*—191. What power has Congress in regard to the seat of government, and to places purchased for certain purposes set forth? *192.* What is the district occupied by the seat of government called? *Ans.*—*The District of Columbia.*

whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings;—and

*18th Clause.* To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

#### SECTION IX.

*1st Clause.* The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

*2d Clause.* The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

193. How large was the District of Columbia originally? *Ans.*—A tract ten miles square. 194. From what States had it been derived? *Ans.*—Maryland and Virginia. 195. Is the District of Columbia at present ten miles square? *Ans.*—The portion which had been derived from Virginia having been ceded back to that State in 1846, the District of Columbia is now confined to the Maryland side of the Potomac. 196. What consent is requisite before the United States can acquire property in a State, for the erection of forts, magazines, etc.? *18th Clause.*—197. What general powers are conferred upon Congress in regard to making laws?

SEC. IX.—*1st Clause.*—198. What restriction was imposed upon Congress, in regard to the migration or importation of certain persons? 199. Who were meant by “such persons?” *Ans.*—Slaves. 200. What was the great object of the clause? *Ans.*—To enable Congress to put an end to the importation of slaves into the United States, after the year 1808. 201. In what way was Congress left to restrain the importation, without actually forbidding it? 202. When was the importation actually prohibited? *Ans.*—On the first of January, 1808. *2d Clause.*—203. What is said of the writ of habeas corpus?

*3d Clause.* No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

*4th Clause.* No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

*5th Clause.* No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

*6th Clause.* No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one State over those of another: nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

*7th Clause.* No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

*8th Clause.* No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States: and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

204. What is a writ of habeas corpus? *Ans.*—A written command from a judge or other magistrate, directing that the body of a certain person shall be brought before him. 205. What is the object of the writ? *Ans.*—The object of a writ of habeas corpus is to provide a means of redress for all manner of illegal imprisonment. 206. Repeat the clause in relation to the writ of habeas corpus. 207. In what cases may the privilege of the writ of habeas corpus be suspended? *3d Clause.*—208. What is said of bills of attainder or *ex post facto* laws? 209. What is a bill of attainder? *Ans.*—An act of the legislature, inflicting the punishment of death, without trial, upon persons supposed to be guilty of high crimes. 210. What is an *ex post facto* law? *Ans.*—A law which renders an act punishable in a manner in which it was not punishable at the time of its commission. *4th Clause.*—211. In what way may Congress lay a capitation or other direct tax? 212. What is meant by a capitation? *Ans.*—A direct tax upon individuals. 213. How is the census to be taken? (See page 12.) *5th Clause.*—214. What prohibition is imposed upon Congress in relation to articles exported from any State? *6th Clause.*—215. What preference is forbidden in relation to a regulation of commerce or revenue? 216. What freedom have vessels that are bound from one State to another? *7th Clause.*—217. Under what circumstances only can money be drawn from the national treasury? 218. What publication must be made in regard to receipts and expenditures of all public money? *8th Clause.*—219. What is said in the Constitution about titles of nobility? 220. What is said of office-holders accepting presents, etc.? 221. Under what circumstances may an office-holder accept a present?



## SECTION X.

*1st Clause.* No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

*2d Clause.* No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws: and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

*3d Clause.* No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

222. Repeat the clause relating to titles and presents.

SEC. X.—*1st Clause.*—223. What prohibition is placed upon the several States as regards treaties, alliances, or confederations? 224. What, as regards letters of marque and reprisal? 225. What, as regards the coining of money? 226. What, as regards bills of credit? 227. What is meant by bills of credit? *Ans.*—Bills of credit, within the meaning of the Constitution, are bills intended to circulate as money among the people. 228. What is constituted a legal tender in payment of debt? 229. What prohibition is placed upon individual States, in regard to a bill of attainder? 230. What, in regard to an *ex post facto* law? 231. What, in regard to a law impairing an obligation? 232. What, in regard to a title of nobility? 233. Recite the clause just considered. *2d Clause.*—234. What prohibition are individual States under, as regards imposts or duties? 235. In what case only, may a State lay any imposts or duties? 236. What are inspection laws? *Ans.*—Laws requiring certain articles of commerce to be examined by officers called inspectors. 237. What is the object of inspection laws? *Ans.*—To protect the public against fraud or imposition on the part of the producer, and to cause improvement after improvement in the quality of articles produced. 238. What disposition must be made of the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by individuals? 239. What are the inspection laws of individual States, as regards imports or exports, subject to? *3d Clause.*—240. What prohibition are individual States under, as to the laying of a duty of tonnage?

## ARTICLE II.

## THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

## SECTION I.

*1st Clause.* The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows :

*2d Clause.* Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress : but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

241. What is a duty of tonnage ? *Ans.*—A duty of tonnage, or a tonnage duty, is a tax laid on vessels at a certain rate per ton. 242. What prohibition are individual States under as to the keeping of troops ? 243. What, as to the keeping of ships of war ? 244. What, as to an agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power ? 245. What, as to engaging in war ? 246. Under what circumstances, then, may a State engage in war ?

## ARTICLE II.

## THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

SEC. I.—*1st Clause.*—247. Of what does Article II. of the Constitution treat ? 248. In whom is the executive power of the United States vested ? 249. What is the president's term of office ? 250. How often may a president be re-elected ? *Ans.*—The Constitution does not limit the number of terms for which a president may be re-elected. 251. Who was the first president of the United States ? *Ans.*—Washington. 252. For how many terms did Washington serve ? *Ans.*—Two. 253. Why was not Washington elected for a third term ? *Ans.*—At the close of his second term of office, Washington declined to be a candidate for a third term. 254.—What has been the effect of his declination ? *Ans.*—Washington's example, in declining to be elected for a third term, has become a precedent by which subsequent presidents have been guided. 255. How many and what presidents have served two terms each ? (See History, p. 309.) 256. Which has the longest term of office ; the president, a senator, or a representative ? 257. What term has each ? 258. What is the vice-president's term of office ? 259. Who was the first vice-president of the United States ? *Ans.*—John Adams. 260. By whom are the president and vice-president chosen ? *Ans.*—The president and vice-president are not chosen by the people directly, but by electors. *2d Clause.*—261. In what manner does each State appoint electors ? 262. What number of electors is each State entitled to ? 263. Who are prohibited from being electors ?

[The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for president; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list, the said House shall in like manner choose the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the vice-president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the vice-president.]

#### THE TWELFTH AMENDMENT TO THE CONSTITUTION.

*1st. Clause.* The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice-president, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate;—the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—the person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole num-

#### THE TWELFTH AMENDMENT TO THE CONSTITUTION.

264. What has been done with the original clause of the Constitution prescribing the proceedings to be taken to elect a president and vice-president? *Ans.*—It has been repealed, and its place supplied by the twelfth amendment to the Constitution. 265. Where do the electors for president and vice-president meet? 266. In what way do they vote? 267. What is prescribed respecting one of the persons for whom they shall not vote? 268. How is it required that their ballots shall be made out?

ber of electors appointed : and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as president, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote : a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a president, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president.

*2d Clause.* The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the vice-president : a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number

---

269. After voting, what lists are they required to prepare ? 270. What provision must be complied with, before the lists can pass out of their hands ? 271. After the lists are signed, certified, and sealed, to whom are they directed ? 272. To what place are they then transmitted ? 273. What does the president of the Senate do with the certificates ? 274. How is it determined who is elected president ? 275. Now describe the manner in which the electors choose a president. 276. In the event of no choice being made by the electors, by whom is the president chosen ? 277. From how many and what candidates must the House of Representatives choose the president ? 278. In what way must the choice be made ? 279. How are the votes taken in choosing the president ? 280. How many votes is each State entitled to ? 281. How many is each entitled to, when voting by electors ? 282. In choosing the president by the House of Representatives, how many constitute a quorum ? 283. In such case, how many States are necessary to a choice ? 284. Whenever the right of choosing a president devolves upon the House of Representatives, till what time may the right be exercised ? 285. Now describe the manner in which the House of Representatives choose a president. 286. In the event of both the electors and House of Representatives failing to choose a president, what takes place ? 287. How is it determined whom the electors have chosen for vice-president ? 288. In the event of no person having a majority of electoral votes, by whom is the vice-president chosen ? 289. When choosing a vice-president, how many senators are requisite to a quorum ? 290. How many are necessary to a choice ? 291. What is said of the eligibility to the office of president, as compared with that of vice-president ?

of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

*3d Clause.* But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president, shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

---

*3d Clause.* The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

*4th Clause.* No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

*5th Clause.* In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the

---

*3d Clause.*—292. What power has Congress over the time of choosing the electors? 293. What, as to the day on which the electors shall vote? 294. In the event of Congress determining the day on which the electors shall give their votes, what sameness is prescribed? 295. When are the electors chosen? *Ans.*—On the Tuesday next after the first Monday, in the last November of each presidential term. 296. Where do the electors meet to give their votes? *Ans.*—In their respective States, at a place appointed by the legislature thereof. 297. What place is usually appointed for their meeting? *Ans.*—The capital of their State. 298. When do the electors meet to give their votes? *Ans.*—On the first Wednesday in the last December of each presidential term. *4th Clause.*—299. What person, as regards his place of birth, cannot be eligible to the office of president? 300. How old must a person be to be eligible to that office? 301. How many years must a person, to be eligible to that office, have resided within the United States? 302. Now state the legal qualifications of a president. 303. Recite the clause relating to the qualifications. *5th Clause.*—304. In what contingencies does the office of president devolve on the vice-president? 305. What provision is made by the Constitution for the case of removal or death, etc., of the president?

president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

*6th Clause.* The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

*7th Clause.* Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

## SECTION II.

*1st Clause.* The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

---

306. What, for the case of removal, etc., of both president and vice-president? 307. In the case of removal, etc., of both president and vice-president, what officer shall, by law of Congress, act as president? *Ans.*—The president of the Senate, *pro tempore*, shall act as president. 308. What is to be done, in case there is no president of the Senate? *Ans.*—Then the speaker of the House of Representatives shall act as president. 309. How long shall such officers, acting as president, continue to act? *6th Clause.*—310. What does the Constitution provide as regards the compensation to be allowed to the president? 311. What restriction is imposed, in regard to any other emolument? 312. Recite the clause relating to the president's compensation. 313. What is the salary of the president? *Ans.*—\$25,000 a year, together with the use of the presidential mansion and its furniture. 314. What is the salary of the vice-president? *Ans.*—\$8,000 a year. *7th Clause.*—315. What does the president do, just before entering on the execution of his office? 316. Repeat the oath or affirmation taken by the President.



*2d Clause.* He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

*3d Clause.* The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

### SECTION III.

He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration

---

SEC. II.—*1st Clause.*—317. In what relation does the president stand toward the army and navy? 318. When only can he command the militia? 319. Whose opinions may he require in writing? 320. Upon what subjects may he require the opinions? 321. Is he bound to be guided by such opinions? *Ans.*—He is not. 322. What executive departments have been established by Congress? *Ans.*—Six, namely: (1) Department of State, (2) Department of the Navy, (3) Department of War, (4) Department of the Treasury, (5) Post-office Department, and (6) Department of the Interior. 323. For what purpose were they established? *Ans.*—For the purpose of aiding the president in the executive and administrative business of the government. 324. How are the heads of the departments appointed? *Ans.*—By the president, with the advice and consent of the Senate. 325. How is the attorney-general appointed? *Ans.*—In like manner with the heads of the departments. 326. Of whom does the president's cabinet consist? *Ans.*—Of the heads of the Departments and the attorney-general of the United States. 327. What power has the president in relation to reprieves and pardons? 328. What is a reprieve? *Ans.*—A limited suspension or delay of the execution of a sentence in a criminal case. 329. With what exception is the president vested with the power to grant reprieves and pardons? *2d Clause.*—330. What power has the president relative to treaties? 331. In whom is the appointing power vested? 332. What is the first step in making an appointment? 333. What offices are enumerated, for which the president and Senate make appointments? 334. What may Congress do in relation to the appointment of inferior officers? *3d Clause.*—335. What vacancies can the president fill? 336. When does such appointment expire?

such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them; and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

#### SECTION IV.

The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.

#### THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

##### SECTION I.

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in

SEC. III.—337. What information is the president required to give to Congress? 338. What recommendations is he required to make? 339. In what way are the recommendations made? *Ans.*—By means of written messages. 340. Was the reading of written messages always the practice? *Ans.*—The first two presidents, Washington and Adams, used to meet both houses of Congress, and make their recommendations by verbal addresses. 341. Is Congress obliged to adopt the president's recommendations? *Ans.*—Congress is under no obligation to adopt the recommendations of the president. 342. When may the president convene both houses? 343. May he convene only one house? 344. When? 345. When may the president adjourn Congress? 346. What is the duty of the president respecting ambassadors, etc.? 347. What is his duty respecting the execution of the laws? 348. What is his duty respecting the granting of commissions?

SEC. IV.—349. For what crimes may government officers be removed from office? 350. How may the removal be effected?

### ARTICLE III.

#### THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

SEC. I.—351. Of what does Article III. of the Constitution treat? 352. In what is the judicial power of the United States vested? 353. How long do the judges hold their offices? 354. What is established as to the compensation of the judges? 355. How can the judges be removed from office? (See page 14.) 356. How is the supreme court of the United States organized? *Ans.*—The supreme court of the United States is composed of one chief-justice and eight associate justices, any five of whom constitute a quorum. 357. What is the salary of the chief-justice? *Ans.*—\$6,500 a year. 358. What is the salary of each associate justice? *Ans.*—\$6,000 a year.

one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

## SECTION II.

*1st Clause.* The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States; and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects.

*2d Clause.* In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have

---

SEC. II.—*1st Clause.*—359. Name the first of the nine subjects in which the United States courts have jurisdiction. 360. Name the second, concerning ambassadors, etc. 361. Name the third, concerning certain jurisdiction. 362. The fourth, concerning controversies with the United States. 363. The fifth, concerning controversies between States. 364. The sixth, concerning controversies between a State and citizens. 365. The seventh, concerning controversies between citizens. 366. The eighth, concerning controversies between citizens claiming lands. 367. What is the last of the nine subjects? *2d Clause.*—368. In what cases has the supreme court original jurisdiction? 369. What is meant by original jurisdiction? *Ans.*—The original jurisdiction of a court is that in which a suit originates or commences. 370. What is meant by appellate jurisdiction? *Ans.*—The appellate jurisdiction of a court is that in which the decision of an inferior court is taken on appeal. *3d Clause.*—371. Before whom must the “trial of all crimes” be held? 372. What cases are exceptions to the law? 373. By whom are impeachments tried? (See page 14.) 374. Where must the trial of a crime committed within a State be held? 375. Where, when not committed within a State? 376. Repeat the entire clause just considered.

appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations, as the Congress shall make.

*3d Clause.* The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

### SECTION III.

*1st Clause.* Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

*2d Clause.* The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV.

### MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

#### SECTION I.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner

SEC. III.—*1st Clause.*—377. Of how many things does treason against the United States consist? 378. What are the two things? 379. What is necessary to a conviction of treason? *2d Clause.*—380. What power has Congress relative to the punishment of treason? 381. What punishment has Congress accordingly declared? *Ans.*—Congress has declared that the punishment of treason shall be death by hanging. 382. How does the Constitution limit the consequences of attainder? 383. What is meant by attainder? *Ans.*—Attainder means a staining, corruption, or rendering impure. 384. What is meant by corruption of blood? *Ans.*—By “corruption of blood” a person is disabled to inherit lands from an ancestor; nor can he either retain those in his possession, or transmit them by descent to his heirs.

## ARTICLE IV.

### MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

SEC. I.—385. Of what does Article IV. treat? 386. How are the public acts, etc., of the several States, to be treated in each State? 387. How are they to be proved?

in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

## SECTION II.

*1st Clause.* The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

*2d Clause.* A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

*3d Clause.* No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

## SECTION III.

*1st Clause.* New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State, nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

*2d Clause.* The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and

SEC. II.—*1st Clause.*—388. What privileges and immunities are the citizens of each State entitled to? *2d Clause.*—389. What is said of persons charged with crime, fleeing into another State? *3d Clause.*—390. What is said of persons escaping from service or labor? 391. What persons are referred to in the third clause? *Ans.*—Fugitive slaves, and persons bound by indentures of apprenticeship.

SEC. III.—*1st Clause.*—392. By whom may new States be admitted into the Union? 393. What is said of the formation of new States? 394. How many States belonged to the Union at the adoption of the Constitution? (See page 10.) 395. How many belong to the Union now? *2d Clause.*—396. What power has Congress respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States? 397. What construction as to claims is not to be put upon any part of the Constitution?

nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

#### SECTION IV.

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and, on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

#### ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution; or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as a part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

---

SEC. IV.—393. What guarantee does the Constitution make to the several States in respect to their form of government? 399. In what two events are the United States bound to protect individual States?

#### ARTICLE V.

##### MODE OF AMENDING THE CONSTITUTION.

400. Of what does Article V. treat? 401. In what two ways may amendments to the Constitution be proposed? 402. What two ways are provided for ratifying amendments? 403. What three restrictions upon the power of making amendments were originally imposed by the Constitution? 404. Why have two of the restrictions lost their force? 405. What do "the first and fourth clauses" referred to, declare? 406. What permanent restriction upon the power of making amendments still exists in full force?



## ARTICLE VI.

*1st Clause.* All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

*2d Clause.* This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any thing in the constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

*3d Clause.* The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

## ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

## ARTICLE VI.

## ADDITIONAL MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

*1st Clause.*—407. What debts and engagements does the Constitution, recognize? *2d Clause.*—408. What is declared to be the supreme law of the land? 409. By what are the judges in every State bound? *3d Clause.*—410. Who, besides the judges, are bound to support the Constitution? 411. In what way shall they be bound? 412. What prohibition is made in regard to religious tests?

## ARTICLE VII.

413. How many States were necessary to ratify the Constitution, in order to its establishment? 414. Where did the Convention meet which framed the Constitution?—*Ans.* Philadelphia. 415. In what year was it framed? (See p. 10.) 416. Who was the president of the convention? *Ans.*—George Washington. 417. How many delegates signed the Constitution? 418. Which of the thirteen States was not represented in the convention? *Ans.*—Rhode Island. 419. How many States ratified the Constitution before it went into effect? *Ans.*—Eleven. 420. Which of the thirteen States did not ratify the Constitution until afterward? *Ans.*—North Carolina and Rhode Island failed to ratify the Constitution until after it had been ratified by the other eleven States and had gone into operation.

## AMENDMENTS,

PROPOSED BY CONGRESS, AND RATIFIED BY THE LEGISLATURES OF THE SEVERAL STATES, PURSUANT TO THE FIFTH ARTICLE OF THE ORIGINAL CONSTITUTION.

## ARTICLE I.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

## ARTICLE II.

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

## ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

## ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the person or things to be seized.

---

AMENDMENTS.

421. How may the amendments to the Constitution be regarded? *Ans.*—All the amendments to the Constitution, with the exception of the 12th, may be regarded as a declaration, securing to the people and States certain rights, beyond the possibility of being encroached upon by Congress. *1st Article.*—422. What declaration does the first amendment make, respecting religion? 423. What, respecting the freedom of speech? 424. What, respecting the freedom of the press? 425. What, respecting the right of petition? *2d Article.*—426. What is the declaration respecting the right of the people to keep and bear arms? *3d Article.*—427. What is said of quartering soldiers? *4th Article.*—428. What is said of searches and seizures?

## ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

## ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

## ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined, in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

---

429. What is said of the issuing of warrants? *5th Article.*—430. What is said of holding persons to answer for crimes? 431. What is said of a second trial for the same offense? 432. What is the meaning of the clause, that no person shall “be twice put in jeopardy,” etc.? *Ans.*—It means that no person shall be a second time tried for the same offense, of which he has been legally acquitted or convicted. 433. When shall not a person be compelled to witness against himself? 434. What guarantee of protection to life, liberty, and property is given? 435. When only can private property be taken for public use? *6th Article.*—436. What right shall a person accused of crime enjoy? 437. What right, as to the witnesses against him? 438. What right, as to the witnesses in his favor? 439. What right, as to the assistance of counsel? *7th Article.*—440. In what suits shall the right of trial by jury be preserved?

## ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

## ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

## ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

## ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

---

441. In what way only shall the re-examination of facts tried by a jury be made? *8th Article.*—442. What is said of bail, fines, and punishments? *9th Article.*—443. What is said of rights retained by the people? *10th Article.*—444. What is said of the powers reserved to the States? *11th Article.*—445. What is said of the restriction upon the judicial power?



W 61

















